
EL-MOASSER
GUIDE
New Hello!
ENGLISH
By a group of supervisors
مسابقة المعاصر
فى
نهاية الكتاب
FIRST TERM
1st
Prep.
2023
AltFwoK.com
موقع التفوق
تطبيق
التعلم التفاعلى
معاك
Ma3ak App
الصف الأول الإعدادى
الفصل الدراسى الأول

Contents



Check your English

Vocabulary

age (n)	عمر / سن	sunny (adj)	مشمس
favourite (adj)	مفضل	weather (n)	الطقس
toy animal (n)	حيوان دمية	rainy (adj)	ممطر
park (n)	حديقة عامة	restaurant (n)	مطعم
sports (n)	ألعاب رياضية	twice (adv)	مرتين
cook (n)	طباخ	tail (n)	ذيل
gate (n)	بوابة	shop (n)	محل

1 This is a fact file of some students. Look and make sentences.

1. Name : Basel
   Age : 12
   Likes : football
   Favourite food : fish with rice

2. Name : Fatma
   Age : 13
   Likes : books
   Favourite food : chicken

3. Name : Maher and Hany
   Age : 12
   Likes : tennis
   Favourite food : ice cream

4. Name : ....
   Age : ....
   Likes : ....
   Favourite food : ....

1. His name is Basel. He is twelve. He likes football. His favourite food is fish with rice.
2. ....
3. ....

2 Complete fact file 4 for you and write sentences like those in Exercise 1.

4. ....

3 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة. (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. The bag is ....
   a. new b. Injy's c. Lama's d. Lama's sister's

2. The pencil case is
   a. red   b. blue   c. yellow   d. green

3. Lama has got
   a. a book about sport   b. a toy animal
   c. an English book   d. a book about animals

4. She has also got
   a. some oranges   b. an orange   c. an apple   d. a ball

5. The girls are in
   a. a school   b. a house   c. a park   d. a shop

4 Read and correct the mistakes in these sentences :

1. Hatem don't like sports. Hatem doesn't like sports.
2. I want play tennis this afternoon
3. Look ! Those children jumping very high.
4. I visit my cousins yesterday.
5. You speak English very good

5 Read the text, then answer the questions :

Mr Taha is a teacher in Port Said. He teaches English. On Monday, Tuesday and Wednesday, he makes himself a sandwich for lunch. He eats it in the school. On Thursday and Friday, he usually walks home. His wife makes him his favourite lunch: chicken and potatoes. Yesterday, it rained a lot. The weather is sometimes rainy in Port Said. Mr Taha did not want to walk home, so he went to a restaurant near the school. He loves the food **there**. The cook makes it all himself.

1. Where does Mr Taha work ?

   He works in a school in Port Said.
2. What does he usually eat for lunch ?
3. What does he usually do twice a week ?
4. Why did Mr Taha not want to walk home yesterday ?

5. Is the weather always rainy in Port Said ?
6. Who makes the food in the restaurant ?
7. What does the underlined word **there** refer to ?

6 Do these words have the same sound ? Listen and put (✓) or (✗).

1. washed / talked ☐   2. called / waited ☐
3. blue / duck ☐   4. cake / home ☐
5. shop / chick ☐   6. father / brother ☐
7. candy /July ☐   8. tail / gate ☐

7 What did they do at the weekend ? Look at the table and answer the questions.

	Friday	Saturday
Ashraf	play football	visit cousins
Yunis	bake a cake	work in his father's shop
Riham	visit friends	play tennis

1. Did Yunis play football on Friday ? No, he didn't. He baked a cake.
2. Did Ashraf work in his father's shop on Saturday ?
3. What did Ashraf do on Friday ?
4. Did Riham visit her cousins on Friday ?
5. Where did Yunis go on Saturday ?
6. What did Riham do on Saturday ?

8 Write about your weekend. What do you usually do ? What did you do yesterday ?

UNIT





My family and me

SB pages 2-11 WB pages 72-78

Objectives

- **Reading :**
  An interview with twin brothers; Heidi; a text about a gymnast
- **Writing :**
  A paragraph on hobbies; a description of a person in your family
- **Listening :**
  An interview with twin brothers
- **Speaking :**
  Talking about your family; asking a question
- **Language :**
  Pronouns; present simple
- **Life Skills :**
  Self-management
- **Values :**
  Love of family
- **Issues :**
  Awareness of rights and duties; loyalty and belonging

مسابقة

المعاصر
فى اللغة الانجليزية
فى نهاية الكتاب.



لاتقان الوحدة

- للمتابعة اليومية والشهرية ملحق Master your term
- تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر ملحق الأزهر الشريف.
- للمهارات اللغوية ملحق Master your term
- قاموس المعاصر اللغوى.
- Dictation لاختبار الإملاء فى ملحق Master your term

اسئلة كل وحدة تشمل

- العلامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب.
- العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات.

LESSONS **1 & 2**

SB pages 2 - 5 WB pages 72 & 73



1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

band (n)	فرقة موسيقية	twin (n)	توأم
voluntary (adj)	تطوعى	quiz (n)	امتحان موجز / قصير
research (ed) (v), (n)	يجرى بحث - بحث	interview (n)	مقابلة شخصية
diary (n)	مفكرة يومية	hobby (n)	هواية
drums (n)	طبول	chess (n)	لعبة الشطرنج

تنويه
- **Key Vocabulary** هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- قاموس المعاصر اللغوى لإتقان المفردات اللغوية.
- استعد للاختبار الاملاء **Dictation** ملحق **Master your term**.

5 min Pop Quiz تدريب يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Step 1 Read key Vocabulary الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ المفردات اللغوية المحورية

Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary الخطوة الثانية : تدرب على المفردات اللغوية

* يقوم الطالب بأداء تدريب تلقائى على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها.

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

twins - interview - band - quiz

1. Our teacher gives us a .... at the beginning of every lesson to refresh our memories.
2. Omar and Ali have the same age. They're ....
3. My brother plays the drums in a ....

Lesson 1 SB pages 2 & 3 WB page 72

great-grandchildren (n)	أبناء الحفيد - الحفيدة	football player (n)	لاعب كرة قدم
baby cousin (n)	ابن / ابنة العم / العمة / الخال / الخالة (الرضيع)	discuss (ed) (v)	يناقش
		both	كلًا من / كلاهما

skim (med) (v)	يتصفح (بسرعة)	work (ed) (v), (n)	يعمل - عمل (اسم لا يعد)
parents (n)	الوالدين	clap (ped) (v)	يصفق
birthday (n)	عيد ميلاد	family tree (n)	شجرة العائلة

Lesson 2 SB pages 4 & 5 WB page 73

children's hospital (n)	مستشفى أطفال	age (n)	عمر / سن
glossary (n)	قاموس / معجم	favourite (adj)	مفضل
musical instruments (n)	آلات موسيقية	dictionary (n)	قاموس
What kind .... ?	ما نوع ... ؟	match (n)	مباراة
story (n)	قصة	together (adv)	معًا / سويًا

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
write	يكتب	wrote	written
tell	يخبر	told	told
show	يوضح / يبين	showed	shown
find	يجد	found	found
say	يقول	said	said
meet	يقابل	met	met
win	يفوز	won	won
drive	يقود	drove	driven
throw	يرمى	threw	thrown
hit	ينقر	hit	hit

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
true	حقيقى	false	مزيف
different (from)	مختلف عن	the same (as)	نفس الشىء / مطابق
first	الأول	last	الأخير
finish	ينهى	start	يبدأ

busy	مشغول	free	متفرغ - حر
show	يوضح	hide	يُخفي
male	ذكر	female	أنثى



هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

Family members أفراد العائلة

aunt	your mother's or father's sister	خالة / عمة
uncle	your mother's or father's brother	خال / عم
grandfather	your mother's or father's father	جد
grandmother	your mother's or father's mother	جدة
brother	your parent's son / a boy or man with the same parents as you	أخ
sister	your parent's daughter / a girl or woman with the same parents as you	أخت
cousin	your aunt or uncle's child	ابن / ابنة (العم / العمة / الخال / الخالة)
parents	your mum and dad	الوالدين
son	a boy child	ابن
daughter	a girl child	ابنة
great-grandfather	your grandfather's father	الجد الأكبر
great-grandchildren	the children of your grandchildren	أبناء الحفيد / الحفيدة

Other definitions تعريفات أخرى

swimming	moving your body through water	سباحة
drums	a musical instrument which you hit with your hands or a stick to make noise	طبول
twins	two children born at the same time	توأم
voluntary work	work you do without getting money	عمل تطوعي
football match	a game of football	مباراة كرة قدم

chess	a board game for two people	لعبة الشطرنج
band	a group of people singing or playing musical instruments together	فرقة موسيقية
basketball	a ball sport for two teams of five players each. To play basketball, you throw the ball into a net	كرة السلة

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

do	voluntary work	يقوم بعمل تطوعي	**listen to**	music	يستمع إلى الموسيقى
	work	يؤدي عمل		the teacher	يستمع إلى المعلم
go	swimming	يمارس السباحة		the radio	يستمع إلى الراديو
have	a hobby	لديه هواية	**watch**	a football match	يشاهد مباراة كرة قدم
make	noise	يُحدث ضوضاء			

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 both / all

كلاهما (تدل على شخصين أو شيئين معًا)

• **both**

ex.: - Where are Ali and Ashraf ?
- They both went to the club.

كل / جميعًا (تدل على عدد أكثر من شخصين أو شيئين)

• **all**

ex.: - Where are Ali, Ashraf and Tarek ?
- They all went to the club.

Reading on lesson 1 SB page 3

2 (be) called

يُسمى / يدعى

ex.: - This girl is called Rodayna.
- What is your teacher called ?

call (ed) (v)

يتصل / ينادي

ex.: - Salma is calling her father now.

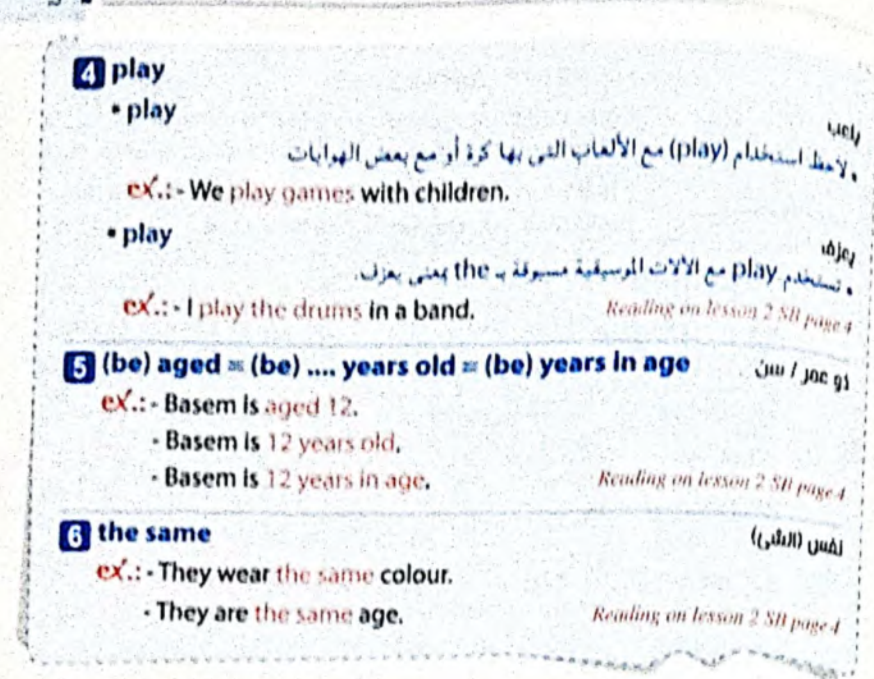
Reading on lesson 1 SB page 3

3 on + يوم (جمع) = every + يوم (مفرد)

• تعتبر من الكلمات الدالة على زمن المضارع البسيط.

ex.: - SB We play chess on Saturdays / every Saturday.
- He plays football on Fridays / every Friday.

Reading on lesson 2 SB page 4



4 play

• **play** — يلعب

• لاحظ استخدام (play) مع الألعاب التي بها كرة أو مع بعض الهوايات

ex.: - We play games with children.

• **play** — يعزف

• تستخدم play مع الآلات الموسيقية مسبوقة بـ the بمعنى يعزف.

ex.: - I play the drums in a band. *Reading on lesson 2 SB page 4*

5 (be) aged = (be) .... years old = (be) years in age — ذو عمر / سن

ex.: - Basem is aged 12.
- Basem is 12 years old.
- Basem is 12 years in age. *Reading on lesson 2 SB page 4*

6 the same — نفس (الشئ)

ex.: - They wear the same colour.
- They are the same age. *Reading on lesson 2 SB page 4*

Important expressions & prepositions — تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

in pairs	في ثنائيات	write about	يكتب عن
look at	ينظر إلى	talk about	يتحدث عن
belong to	ينتمي إلى / يخص	a picture of	صورة لـ
work hard	يعمل بجد	on TV	على شاشة التلفاز
clap for	يصفق من أجل	on the radio	في الإذاعة / الراديو
arrive at	يصل إلى (مكان صغير)	help in the children's hospital	يساعد في مستشفى الأطفال
arrive in	يصل إلى (مكان كبير)		
That's true !	هذا صحيح !	proud of	فخور بـ
It's great !	هذا عظيم !	for no money = for free	بلا مقابل مادي
tell .... about	يخبر ...... عن	of course	بالطبع
play .... with	يلعب ...... مع	the same as	نفس (الشيء) مثل



Pop Quiz | تدرب على ٢٧ من ظط الفهم وتحسين المستوى

1. Reading and Listening



• on Lesson 1 SB page 3

Hello ! My name's Ali. I'm 13. This is a picture of (1) my family.

My mum's name is Amira. She's a teacher. Next to her is my dad. His name is Adel. He's a teacher, too. Both (2) my parents (3) are teachers at my school. They have one daughter (4) – she's my sister, Lamia, and she's 9 years old. And they have two sons – me, and my brother, Khaled. He's 11.

Our grandmother (5) is 64 and she's called (6) Huda. She's my mum's mother. My mum's father is our grandfather (7) –he's called Omar. He's 65. Their daughter's called Judy. She's my mum's sister and she's my aunt (8). My uncle's called Marwan. He is a doctor. Their son is called Tarek, and he's my cousin (9). It's his birthday today – he's 3 years old.

Check Vocabulary

(1) صورة لـ	(2) كلاهما	(3) الوالدين	(4) ابنة	(5) جدة
(6) يُسمى / يُدعى	(7) جد	(8) عمة / خالة	(9) ابن العم / الخال / العمة / الخالة	



• on Lesson 1 WB page 72

Lara : Hi ! My name's Lara and this is my family. That's my brother. His name's Ayman. Lina and Hatem are our parents. We have one cousin, Khadeeja. Her parents are my uncle and aunt. Their names are Imad and Dina. What about you ? What's your name ?

Listening skill

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

• Lara's brother is called ....

a. Adam b. Ayman c. Hatem d. Mohamed

- **Reading on Lesson 2 SB page 4**

An interview with twin brothers

Meet Hazem and Hatem. They are brothers and they are both aged[1] 12. They have the same parents[2] and the same birthday. They're twins!

What are your hobbies ?

Hazem : I like sports. I play basketball on Mondays and Wednesdays. I go swimming[3] on Tuesdays and I play football on Saturdays.

Hatem : And he watches football matches on TV[4] on Saturday evenings. He loves football!

Hazem : I love football!

Hatem : I don't like football, but I like music. I play the drums[5] and I listen to music[6].

Hazem : He plays the drums in a band[7].

Do you have any hobbies that you both like ?

Hazem : We play chess together on Saturdays. Hatem usually wins.

Hatem : Yes, that's true! And on Saturday afternoons we do voluntary work[8].

What kind of voluntary work ?

Hazem : We help in the children's hospital.

Hatem : We play games with the children and read them stories. It's great !

Important Expressions & Prepositions

(1) يبلغ من العمر
(2) نفس الوالدين
(3) يمارس السباحة
(4) على شاشة التلفاز
(5) يعزف على الطبول
(6) يستمع إلى الموسيقى
(7) فى فرقة موسيقية
(8) يقوم بعمل تطوعى

Answer the following questions :

- Critical thinking skill — مهارة التفكير النقدى

Learn 1. Do you think Hazem and Hatem are different ? Why / Why not ?
Yes. Because they have different hobbies.

Practise 2. Do you think Hazem and Hatem are kind ? Why / Why not ?
....

- **Listening on Lesson 2 SB page 5**

Interviewer : Can I ask you some more questions ?
Hazem : Yes, of course.
Interviewer : Hazem, when do you play basketball ?
Hazem : I play basketball on Mondays and Wednesdays.
Interviewer : And when do you play football ?
Hazem : I play football on Saturdays and I watch football matches on the TV on Saturday evenings.
Interviewer : When do you go swimming ?
Hazem : I go swimming on Tuesdays.
Interviewer : Wow, you are busy ! Hatem, when do you play the drums ?
Hatem : I play the drums on Mondays at home. And I play the drums in a band on Thursdays.
Interviewer : What do you do on Tuesdays and Wednesdays ?
Hatem : I listen to music. I like pop music.
Interviewer : What do you do on Saturdays ?
Hatem : I help my mother and I do voluntary work with Hazem. And on Sundays I play chess with Hazem or my dad.
Interviewer : Thank you both.
Hazem : You're welcome.

Exercise on Vocabulary

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

Key vocabulary

1. Maged and Magdy are .... They were born at the same time.
   a. parents b. cousins c. twins d. uncles
2. Reading is my favourite ....
   a. job b. hobby c. project d. band
3. Our science teacher asked us to do a .... about pollution online.
   a. dictionary b. match c. diary d. research

4. This afternoon, I'll have a/an .... for a new job in an oil company.
a. shower b. research c. interview d. match

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

5. " ...." are your parents. *(Tanta - Gharbia 2020)*
a. Son and daughter b. Mum and dad
c. Cousin and uncle d. Brother and sister

6. WB .... are musical instruments which you hit with your hands or sticks.
a. Drums b. Guitars c. Flutes d. Harps

(Dokki-Giza 2022)

7. WB Maher .... voluntary work at a hospital. *(Multidisciplinary – Cairo 2021)*
a. plays b. makes c. does d. watches

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

8. "Female" is the opposite of "..........".
a. meal b. mail c. mall d. male

9. Ali and Tamer wear the .... colour.
a. as b. same c. similar d. every

Definitions

10. .... means moving your body through water.
a. Driving b. Surfing c. Hiking d. Swimming

11. My .... is my father's or mother's sister.
a. uncle b. aunt c. daughter d. son

12. A .... is a group of people who play music together.
a. parent b. band c. class d. chorus

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. .... Omar and Ahmed are my cousins.
a. Every b. Each c. All d. Both

14. Our English teacher is .... Ayman.
a. sold b. told c. called d. made

15. My father and mother are .... "60" and "53".
a. old b. aged c. age d. ago

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

Talking about your family التحدث عن عائلتك

في هذا الجزء تتمكن من التعرف عن نفسك وعائلتك حوالي ٢٠ جملة

1. My dad's name is اسم الأب . He is عمره .
2. My mother's name is اسم الأم . She is عمرها .
3. My brother's name is اسم الأخ . He is عمره .
4. My sister's name is اسم الأخت . She is عمرها .
5. My (mother / father) is a / an وظيفة .

يمكنك التحدث عن نفسك وعائلتك أيضا باستخدام الجمل التالية :

تحدث عن نفسك

1. My name's … . الاسم
2. I'm … years old. العمر

تحدث عن الأب / الأم

3. My dad's / mum's name is … . الاسم
4. He's / She's … years old. العمر
5. He's / She's a … . الوظيفة
6. He / She works in a / an … . مكان العمل

تحدث عن الأخوة والاخوات

7. I have one brother / sister. العدد
8. My brother's / sister's name is … . الاسم
9. He's / She's … years old. العمر

تحدث عن العم / العمة / الخال / الخالة

10. My uncle / aunt is called … . الاسم
11. He's / She's … years old. العمر
12. He's / She's a / an … . الوظيفة
13. He / She works in a … . مكان العمل

تحدث عن أبناء العم / العمة / الخال / الخالة	
14. I have two cousins.	العدد
15. Their names are … and … .	الاسم
16. … is … years old.	العمر
تحدث عن الجد / الجدة	
17. My grandfather is called … . He's … years old.	الاسم والعمر
18. He's my mum's / dad's father.	صلة القرابة
19. My grandmother is called … . She's … years old.	الاسم والعمر
20. She's my mum's / dad's mother.	صلة القرابة

3. Writing
مهارة الكتابة

Hobbies هوايات

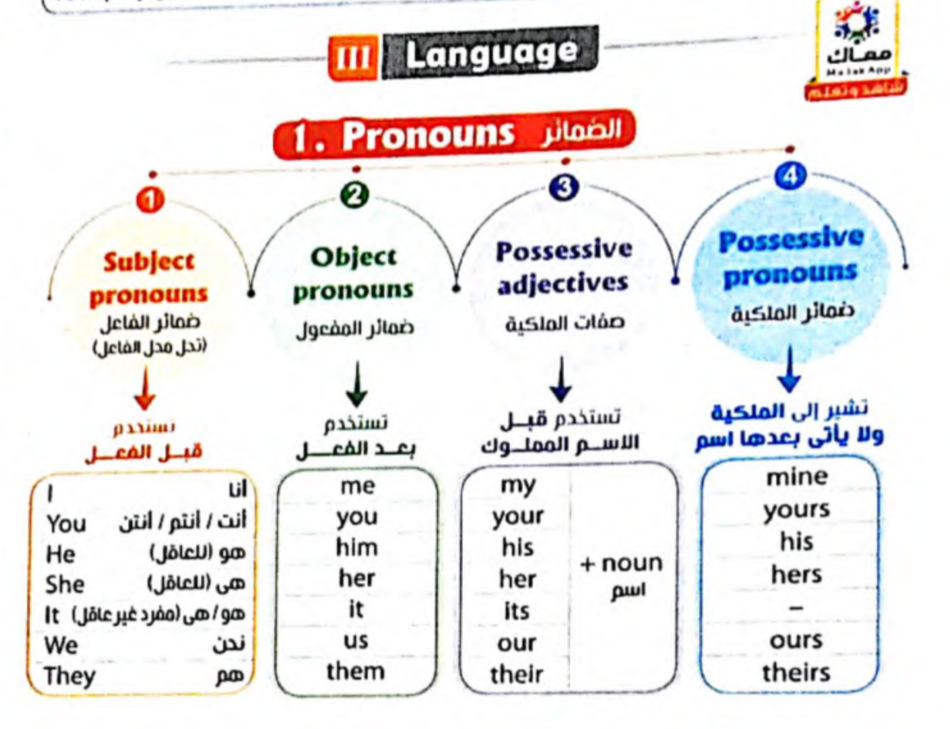
play basketball - go swimming - play football - watch football matches - play the drums - listen to music - play chess - do voluntary work - help my mother



الهوايات التي تحبها	
1. I like sports.	أحب الألعاب الرياضية.
2. I play basketball on Saturdays.	ألعب كرة السلة أيام السبت.
3. I go swimming on Sundays.	أذهب للسباحة أيام الأحد.
الهواية التي تحبها أكثر	
4. My favourite sport is football.	رياضتي المفضلة هي كرة القدم.
5. I play football at the club.	ألعب كرة قدم في النادي.
6. I watch football matches on TV.	أشاهد مباريات كرة القدم على شاشة التلفاز.
7. I love football.	أحب كرة القدم.
هواية أخرى تحبها	
8. I listen to music.	أستمع إلى الموسيقى.
9. I like pop music	أحب موسيقى البوب.
10. I listen to music on the radio.	أستمع إلى الموسيقى في الراديو.

11. I play the drums on Tuesdays at home.	أعزف على الطبول أيام الثلاثاء بالمنزل.
12. I play the drums in a band on Wednesdays.	أعزف على الطبول في فرقة موسيقية أيام الأربعاء.
هواية تمارسها مع أحد أفراد العائلة	
13. On Thursdays, I play chess with my dad.	في أيام الخميس، ألعب شطرنج مع أبي.
14. He usually wins.	هو عادة يفوز.
أعمال تطوعية تمارسها	
15. On Fridays, I help my mother.	في أيام الجمعة أساعد أمي.
16. And on Friday afternoon, I do voluntary work.	ويوم الجمعة بعد الظهيرة أقوم بعمل تطوعي.
17. I help in the children's hospital.	أساعد في مستشفى أطفال.
18. I play games with children.	ألعب ألعاب مع الأطفال.

III Language



1. Pronouns الضمائر

1 Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل (تحل محل الفاعل)	2 Object pronouns ضمائر المفعول	3 Possessive adjectives صفات الملكية	4 Possessive pronouns ضمائر الملكية
تستخدم قبل الفعل	تستخدم بعد الفعل	تستخدم قبل الاسم المملوك	تشير إلى الملكية ولا يأتي بعدها اسم
I أنا	me	my + noun اسم	mine
You أنت / أنتِ / أنتم	you	your	yours
He هو (للعاقل)	him	his	his
She هي (للعاقل)	her	her	hers
It هو / هي (مفرد غير عاقل)	it	its	–
We نحن	us	our	ours
They هم	them	their	theirs



2. Using possessive adjectives and pronouns
استخدام صفات الملكية وضمائر الملكية

We use possessive adjectives to show something belongs to somebody :
تستخدم صفات الملكية لتبين أن شيء ما يخص شخص ما :

- Marwan is my uncle. - Nader and Mona are their parents.

• لاحظ أن : صفات الملكية تتبعها اسم (الاسم المملوك).

لاحظ أن : **ضمير الملكية = إسم + صفة الملكية**

- This is my pen. = This pen is mine.
- It's her bag. = It's hers.

• لاحظ أن : ضمائر الملكية لا يأتي بعدها اسم وتحل محل صفة الملكية والاسم المملوك معًا

Important Notes on Pronouns
ملاحظات هامة على الضمائر

• عند السؤال عن الملكية نستخدم كلمة الاستفهام Whose كالآتي :

Whose + (noun) إسم .... ?

ex.:- Whose bag is it ?
- It's my bag. = It's mine.

• هناك تعبيرات تستخدم للتعبير عن الملكية :

- This is my car.
= This car is mine.
= This car belongs to me.
= I have a car.
= I own this car. = I am the owner of this car.

• ضمائر الفاعل (تأتى فى بداية الجملة) تحل محل الفاعل وتسبق الفعل (الأساسى أو المساعد).

ex.:- I play tennis every week.
- He eats lunch at 3 : 00 p.m.
- They are my parents.

• ضمائر المفعول تحل محل المفعول وتتبع الفعل أو تتبع حروف الجر

ex.:- Please, tell me about your family.
- Huda is our grandmother. We love her so much.
- Can you come with me to the theatre ?

Stop here ! on Language (Answered & Explained)

فى هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. I live with .... grandparents.
a. mine b. they c. my d. them

2. .... gets up early every day.
a. His b. He c. Him d. Her

3. You should listen carefully to ...., Nader.
a. me b. myself c. mine d. I

4. Those tools are .... They used them to repair the car.
a. their b. them c. they d. theirs

No.		Answer + Explanation
1	c	(my)
2	b	(He)
3	a	(me)
4	d	(theirs)

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. What does .... like to do at the weekend ? (Badrashin – Giza 2022)
a. his b. hers c. she d. him

2. WB Throw the ball to ...., please. I am waiting. (Ain Shams – Cairo 2020)
a. me b. my c. I d. mine

3. This room belongs to my daughters. It's .... (South Giza – Giza 2020)
a. they b. their c. them d. theirs

4. WB Our parents are proud of .... because we work hard at school.
a. we b. our c. ours d. us

5. SB My sister's name is Ola. .... 's 7. *(Sedfa - Assiut 2020)*
a. Her b. She c. Hers d. Him

6. WB Clap for football players. .... have played very well. *(Multidisciplinary - Damietta 2021)*
a. Them b. They c. Their d. Theirs

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. .... mobile is this ? - It's Rokaya's.
a. Who b. Whose c. When d. Where

8. This is .... computer. He bought it last week.
a. mine b. my c. his d. hers

9. .... played well and scored many goals.
a. Me b. Mine c. I d. My

10. Tarek and I visit .... grandfather every Friday.
a. they b. our c. its d. her

11. Give this mobile to ....
a. she b. him c. our d. their

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB,WB & Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. It's not my camera. <u>My</u> is new. *(El Fashn - Beni Suef 2020)* (..........)
2. SB Today is <u>hers</u> birthday. (..........)
3. WB Can <u>your</u> give me your pen, please ? (..........)
4. This is not our school. It's <u>your</u>. *(Auseem - Giza 2020)* (..........)
5. <u>Who</u> car is this ? - It's mine. *(El Zeitoun - Cairo 2022)* (..........)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. They're Mayar's bags. They're <u>his</u>. (..........)
7. All the players in our team like <u>his</u> captain. (..........)
8. Ali bought a new camera for <u>her</u> daughter. (..........)
9. There are three girls and these are <u>them</u> books. (..........)
10. This book belongs <u>for</u> him. (..........)

General Exercises



LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. What's your favourite sport ?
a. Basketball b. Tennis c. Football d. Hockey

2. When do you play basketball ?
a. On Fridays b. On Mondays c. Every day d. On Sundays

3. Who do you play it with ?
a. My father b. My mother c. My sister d. My friends

4. Basketball is a/an .... sport.
a. boring b. easy c. interesting d. hard

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Omar is asking Ali about his grandfather.

Omar : Can I ask you some questions ?
Ali : Yes, (1) .... course.
Omar : What's the name of your grandfather ?
Ali : He is (2) .... Yasser.
Omar : How (3) .... is he ?
Ali : He is 50 (4) ....
Omar : (5) .... is his hobby ?
Ali : He is interested in playing chess.
Omar : Do you like chess ?
Ali : Of course. I like it.

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The children of your grandchildren are your ....
a. sons b. great-grandchildren
c. parents d. great-grandfathers

2. The cat always protects .... little kittens.
a. he b. its c. she d. their

3. That's Omar's book. It's ....
a. him b. he c. his d. her

4. I don't know this word. I'll look it up in a ....
a. dictionary b. basket c. vase d. van

5. Toka and Mona look like each other. They are ....
a. neighbours b. twins c. students d. daughters

6. Mai helps in a children's hospital for free. She likes .... work. *(Hehia - Sharkia 2020)*
a. voluntary b. school c. easy d. writing

7. My sister is my mother's and father's ....
a. grandmother b. daughter c. aunt d. mother

8. He is a famous violinist عازف الكمان in a big .... *(Maadi - Cairo 2022)*
a. hand b. pond c. band d. match

9. We are having dinner with .... friends.
a. our b. his c. her d. their

10. We played a .... match and we scored many goals.
a. tennis b. swimming c. diving d. football

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. The girls are going to the park with her friends. (..........)
2. This new car belongs to mine. *(Fakous - Sharkia 2022)* (..........)
3. My teacher is call Fady. (..........)
4. What pencil is this ? - It's Ali's. (..........)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

• "Your family"

....

....

....

....

LESSONS 3 & 4

SB pages 6 - 8 WB pages 74 & 75



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

add (ed) (v)	يضيف	conversation (n)	محادثة
orphan (n)	يتيم	country (n)	دولة - بلد
mountain (n)	جبل	attic (n)	سندرة / شقيقة (غرفة علوية للتخزين)
city (n)	مدينة (كبيرة)	adventure (n)	مغامرة

تنويه
- Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- قاموس المعاصر اللغوي لاتقان المفردات اللغوية.
- Dictation استعد لاختبار الاملاء ملحق Master your term.

5 min Pop Quiz تدريب يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Step 1 Read key Vocabulary — الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ المفردات اللغوية المحورية.

Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary — الخطوة الثانية : تدرب على المفردات اللغوية.

* يقوم الطالب بأداء تدريب تلقائي على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها.

⊙ **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

Adventure - orphan - attic - city - mountain

1. This child is an .... He has no parents.
2. Cairo is a big .... in Egypt.
3. They climbed the .... to see the view of the far city.
4. .... stories are my favourite. They are very exciting.

Lesson 3

SB pages 6 & 7 WB page 74

correct (ed) (v), (adj)	يصحح - صحيح	How long ...?	كم المدة ... ؟
minutes (n)	دقائق	airport (n)	مطار
communicate (d) (v)	يتواصل	live (d) (v)	يعيش

Lesson 4

SB page 8 WB page 75

end (n) نهاية	one day (adv) ذات يوم
goat (n) عنزة - ماعز	walk (ed) (v), (n) يمشي - تمشية

Countries and Cities دول ومدن

Morocco دولة المغرب	South Africa دولة جنوب أفريقيا
England دولة إنجلترا	Oman دولة عمان
Cape Town كيب تاون (مدينة في جنوب أفريقيا)	Switzerland دولة سويسرا

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
think يفكر / يعتقد	thought	thought
fly يطير / يسافر جوًا	flew	flown
feel يشعر	felt	felt
hear يسمع	heard	heard
catch يمسك / يلحق بـ	caught	caught
learn يتعلم	learned/learnt	learned/learnt

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
high مرتفع	low منخفض
top قمة	bottom قاع
important مهم	unimportant غير مهم
arrive يصل	leave يغادر
city المدينة	the country / countryside الريف

You can see ...

in a city	in the mountains
airport مطار	goats ماعز
hospital مستشفى	sheep أغنام / خراف
park متنزه	birds طيور
shops محلات	flowers زهور

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

adventure	an exciting activity	مغامرة
goat	a mountain animal you can eat or get milk from	ماعز
orphan	a child with no mother or father	يتيم
city	a place with lots of houses, shops and people	مدينة
attic	the top room in a house	سندرة / سقيفة (غرفة علوية فى سطح المنزل)
mountain	a high area of land, higher than the land around it	جبل

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 with يستخدم حرف الجر (with) ليدل على الملكية بمعنى «ذو»

ex.:- SB A child with no mother or father is an orphan. *WB page 75*

- I can see a girl with long hair.

2 sheep خروف / أغنام (تعامل معاملة الاسم المفرد والجمع)

(مفرد) ex.:- I bought a sheep from the market yesterday. *SB page 8* (جمع)

- Sheep have wool on them.

3 country - the country - city - town - village

- **country** دولة - بلد
  ex.:- Egypt is a big country in Africa.
- **the country = the countryside** الريف
  ex.:- Living in the country is comfortable مريح.
- **city** مدينة كبيرة
  ex.:- Alexandria is a beautiful city.
- **town** مدينة صغيرة
  ex.:- Shoubra El Kheima is a busy town.
- **village** قرية
  ex.:- I like going to my village in Sham El Neseem.

Reading on Lesson 4 SB page 8

4 in order - order

- **in order** بالترتيب
  ex.:- Put these pictures in the correct order.

- **order** طلب / أمر / يطلب

ex.: - We should follow our teacher's orders. (طلب / أمر)

- I'll order a cup of tea for you. SB page 8 (يطلب)

5 like

- **like** يحب

ex.: - What do you like to have ?

- **like** يشبه (تستخدم للوصف)

ex.: - What do you think living in the mountains is really like ? WB page 73

- **like** مثل

ex.: - He talks like his father.

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

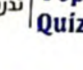
away from	بعيدًا عن	lots of = a lot of	كثير من
think of + (n. / inf. + ing)	يفكر فى	live in	يعيش فى (مكان)
take (شخص) to (مكان)	يأخذ (شخص) إلى (مكان)	live with	يعيش مع (شخص)
in the correct order	فى الترتيب الصحيح	take + (time) to + inf.	يستغرق وقت لكى...
at the end of	فى نهاية	feel + (صفة)	يشعر بـ
in the summer	فى فصل الصيف	catch a plane	يلحق بطائرة
communicate with	يتواصل مع	come home	يصل للمنزل
(be) right to + inf.	يكون محقًا فى ...	compare .... with	يقارن... بـ
at the top of ...	فى قمة	make a video call	يجرى مكالمة فيديو

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

تدرب على ٣٧ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع | Pop Quiz





on Lesson 3 SB page 7

Sami : My family lives in Cairo, but my dad works in Paris, France. He goes to the airport on Sundays and he catches a plane[1] to Paris. It takes five hours to[2] fly there. And then he catches a plane home to Egypt on Thursday evening. He works very hard[3].

Important Expressions & Prepositions

(1) يلحق بطائرة | (2) يستغرق (٥ ساعات) لكى | (3) يعمل بإجتهاد

On Saturdays we play football in the park and we play chess. I love my dad and I'm happy when he's at home[4].

Aya : My grandmother and grandfather live in South Africa. They live next to the beach in Cape Town. They have a beautiful house. We go and visit them, but it's a long way[5]. It takes twelve hours to fly there !

I talk to them on the phone but they don't have a computer so we can't make a video call[6]. I would like to see them every day but I can't.

(4) فى المنزل (5) طريق طويل (6) يجرى مكالمة فيديو

Listening skill

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- We play chess on ....

a. Sundays b. Thursdays c. Saturdays d. Fridays

Reading on Lesson 3 WB page 74

I am Hassan. My family ***lives*** in Alexandria, but my dad ***doesn't work*** in Egypt. He works in London. He ***goes*** to the airport on Sunday evenings and he ***catches*** a plane to England. He comes home on Thursday evenings. On Saturday, I ***don't go*** to school, and my father doesn't work. We ***play*** chess or we ***go*** to the park. On Sunday mornings, we go swimming. My brother ***is*** three and he ***doesn't*** swim. He watches us !

Videoscript Lesson 3 SB page 6

Narrator : Senet[1] is a very old Egyptian game. You can see it in this picture. It is about 3.000 years old.

Narrator : Look at these people at the Pharaonic Village museum[2] in Cairo. They like senet, too.

Narrator : Today, people play a game like senet. It's called chess.

Narrator : Two people play chess[3]. Each person has got white or black pieces. It is not an easy game. Some people play it for six hours or more !

Narrator : Bassem Amin is an Egyptian chess player[4]. He is from Tanta and he is very famous[5]. He is very good at chess.

Check Vocabulary

(1) لعبة فرعونية قديمة | (2) متحف القرية الفرعونية | (3) لعبة الشطرنج | (4) لاعب شطرنج | (5) مشهور

Narrator : Chess is a popular[6] game in Egypt. There are many chess clubs[7] and some children have chess lessons after school. They also play it at home with their parents.

Narrator : Do you play chess ?

Check Vocabulary

(6) شعبي/محبوب | (7) اندية للشطرنج

Reading on Lesson 4 SB page 8

Heidi (By Johanna Spyri)





Heidi is the story of an orphan[1] girl. She goes to live with her grandfather in Switzerland[2]. Her grandfather is an old man. He lives in a small house in the mountains[3] and he has lots of goats. Heidi sleeps in a bed in the attic[4] of the house. She drinks goat's milk and eats bread and cheese.

Every day she walks in the mountains with the goats, her grandfather and Peter. She sees birds and flowers. She is very happy !

But one day, Heidi's aunt arrives and takes her to the city. Heidi doesn't like the city and she is very sad to be away from her grandfather, Peter and the goats.

Heidi has lots of adventures[5] in the city.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يتيم
(2) سويسرا
(3) جبال
(4) غرفة علوية للتخزين
(5) مغامرات

Answer the following questions :

- Giving the main idea. إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

Learn 1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

- *An orphan girl.*

- Extracting information. استخراج المعلومات

Practise 2. In which country does Heidi live ?

....

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. Some people .... nuts to rice pudding.
   a. take b. add c. give d. think
2. Alice had exciting .... in Wonderland.
   a. videos b. adventures c. lives d. countries
3. A person who doesn't have a father or mother is called a / an ....
   a. member b. orphan c. cousin d. friend

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

4. SB A .... is an animal that is like sheep. *(Esna - Luxor 2021)*
   a. lion b. goat c. dog d. tiger
5. Farmers get .... from goats. *(Isna - Luxor 2022)*
   a. bread b. meat c. rice d. eggs
6. WB A / An .... is very high. *(Multidisciplinary - Cairo 2021)*
   a. list b. menu c. mountain d. adventure

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. Egypt is a big .... in Africa.
   a. city b. country c. village d. mountain
8. English people live in ....
   a. France b. Egypt c. Morocco d. England
9. What happened at the .... of the film ?
   a. country b. right c. timetable d. end
10. We always have a/an .... with our teacher about studying English.
    a. operation b. fight c. conversation d. match

Definitions

11. A .... is a place with lots of houses, shops and people.
    a. forest b. desert c. station d. city
12. A/An .... is the top room in a house.
    a. city b. office c. attic d. shop

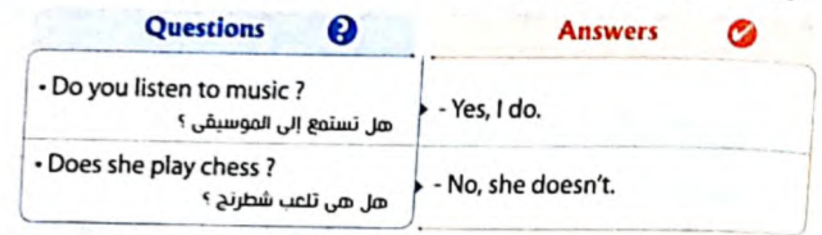
Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. Salma is .... a video call now.
 a. making b. doing c. delivering d. talking
14. It .... twelve hours to fly to Cape Town.
 a. makes b. takes c. gives d. talks
15. Now, you can communicate .... your friends easily using smartphones.
 a. in b. on c. with d. about
16. What is your feeling when you are away .... your parents ?
 a. from b. to c. on d. at

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

Asking and answering questions about hobbies

توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن الهوايات



Questions	Answers
• Do you listen to music ? هل تستمع إلى الموسيقى ؟	- Yes, I do.
• Does she play chess ? هل هي تلعب شطرنج ؟	- No, she doesn't.

3. Writing مهارة الكتابة

Your life حياتك

فى هذا الجزء تتمكن من الكتابة عن حياتك حوالى ٨ جمل

1. My name is Mohamed. اسمى محمد.
2. I live with my family. اعيش مع عائلتى.
3. My family lives in Cairo. تعيش عائلتى فى القاهرة.
4. My father doesn't work in Cairo. He works in Alexandria. لا يعمل والدى بمدينة القاهرة. هو يعمل بمدينة الإسكندرية.
5. My father comes home on Thursday evenings. يأتى والدى إلى المنزل فى مساء أيام الخميس.
6. My family and I go to the park on Fridays. اذهب أنا وعائلتى إلى المتنزه فى أيام الجمعة.
7. On Saturday, I don't go to school. لا أذهب إلى المدرسة يوم السبت.
8. I play chess with my father on Saturday. ألعب شطرنج مع والدى فى يوم السبت.

III Language

The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Formation التكوين

① Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

I / They / We / You (فاعل جمع) + inf. (المصدر)

He / She / It (فاعل مفرد) + inf. (المصدر) + s/es/ies

ex. - We usually play tennis on Friday.
- My grandparents sometimes use a computer.

ex. - Rodina sometimes listens to the radio.

لاحظ أن :

١. يضاف للفعل (s) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It).

ex. - Marwa usually plays tennis on Fridays.

٢. يضاف للفعل (es) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان منتهيًا بـ (ss , ch , sh , o , x) :

- My brother often watches TV after lunch.

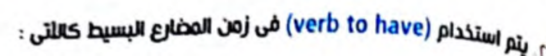
٣. يضاف للفعل (ies) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان منتهيًا بـ (y) مسبوقة بحرف ساكن ويحذف حرف (y) :

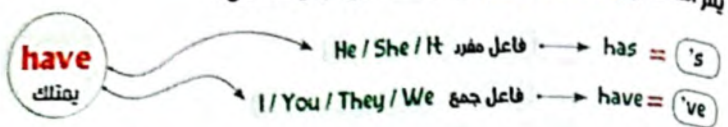
- Amal always studies hard for her exams.

لاحظ أن :

١. يتم استخدام (verb to be) فى زمن المضارع البسيط كالآتى :

be يكون
- I → am = 'm
- He / She / It فاعل مفرد → is = 's
- You / They / We فاعل جمع → are = 're


يتم استخدام (verb to have) فى زمن المضارع البسيط كالتالى :



Key words كلمات دالة

always دائمًا	usually عادة	often غالبًا
sometimes أحيانًا	never أبدًا	

لاحظ أن ظروف التكرار السابقة تسبق الفعل الأساسى فى الجملة.

- She usually gets up early.

لاحظ أيضًا أن ظروف التكرار السابقة تتبع (verb to be).

- She is usually late for school.

أما ظرف التكرار (مدة + every) إما أن يأتى أول الجملة أو فى نهايتها.

- Every day, I go to school.
- I go to school every day.

عند السؤال عن ظروف التكرار (عدد مرات حدوث الفعل) نستخدم كلمة الاستفهام (How often) بمعنى كم مرة ... ؟

How often + (do + I / you / they / we / اسم جمع) / (does + he / she / it / اسم مفرد) + inf.? المصدر

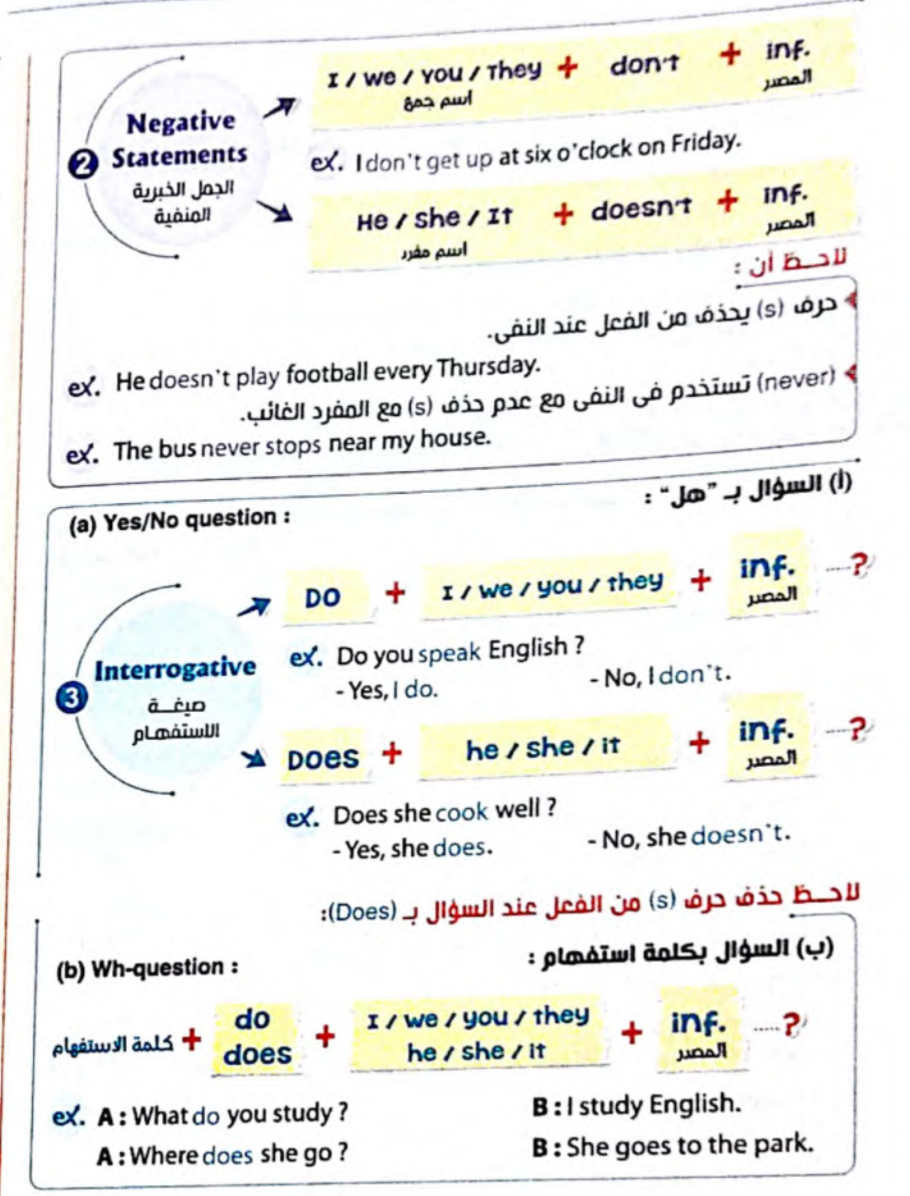
- How often do you play football ?

وللإجابة نستخدم أحد ظروف التكرار

- always / usually / often / sometimes / never
- I usually play football.

أو ذكر عدد مرات الفعل

- I play football once / twice a week.



2 Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

- I / we / you / They (اسم جمع) + don't + inf. (المصدر)

ex. I don't get up at six o'clock on Friday.

- He / she / It (اسم مفرد) + doesn't + inf. (المصدر)

لاحظ أن :

- حرف (s) يحذف من الفعل عند النفى.

ex. He doesn't play football every Thursday.

- (never) تستخدم فى النفى مع عدم حذف (s) مع المفرد الغائب.

ex. The bus never stops near my house.

3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

(a) Yes/No question : (أ) السؤال بـ "هل" :

- Do + I / we / you / they + inf. (المصدر) ....?

ex. Do you speak English ?
- Yes, I do. - No, I don't.

- Does + he / she / it + inf. (المصدر) ....?

ex. Does she cook well ?
- Yes, she does. - No, she doesn't.

لاحظ حذف حرف (s) من الفعل عند السؤال بـ (Does):

(b) Wh-question : (ب) السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

كلمة الاستفهام + do / does + I / we / you / they / he / she / it + inf. (المصدر) ....?

ex. A : What do you study ? B : I study English.
A : Where does she go ? B : She goes to the park.

Usage الاستخدام

يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن :

١ - الحقائق الثابتة (facts) خاصة الحقائق العلمية والقوانين والحقائق المرتبطة بالكون والطبيعة :

ex.: The sun always rises in the east.

٢ - عادات وأحداث متكررة (habits & repeated actions) :

ex.: - Maha gets up early every day.
- She usually goes to school on foot.
- He often plays football on Fridays.

Stop here ! on Language (Answered & Explained)

في هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Salma always .... her bike on Friday.
   a. ride b. rides c. riding d. is riding
2. My father .... work on Saturdays.
   a. don't b. aren't c. doesn't d. isn't
3. Lions .... meat.
   a. eat b. eats c. eating d. doesn't eat
4. He .... late.
   a. never is b. is never c. always is d. often is

No.	Answer + Explanation الإجابة والتوضيح	
1	b	[illegible] (rides) [illegible] (always) [illegible] Salma [illegible] (s).
2	c	[illegible] (doesn't) [illegible] (My father) [illegible] (doesn't + inf.) [illegible]
3	a	[illegible] (eat) [illegible]
4	b	[illegible] (is never) [illegible] (verb to be).

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. The bus .... stops near my house. (Nozha - Cairo 2022)
   a. don't b. isn't c. doesn't d. never
2. We .... swimming on Fridays. (El Fashn - Beni Suef 2020)
   a. go b. goes c. going d. gone
3. WB Hany loves basketball. He .... it every day. (Multidisciplinary - Menoufia 2021)
   a. plays b. play c. played d. playing
4. Nabila .... like cooking. (South Giza - Giza 2020)
   a. don't b. isn't c. doesn't d. wasn't
5. SB How does Sami .... when his dad is at home ?
   a. feel b. feels c. felt d. feeling
6. SB I don't .... to music. (Multidisciplinary - Giza 2021)
   a. listens b. listen c. listening d. listened

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. Hady and I .... the full mark in English.
   a. usually gets b. usually get c. gets usually d. get usually
8. Where does your friend .... ?
   a. live b. lives c. lived d. living
9. The sun .... us heat and light.
   a. gives b. giving c. is giving d. give
10. Over a billion people .... Chinese as their first language.
    a. speak b. spoke c. speaks d. speaking
11. She always .... to her work early.
    a. go b. is going c. going d. goes
12. I don't .... early on holidays.
    a. gets up b. got up c. get up d. getting up

13. She .... her hands three times a day.
 a. wash b. washes c. is washing d. washing

14. Which sport .... Youssef like to do ?
 a. do b. have c. has d. does

15. We all .... our country.
 a. loving b. be loved c. love d. loves

16. My uncle .... new buildings in our city.
 a. build b. is built c. builds d. building

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

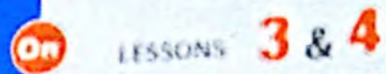
SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. They do usually tired after the school day. (West Tanta - Gharbia 2022) (........)
2. Where does he works ? (Hadayek El-Kobba - Cairo 2022) (........)
3. SB I plays the drums in a band. (........)
4. Salma plays always basketball. (Rafah - North Sinai 2020) (........)
5. She don't like fish. (Zefta - Gharbia 2020) (........)
6. WB Maher always do voluntary work at hospital. (........)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. They writes English well. (........)
8. Do you like reading ? - Yes, I am. (........)
9. He usually play football. (........)
10. Where do your father work ? (........)





• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Habiba is asking Nada about her family.

Habiba : Where do you live, Habiba ?
Nada : (1) ....
Habiba : Have you got any brothers or sisters ?
Nada : (2) ....
Habiba : (3) .... ?
Nada : He is called Ali.
Habiba : (4) .... ?
Nada : I like swimming.
Habiba : Are you good at swimming ?
Nada : (5) ....

2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Samar is an **orphan** girl. She went to live with her uncle Adnan who was a shepherd راعي غنم in the Western Desert. He lived in a small house and he had a lot of goats and camels. Samar slept in a bed made from animal's skin and drank goat's milk. She ate bread and cheese. She made friends with a female camel which she called Felfela. Samar loved her and **they** went on long walks in the desert. Samar had a lot of adventures in the desert. She loved the life of desert and mountains.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.
....
2. What did Adnan have ?
....
3. What do you think of life in the desert ?
....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The word **"orphan"** means ....
 a. has no father or mother b. has no friends
 c. has no brothers d. has no sisters

5. Felfela is a ....
 a. horse b. camel c. cow d. goat

6. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to ....
   a. Samar and her cousin b. Adnan and Felfela
   c. Samar and Felfela d. Adnan and Samar

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. On Sundays, we .... swimming. *(Al Rahmaniya - Beheira 2022)*
   a. go b. give c. listen d. play
2. Which hobby .... Ali like doing ?
   a. do b. to do c. does d. done
3. He .... clever and helpful.
   a. is always b. always is c. never is d. sometimes is
4. Heidi is an .... girl. She has no father or mother.
   a. orphan b. unkind c. old d. ugly
5. Nada doesn't .... lunch on Sundays.
   a. makes b. made c. making d. make
6. You can get wool from ....
   a. giraffes b. elephants c. sheep d. tigers
7. Living in the desert has a lot of ....
   a. houses b. adventures c. rooms d. sheep
8. SB Heidi is very sad to be .... from her grandfather.
   a. way b. away c. why d. weight
9. We keep old things in the .... of our house. *(Ashmoun - Al Menoufia 2022)*
   a. pool b. attic c. street d. circus
10. SB He goes to the .... to catch his plane to Paris on Sunday.
    a. port b. station c. pavement d. airport

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. He live in a small house in the mountains. (............)
2. Water boiling when we heat it. (............)
3. He don't want to stay here. (............)
4. On Fridays, we don't goes to school. (............)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"Voluntary work"

....
....
....
....
....



LESSONS 5 & 6

SB pages 9 & 10 WB pages 76 & 77

1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

athlete (n)	لاعب رياضى	partner (n)	شريك / زميل
gymnast (n)	لاعب جمباز	studies (n)	دراسات
gymnastics (n)	رياضة الجمباز	balance (d) (v), (n)	يتزن / توازن
diagram (n)	رسم توضيحى	train (ed) (v)	يتدرب / يتمرن
Olympics (n)	ألعاب اوليمبية	busy life	حياة مليئة بالعمل
mathematics (n)	مادة الرياضيات	physics (n)	مادة الفيزياء
achieve (d) (v)	ينجز / يحقق (أهدافا)	athletics (n)	ألعاب قوى

تنويه
- Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- قاموس المعاصر اللغوى لاتقان المفردات اللغوية.
- Dictation استعد لاختبار الاملاء ملحق Master your term.



Pop Quiz تدريب يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Step 1 Read key Vocabulary — الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ المفردات اللغوية المحورية.

Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary — الخطوة الثانية : تدرب على المفردات اللغوية.

* يقوم الطالب بأداء تدريب تلقائى على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها.

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

diagrams - gymnast - achieve - busy - partner

1. A .... is the person who does gymnastics.
2. You should work hard to .... your goals.
3. Try to ask your .... about this question.
4. Famous sportsmen have a .... life.

Lesson 5

SB page 9 WB page 76

topic (n)	موضوع	present (ed) (v)	يعرض / يقدم
idea (n)	فكرة	answer (ed) (v), (n)	يجيب - إجابة
related (adj)	مرتبط / متصل	writing tip (n)	نصيحة للكتابة
best (adj)	أفضل	family tree (n)	شجرة العائلة

Lesson 6

SB page 10 WB page 77

stay (ed) (v), (n)	يقيم / يمكث - إقامة	dream (ed) (v), (n)	يحلم - حلم
description (n)	وصف	club (n)	نادى

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
lose يفقد - يخسر	lost	lost

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
busy	مشغول	free	غير مشغول / حُر
healthy	صحى	unhealthy	غير صحى
strong	قوى	weak	ضعيف
difficult	صعب	easy	سهل

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

gymnastics	a sport which has a lot of different skills, such as jumping	رياضة الجمباز
gymnast	a person who does gymnastics	لاعب جمباز
busy	spending a lot of time doing things	مشغول
train	practise a sport	يتدرب

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 busy مزدحم - مشغول

ex.:- The classroom is busy. There are 70 students.
- The telephone line is busy.
- Habiba has a very busy life.

Reading on lesson 6 SB page 10

2 so that + النتيجة لكى

المصدر + can + inf. + فاعل + so that + ... جملة فى زمن المضارع البسيط

ex.:- SB She eats healthy food so that she can stay strong.

Reading on lesson 6 SB page 10

3 gymnast - gymnastics لاعب جمباز

- **gymnast**

ex.:- My friend is a famous gymnast.

- **gymnastics** رياضة الجمباز (يأتى بعدها الفعل فى صيغة المفرد)

ex.:- Gymnastics is a great sport.

Reading on lesson 6 SB page 10

4 make + مفعول + inf. مصدر الفعل يجبر / يجعل

ex.: The teacher made Amal do her homework.

make + مفعول + (adj) صفة

ex.: Playing football makes me happy.

Reading on lesson 6 SB page 10

5 لاحظ أن هذه الكلمات تنتهى بحرف(s) إلا أنها تتبع بفعل مفرد

physics / athletics / mathematics / gymnastics

ex.:- Gymnastics makes me fit.

SB page 10 - Reading on lesson 6 SB page 10

6 list - menu

- **list** قائمة (أشياء مثل مشتريات)
  - Mum gave me a list of things to buy from the supermarket.
- **menu** قائمة (طعام فى مطعم مثلاً)
  - The waiter gave me the menu to choose from.

SB page 9

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

find it difficult about	يجد صعوبة بشأن	a description of	وصف لـ
move to	ينتقل إلى	stay strong	يظل قويًا
answer to	يجيب عن / إجابة لـ	in the evenings	فى أوقات المساء
study hard	يذاكر بجد	in Africa	فى قارة أفريقيا
train for + (مدة)	يتدرب لمدة	top gymnast	أفضل لاعب جمباز

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz | تدرب على ٣٧ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع



- on Lesson 6 SB page 10

Habiba Marzouk achieves[1] her dreams[2]

Habiba Marzouk is a gymnast[3]. She is 18 and lives in Cairo with **her** family.

Habiba has a very busy life. She goes to school and she studies hard. In the evenings, she trains[4] for five or six hours. She is a top gymnast in Africa[5] and she wants to go to the Olympics[6].

Habiba's family always helps her. She eats healthy[7] food so that she can stay strong. Gymnastics[8] is a difficult sport, but **it** makes her happy.

Chech Vocabulary

(1) يحقق / ينجز
(2) أحلام
(3) لاعب جمباز
(4) يتدرب
(5) قارة أفريقيا
(6) الألعاب الأولمبية
(7) صحى
(8) رياضة الجمباز

Answer the following questions :

- Understanding reference فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

Learn 1. What does the underlined word "**her**" in the text refer to ?
- *It refers to Habiba Marzouk.*

Practise 2. What does the underlined pronoun "**it**" in the third paragraph refer to ?

- on Lesson 6 WB page 77

My name is Omar. Nabila is my sister. She lives with me and my family in Damietta. Her favourite food is fish. I like cheese. We have the same hobbies. We like swimming ! We go swimming on Saturday and Sunday. My sister plays chess, too. I do not like chess. How old is Nabila ? She is 12. That is the same as me. I am 12, too.

- on Lesson 7 SB page 11

My name's Lamia. I'm nine years old. I ***live*** in Aswan with my family. My parents ***are*** teachers. My brother Ali ***is*** 13 years old and Khaled is nine. Khaled goes swimming every Friday.

I ***listen*** to music with ***my*** brothers. Ali ***plays*** football at school and he watches football matches on TV. Khaled ***goes*** swimming every Friday. There is a swimming pool near our house. My best friend is called Aya. We ***play*** basketball at school, and we're both in the school team. ***Our*** team is very good !

Answer the following questions :

- Critical thinking skill مهارة التفكير النقدى

Learn 1. Do you think it is easy for Khaled to go swimming every Friday ? Why ?
Yes. Because the swimming pool is near his house.

- Extracting information استخراج المعلومات

Practise 2. Do you like basketball ? Why ?

- on Lesson 7 WB page 78

Munir and Mustafa are twins. ***Their*** sister is called Radwa. ***Her*** hobby is tennis and she is my best friend. I live with ***my*** brother and ***his*** name is Sayed. ***Our*** house is in Cairo. What is ***your*** best friend's name ?

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. Mohammed Rashwan is a top athlete who won a silver medal in the .... in Los Angelos.
   a. festival b. Olympics c. party d. physics
2. .... is a difficult sport, but it makes me fit.
   a. Physics b. Mathematics c. Gymnastics d. Olympics
3. Athletes work hard to .... their school studies, their friends and families.
   a. repeat b. leave c. balance d. stay
4. The Egyptian football team .... hard to get a medal in the next Olympics.
   a. rain b. train c. make d. stop
5. Habiba Marzouk is a .... gymnast in Africa. (Agami-Alexandria 2021)
   a. tape b. top c. pot d. bat

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

6. WB Nabila and Omar like .... They always go to the sea. (Multidisciplinary - Alexandria 2021)
   a. printing b. swimming c. staying d. reading
7. Good students work hard to .... their dreams. (Rafah - North Sinai 2020)
   a. stay b. achieve c. study d. carry
8. SB Our science teacher made some .... to make the lesson easier. (Samalout - Minia 2020)
   a. diagrams b. grams c. noise d. food

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. "......." is the opposite of "strong".
   a. Weak b. Angry c. Funny d. Sunny
10. The policeman asked me to give the .... of the thief I saw.
    a. question b. dream c. description d. balance
11. How long will you .... in Egypt ? - For 3 weeks.
    a. carry b. stay c. know d. make

Definitions

12. A .... is a person who does gymnastics.
    a. waiter b. gymnast c. customer d. tourist
13. .... means spending a lot of time doing things.
    a. Busy b. Bored c. Lazy d. Weak

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. The coach .... the players train very hard to get ready for the league الدوري.
    a. caused b. made c. drove d. rode
15. Mathematics .... a school subject.
    a. are b. is c. have d. were
16. Doing sports helps you to .... strong.
    a. spend b. find c. stay d. sleep

مهارة التحدث

2. Speaking

Asking and answering questions about a friend or a person
توجيه أسئلة والرد عن صديق أو شخص

Questions	Answers
• What is his / her name ? ما اسمه أو اسمها ؟	- He / She is ... اسم الشخص. اسمه / اسمها ...
• How old is he / she ? ما عمره أو عمرها ؟	- He / She is ... السن أو العمر. عمره / عمرها ...
• Where does he / she live ? أين يعيش أو تعيش ؟	- He / She lives in ... اسم المكان. هو يعيش / هى تعيش فى ...
• Who is his / her best friend ? من هو أفضل صديق له أو لها ؟	- His / Her best friend is ... أفضل صديق له هو / صديقة لها هى ...
• What is his / her favourite food ? ما هو الطعام المفضل له أو لها ؟	- His / Her favourite food is .... طعامه / طعامها المفضل هو ......
• What are his/ her hobbies ? ما هى هواياته أو هواياتها ؟	- His / Her hobbies are ... (الهوايات). هواياته أو هواياتها هى .....

3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة

▸ **Writing tips :**

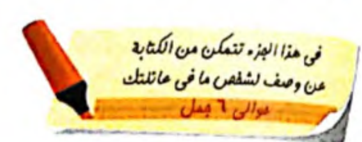
• **A paragraph is a group of related sentences that present one topic or one idea.**

الفقرة الإنشائية هو عبارة عن مجموعة من الجمل المترابطة التى تعرض/تقدم موضوع واحد أو فكرة واحدة.

• **Punctuation marks :** علامات الترقيم :

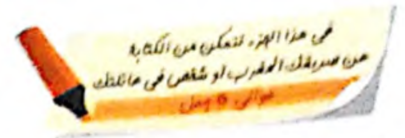
1. Start each sentence with a capital letter. ابدا كل جملة بحرف كبير.
2. Use capital letters for : names, cities, days of the week, etc.
   استخدم الحروف الكبيرة مع : أسماء الأشخاص . المدن. أيام الأسبوع . الخ.
3. End your sentence with a (.), (!) or (?). ضع :
   أ. النقطة (.) فى نهاية الجملة الخبرية.
   ب. علامة التعجب (!) فى نهاية الجملة التى تعبر عن الدهشة أو المفاجأة.
   جـ. علامة الاستفهام (؟) فى نهاية الجملة الاستفهامية.

A description of someone in your family
وصف لشخص ما فى عائلتك



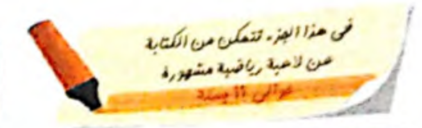
1. Omar is my brother. أخى عمر.
2. He is 10 years old. يبلغ من العمر ١٠ سنوات.
3. He lives with me and my family in Luxor. يعيش معى ومع عائلتى فى مدينة الأقصر.
4. His favourite food is fish. طعامه المفضل هو السمك.
5. We have the same hobbies. لدينا نفس الهوايات.
6. We like swimming. We go swimming on Saturdays and Sundays.
   نحب السباحة. نذهب إلى السباحة فى أيام السبت وأيام الأحد.

Your best friend or a person in your family
صديقك المفضل / المقرب أو شخص فى عائلتك



1. My best friend is called Adam. صديقى المفضل / المقرب يدعى آدم.
2. He is 12. He has the same age as me. يبلغ من العمر اثنا عشر سنة. هو لديه نفس عمرى.
3. He lives in Giza. هو يعيش بالجيزة.
4. We play basketball at school. We're both in the school team. نلعب كرة السلة بالمدرسة. كلا منا فى فريق المدرسة.
5. He loves chicken with rice. يحب الدجاج مع الأرز.

A famous sports woman
لاعبة رياضية مشهورة



1. Habiba Marzouk is a top gymnast. حبيبة مرزوق لاعبة جمباز على مستوى عال.
2. She is 18. تبلغ من العمر ثمانية عشر عامًا.
3. She lives in Cairo. تعيش فى مدينة القاهرة.
4. She is very good at gymnastics. هى جيدة فى رياضة الجمباز.
5. She has a busy life. هى لديها حياة مليئة بالأشياء.
6. Every day, she goes to school. كل يوم تذهب إلى المدرسة.
7. She wants to go to the Olympics. هى تريد الوصول إلى الأولمبياد.
8. She trains for about 6 hours daily. تتدرب لمدة حوالى ٦ ساعات يوميًا.
9. Her family always helps her. تقوم عائلتها بالمساعدة دائمًا.
10. She eats healthy food to stay strong. تتناول طعام صحى لتبقى بصحة جيدة.
11. I am very proud of her. أنا فخورة بها جدًا.

General Exercises On LESSONS 5 & 6

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Gymnastics is a/ an .... sport.
   a. easy b. difficult c. interesting d. boring
2. Gymnasts .... for many hours daily.
   a. wave b. tell c. keep d. train
3. Gymnasts must .... their hobby, work and study.
   a. train b. balance c. make d. charge
4. Gymnasts always want to .... their dream.
   a. achieve b. study c. take d. go

2 WB Complete the following dialogue :

Toka is telling Leen about her cousin, Fares.

Toka : This is a photo of my cousin.
Leen : (1) .... ?
Toka : It's Fares.
Leen : (2) .... ?
Toka : He's 14 .
Leen : Where does he live ?
Toka : (3) ....
Leen : Which foods does he love ?
Toka : (4) .... Do you like it ?
Leen : (5) ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. WB Habiba is a great athlete. .... family lives in Cairo.
   a. Her b. She c. Hers d. She's
2. Athletics .... a group of physical sports.
   a. are b. is c. be d. being

3. "Busy" means .... a lot of time doing things.
   a. doing b. making c. reading d. spending
4. SB Habiba is a top .... in Africa.
   a. gym b. gymnastics c. gymnast d. gymnastic
5. I like math. My .... is to be an engineer. (Tamia Fayoum 2022)
   a. dream b. hobby c. party d. match
6. She goes to school and she .... hard.
   a. studies b. study c. was studying d. studying
7. SB Habiba Marzouk eats well because .... is a difficult sport.
   a. physics b. gymnastics c. mathematics d. Olympics
8. Let's go to the club to .... for the match.
   a. sleep b. eat c. train d. drink
9. How often do you .... sports ?
   a. make b. do c. plan d. dive
10. I find it difficult to .... to the city.
    a. move b. write c. train d. achieve

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. What **do** your telephone number ? (Omrania Giza 2022) (..........)
2. SB She is 18 and **live** in Cairo with her family. (..........)
3. Mathematics **are** an interesting subject. (..........)
4. Seleem **don't** play tennis after school. (..........)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"The best person in your family"

....
....
....
....
....
....



Review on unit 1

SB page 11 WB page 78

Vocabulary

Word	Meaning
great-grandfather	الجد الأكبر
children's hospital	مستشفى أطفال
orphan	يتيم
voluntary work	عمل تطوعي
balance	يوازن / توازن
band	فرقة موسيقية
twins	توأمان
attic	غرفة في سطح المنزل
gymnast	لاعب جمباز
gymnastics	رياضة الجمباز
adventure	مغامرة
athlete	لاعب رياضي
athletics	ألعاب رياضية
interview	مقابلة شخصية
male	ذكر
female	أنثى
cities	مدن
quiz	امتحان قصير / موجز

Language

1- Possessive adjectives & Possessive pronouns صفات وضمائر الملكية

Sub	Possessive adjectives	Possessive pronouns
I	my	mine
He	his	his
She	her	hers
It	its	
They	their	theirs
We	our	ours
You	your	yours

- نستخدم ضمائر وصفات الملكية للإشارة الى أن الشئ يخص شخص ما.
- تأتي صفات الملكية قبل اسم الشيء المملوك
- لا يأتي بعد ضمائر الملكية اسم

- This is my bag. It's mine.
- That is her pen. It isn't yours.

2- Present Simple زمن المضارع البسيط

فاعل مفرد He / She / It inf. + s/es/ies

فاعل جمع They / We / You / I inf

- He lives in Cairo.
- They live in Cairo.

Speaking

Asking and answering about a friend or a person.
توجيه أسئلة وإجاباتها عن صديق أو شخص

1. What is + his/her name ?
   ما اسمه / اسمها ؟
   He/She is اسم الشخص
2. How old is he / she ?
   ما عمره / عمرها ؟
   He / She is العمر years old.
3. Where does he / she live ?
   أين يعيش / تعيش ؟
   In / At المكان
4. What are his / her favourite hobbies ?
   ما هي هواياته / هواياتها المفضلة ؟
   Painting and playing video games.

Skills

مهارة التحدث

1 Speaking

- تعتمد مهارة التحدث مع الآخرين بشكل أساسي على تكوين أسئلة ومعرفة كيفية الرد عليها.

Question السؤال	Answer الإجابة	Usage الاستخدام
What are your hobbies?	*I like sports.*	حوار عن الهوايات
What's your favourite sport?	*I like basketball.*	
When do you play basketball?	*I play basketball on Mondays.*	
What do you do on Tuesdays?	*I listen to music.*	
What do you do on Fridays?	*I do voluntary work.*	
What kind of voluntary work?	*I help in children's hospital.*	
What sports don't you like?	*I don't like football.*	
What's his (her) name?	*It's Omar.*	حوار عن شخص
How old is he (she)?	*He (She) is 14 years old.*	
Where does he (she) live?	*He (She) lives in Cairo.*	
What's his (her) favourite food?	*He (She) loves fish with rice.*	
What are his (her) favourite hobbies?	*He (She) likes swimming and chess.*	

2 Writing Skill مهارة الكتابة

عناصر تساعدك على تنظيم أفكارك للتعامل مع مهارة الكتابة متبوعة بنموذج.

All about me and my family

Names	Ages
My name is	I am ....
My mother is called	My mother is ....
My father is called	My father is ....

Jobs	Place of work
I am a/an	I work in ....
My mother is a/an	My mother works in ....
My father is a/an	My father works in ....

Likes	Dislikes
I like	I do not like ....
My mother likes	My mother does not like ....
My father likes	My father does not like ....

Sample

My name is Omar. I am 14 years old. I am a student in a preparatory school. I like playing football. I don't like listening to music. My father is called Ahmed. He is 45. He is a doctor. He works in a hospital. He likes reading. He does not like watching TV. My mother is 40 years old. She is a teacher. She works in a school. She likes cooking. She does not like football. My brother is 9 years old. He is a student in a primary school. He likes playing video games. He does not like chess. My sister is 7 years old. She is in a primary school. She likes listening to music. She does not like tennis.

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة، قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على حل سؤال الفقرة الإنشائية في الورقة الامتحانية (٣٥ جملة)

1 Your favourite hobby

My favourite hobby is playing football.[1] It is a popular sport all over the world.[2] I play it with my friends.[3] I play it five times a week in the club.[4] I watch football matches on TV.[5] I enjoy watching them.[6] My favourite team is Liverpool.[7] It is in England.[8] My favourite sports star is Mohammed Salah.[9] He has played football for some famous football clubs in England and Italy.[10] I really love football.[11] It makes me happy and fun.[12]

2 A famous sportswoman

Habiba Marzouk is a top gymnast in Africa.[13] She lives in Cairo with her family.[14] Habiba has a very busy life.[15] She goes to school and studies hard.[16] In the evening, she trains for 5 or 6 hours.[17] She wants to go to the Olympics.[18] Habiba's family always helps her.[19] She eats healthy food.[20] She wants to stay strong.[21] Gymnastics makes her happy.[22] We are very proud of her.[23]

3 A description of someone in your family

My uncle is called Adam.[24] He is my dad's brother.[25] He is 45 years old.[26] He lives in Alexandria.[27] He has three children.[28] His favourite hobby is swimming.[29] His favourite food is fish.[30] His wife is called Salma.[31] She is 37 years old.[32] Her favourite hobby is cooking.[33] Her favourite food is fish, too.[34] We visit them every summer.[35]



Test on unit 1

يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونيا وتصويبه

• Understand • Apply • Create

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).



1. Habiba Marzouk lives in ....
   a. Aswan b. Cairo c. Tanta d. Luxor
2. Habiba Marzouk wants to go to ....
   a. China b. France c. the Olympics d. Italy
3. Habiba Marzouk is a top ....
   a. gymnast b. basketball player c. tennis player d. referee
4. Habiba Marzouk has a .... life. *(Hehia - Sharkia 2020)*
   a. busy b. free c. sad d. angry

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue : *(Sharkia 2020)*

Salma is asking Nada about her father.

Salma : What's your father's job ?
Nada : He is a (1) .... He flies abroad twice a week.
Salma : (2) .... he like his job ?
Nada : Yes, he (3) .... it very much.
Salma : Where does he work ?
Nada : He works at Cairo (4) ....
Salma : How do you (5) .... your time ?
Nada : We sometimes play chess together.
Salma : Wonderful !
Nada : Thanks.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

There are many young athletes in Egypt, who broke records الأرقام القياسية. In swimming Farida Osman, is known as "Egypt's Golden Fish", holds the record and title لقب of the 50 - metre butterfly. <u>She</u> has already competed نافس in two Olympics. Nour El Sherbini is the youngest woman to win the Women's World Championship بطولة in squash. Alaa eldin Aboul Kassem was the first Olympic fencing رياضة المبارزة medal winner from an African country. He also competed at the 2016 Rio Olympics.

Sara Ahmed became the first woman from an Arab country to win an Olympic medal in weightlifting رفع الأثقال in the 2016 Rio Summer Olympics. Habiba Marzouk is a top **<u>gymnast</u>** in Africa.

All those athletes have a very busy life. They train very hard and study as well. They work hard to balance their studies or works, their sport and their friends and family.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the best title for the passage ?
....
2. Why do you think athletes have a busy life ?
....
3. How many athletes are mentioned in this passage ?
....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined word "***<u>gymnast</u>***" means a person who ....
   a. plays football b. plays tennis c. plays basketball d. does gymnastics
5. The underlined pronoun "***<u>She</u>***" refers to ....
   a. Sara Ahmed b. Farida Osman c. Habiba Marzouk d. Nour El Sherbini
6. Nour El Sherbini is a .... player.
   a. weightlifting b. squash c. basketball d. tennis

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. That pen isn't my pen. It's .... *(Haram - Giza 2022)*
   a. mine b. her c. yours d. its
2. He hurried to the .... to catch his plane.
   a. station b. stop c. centre d. airport

3. Hadeer is .... 11. (North Suez - Suez 2022)
a. older b. age c. aged d. old

4. Doing this kind of sport .... me happy.
a. takes b. plays c. gives d. makes

5. Hala has a very .... life. She goes to school and studies hard all time.
a. ugly b. free c. busy d. dirty

6. Her father and mother are alive, so she isn't an ....
a. orphan b. archeologist c. engineer d. Italian

7. All sportsmen dream of going to the ....
a. hospital b. Olympics c. school d. factory

8. Playing chess is one of my favourite ....
a. subjects b. colours c. hobbies d. ideas

9. Does she watch TV ? - No, she ....
a. don't b. does c. doesn't d. do

10. Sara always .... nice stories in the library.
a. reads b. to read c. reading d. has read

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. We respect hers teachers. (Damietta - 2022) (........)
2. Does you have a new bag ? (........)
3. WB Seleem doesn't plays tennis after school. (........)
4. SB Habiba eats healthy food so that she can stays strong. (........)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A famous gymnast"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Stop here !

1. Mini-Test on unit 1 for Al-Azhar students اختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues :

A. Ali : What is your favourite subject ?
Hany : ....

B. Leen : .... ?
Toka : My mother is called Amira.

2 Write a paragraph of five sentences about :

"Voluntary work"

....

....

....

2. Use your brain, think smart طبق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My eyes are green but Omar's .... brown.
a. is b. are c. have d. has

2. Which sentence is correct ?
a. Basim always is excited. b. Basim is excited always.
c. Basim is excited always. d. Basim is always excited.

3. Which question is wrong ?
a. Does Leen often cry ? b. When Leen often cry ?
c. When does Leen often cry ? d. Why does Leen often cry ?

4. Mohamed Salah has .... fans.
a. lot b. lots c. lot of d. lots of

5. "My aunt's house is a long way". This means her house is .... ours.
a. near b. far from c. next to d. behind

UNIT



It's my favourite subject

SB pages 12-21 WB pages 79-85

Objectives

- **Reading:** Descriptions of schools around the world
- **Writing:** A paragraph about your journey to school; A paragraph about your daily life
- **Listening:** A discussion about timetables
- **Speaking:** Asking and answering about school and timetables
- **Language:** Adverbs of frequency; possessive 's and s'
- **Life Skills:** Critical thinking; self-management

أسئلة كل وحدة تشمل

- العلامة تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب
- العلامة تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات

لإتقان الوحدة



- للمتابعة اليومية والشهرية ملحق Master your term
- تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر ملحق الأزهر الشريف
- للمهارات اللغوية ملحق Master your term
- قاموس المعاصر اللغوي
- Dictation لاختبار الإملاء في ملحق Master your term

مسابقة
المعاصر في اللغة الانجليزية في نهاية الكتاب

LESSONS **1 & 2**

SB pages 12 : 15 WB pages 79 & 80

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

lesson (n)	حصة / درس	drama (n)	مادة الفن المسرحي
computer studies (n)	مادة الحاسب الآلي	playground (n)	ملعب
bell (n)	جرس	art (n)	مادة التربية الفنية (الرسم)
library (n)	مكتبة (للقراءة والاستعارة)	typical (adj)	نمطي / نموذجي
timetable (n)	جدول مواعيد	school hall (n)	قاعة / فناء المدرسة
social studies (n)	مادة الدراسات الاجتماعية		

تنويه
- **Key Vocabulary** هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- **قاموس المعاصر اللغوي** لإتقان المفردات اللغوية.
- استعد لاختبار الاملاء ملحق **Dictation** .**Master your term**



Pop Quiz تدريب يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Step 1 **Read key Vocabulary** الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ المفردات اللغوية المدورة.

Step 2 **Practise your Vocabulary** الخطوة الثانية : تدرب على المفردات اللغوية.

* يقوم الطالب بأداء تدريب تلقائي على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها.

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

drama - typical- playground - library

1. On a .... holiday, I visit my cousin, go shopping and play a game of tennis.
2. At break, I play with my friends in the ....
3. I like going to the .... at break to read books.

Lesson 1

SB pages 12 &13 WB page 79

travelling (n)	السفر / التنقل	quarter to	إلا ربع (للإخبار عن الوقت)
difference (n)	فرق / اختلاف	half (n)	نصف

quarter past	وربع (للإخبار عن الوقت)	break (n)	فسحة / راحة
language (n)	لغة	subject (n)	مادة دراسية

Lesson 2

SB pages 14 & 15 WB page 80

school days (n)	أيام الدراسة	trip (n)	رحلة قصيرة
road (n)	طريق	finally (adv)	أخيرًا / في النهاية
head teacher (n)	ناظر المدرسة	Nairobi (n)	مدينة نيروبي
daily life (n)	الحياة اليومية	Kenya (n)	دولة كينيا

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
get up	يستيقظ	got up	got up
mean	يعني / يقصد	meant	meant
ring	يرن / يتصل تليفونيًا	rang	rung

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
usual	مألوف / معتاد	unusual	غير معتاد

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

School subjects مواد دراسية		
Arabic	the main language of Arab people	مادة اللغة العربية
art	painting and drawing	مادة التربية الفنية (الرسم)
computer studies	the subject for learning how to use a computer	مادة الحاسب الآلي
drama	the subject of how to learn about acting	مادة الفن المسرحي
English	the language of England, the USA and many other countries	مادة اللغة الإنجليزية
home economics	the subject for learning about cooking and skills for the home	مادة الاقتصاد المنزلي
religion	the subject for learning about what people believe in	مادة التربية الدينية

science	the subject for learning about how to test and understand facts. It includes biology, chemistry and physics	مادة العلوم
social studies	the subject for studying people and how they live	مادة الدراسات الاجتماعية

Other definitions تعريفات أخرى

break	the time at school when you do not have lessons	فسحة / راحة
library	a place where you can borrow or read books	مكتبة
playground	a place outside where children at school can play	ملعب
bell	an object that makes noise when you ring it	جرس
hall	a large room where people can meet together	قاعة / صالة
typical	means usual	نمطي

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 verb to have
المعاني المختلفة للفعل "have"

- يستخدم بمعنى لدى / عندي إذا كان بعده مادة دراسية.

ex.: - Today, I have two maths lessons.

- يستخدم بمعنى يمتلك إذا كان بعده اسم مملوك.

ex.: - Omar has a new car.

- يستخدم بمعنى يتناول إذا جاء بعدها طعام / شراب.

ex.: - I like to have lunch at home.

SB Page 12 / Reading on lesson 2 SB page 14

2 Collocations with verb "do"
أسماء متلازمة مع الفعل "do"

- do homework — يؤدى الواجب المنزلى
- do computer studies — يدرس الحاسب الآلى
- do the housework — يقوم بالأعمال المنزلية

Reading on lesson 2 SB page 14

3 by / on / in + means of transport
وسائل المواصلات بعد حروف الجر

يستخدم حرف الجر "by" قبل كل وسائل المواصلات بشرط عدم وجود أداة أو أى كلمة أخرى قبلها مثل "a – an – the – my" وإن وجدت كلمة أخرى يتغير حرف الجر إلى "on - in"

- لاحظ أنه يستخدم حرف الجر "in" قبل وسائل المواصلات الخاصة مثل "car - taxi - canoe".

ex.: - Toka goes to school by car / in a car.
- He goes to school by taxi / in a taxi.

- لاحظ أنه يستخدم حرف الجر "on" دائمًا قبل كلمة "foot" لتعنى سيرًا على الأقدام وتأتى قبل وسائل المواصلات العامة مثل "bus - plane - train".

ex.: - He goes to school on foot = He walks to school.
- I go to work by bus / on a bus.

SB Page 13

4 drive (someone) to a (place).
يوصل (شخص) لمكان بالسيارة

ex.: - Dad drives me to school.

Reading on lesson 2 SB page 14

5 home / there

- لاحظ هاتان الكلمتان (home / there) لا تسبقان بحرف جر كما بالأمثلة.

ex.: - I get home at 7 p.m.
- She went there last week.

Reading on lesson 2 SB page 14

6 on / in / at + time
حروف الجر قبل الوقت

- on — يستخدم حرف الجر "on" قبل الأيام وتاريخ اليوم
  - on Friday / Tuesday / Wednesday / Saturday
  - on 15th August, 2019

Reading on lesson 2 SB page 14

- in — يستخدم حرف الجر "in" مع الشهور والسنوات وفصول السنة
  - in (October / November / January)
  - in (2018 / 1998 / 2003)
  - in (summer / fall / winter / spring)

WB page 85

- at — يستخدم حرف الجر "at" قبل الساعة
  - at seven o'clock.
  - at quarter past ten
  - at half past eleven / eleven thirty

Reading on lesson 2 SB page 14

7 a girl's school / a girls' school
- a girl's school — المدرسة التى تذهب إليها بنت
- a girls' school — مدرسة للبنات فقط

SB page 12

8

- لاحظ أن المواد الدراسية المنتهية بحرف "s" مثل

physics / mathematics / computer studies / home economics / social studies

تعامل معاملة الاسم المفرد ويستخدم معها فعل مفرد ولا يستخدم فعل جمع.

ex.: - Computer studies is my favourite subject.
- Maths has a lot of numbers.

WB page 85

9 the verb "get" with different meanings لاحظ المعاني المختلفة للفعل "get"

ex.: - I get home at 3 : 15 p.m. يصل إلى المنزل

- I get up at six o'clock in the morning. يستيقظ

Reading on lesson 2 SB page 14

10 ring يستخدم هذا الفعل بمعنى يرن / يتصل

ex.: - The school bell rings at 8 : 00 a.m. يرن جرس المدرسة

- Rokaya can't ring me because she doesn't have my telephone number. يجرى مكالمة تليفونية

SB page 14

11 a.m. / p.m. للتعبير عن فترات الليل والنهار (صباحاً / مساءً)

ex.: - I go to school at 7 : 00 a.m. صباحًا

- I go to bed at 10 : 00 p.m. بعد فترة الظهيرة أو فى فترة المساء

SB page 15

12 far away / far from

- **far away** بعيد
  ex.: - My house is far away.
- **far from** بعيد عن ...
  ex.: - My house is far from school. *Reading on lesson 2 SB page 14*

13 a long .... / ...... along

- **a long + اسم مفرد** (صفة) بمعنى طويل
  ex.: - Engineers are building a long road now.
- **... along** (ظرف) بمعنى بامتداد
  و يسبق بأفعال مثل : **(walk - swim - run ...)**
  ex.: - I like walking along the river. *Reading on lesson 2 SB page 14*

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

good at + (n. / inf. + ing)	جيد فى	have a busy day	لديه يوم مزدحم بالعمل
on school days	فى أيام الدراسة	take a long time	يستغرق وقتًا طويلًا
talk to / with	يتحدث إلى / مع ...	at break	فى الفسحة

school starts at	تبدأ الدراسة فى ...	What day is it today ?	ما اليوم ؟
school finishes at	تنتهى الدراسة فى ...	tell the time	يخبر بالوقت
typical day for me	يوم نمطى/نموذجى بالنسبة لى	on a typical weekend	فى عطلة نهاية أسبوع نموذجية
It is time for (noun / inf. + ing)...	حان الوقت لـ...	around the world	حول العالم



Pop Quiz | تدرب على ٣٧ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

1. Reading and Listening

Listening



• on Lesson 1 SB page 13

Amal : I like the new timetable[1]. What's your favourite day, Injy ?

Injy : I like Thursday. We have social studies[2] first on Thursday. Then we have English and then we go to science[3]. That's my favourite subject.

Amal : My favourite day's today. We have maths[4] first and second lesson after break today. I love maths! Then we have science and art[5].

Injy : I like art too, but I'm not very good at it. What do we have tomorrow ?

Amal : English, then religion[6] is next, then Arabic and then home economics[7]. After break[8], we have social studies. Then we have science and computer studies[9]. Finally, we have music.

Injy : When do we have drama[10]?

Amal : That's the last two lessons on a Tuesday and the last lesson Wednesday. It's time for the next lesson now ! See you later !

Check Vocabulary

(1) جدول مواعيد
(2) دراسات اجتماعية
(3) مادة العلوم
(4) مادة الرياضيات
(5) مادة التربية الفنية
(6) مادة التربية الدينية
(7) مادة الاقتصاد المنزلى
(8) فسحة / راحة
(9) مادة الحاسب الآلى
(10) مادة الفن المسرحى

Listening skill

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

• Amal's favourite subject is ....

a. maths b. drama c. English d. science



on Lesson 1 SB page 13

Say the times. Listen and check.

1. A quarter past ten.
2. Half past twelve.
3. Half past five.
4. Twenty-five past seven.
5. Five to twelve.
6. A quarter to nine.



Reading

on Lesson 2 SB page 14

Daily life around the world

"I'm Akeyo. I live in Nairobi, in Kenya. This is a typical day[1] for me. On school days I get up[2] at half past six. I usually have breakfast[3] with my family. My school is far away[4], so we never walk there. My mum and dad drive us there[5]. It always takes a long time[6] because the roads are busy. When we hear the bell at eight o'clock, we go to the school hall. We have four lessons, then it is break. I usually talk with my friends in the playground, but sometimes we go to the library to read books. After break, we have more lessons. We have lunch at half past twelve. School finishes at four o'clock. When I get home[7], I have something to eat, then I always do my homework. My brother and I usually watch TV before we go to bed at about half past eight. I have a busy day![8]"

Important Expressions & Prepositions

(1) يوم نمطى/عادى
(2) يستيقظ
(3) يتناول الافطار
(4) بعيد
(5) يوصلنا بالسيارة
(6) يستغرق وقت طويل
(7) يصل للمنزل
(8) يوم ملى بالأعمال

Answer the following questions :

- Giving the main idea. إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

Learn 1. Give a suitable title for this passage.
- *Daily life around the world.*

- Extracting information. استخراج المعلومات

Practise 2. Do you have a busy routine or a free one ? How ?
....



Videoscript Lesson 2 SB page 14

Narrator : In Africa, America, Asia, and Europe, most children between the ages[1] of four and eighteen go to school.
They often study subjects such as maths, Arabic and English.
Students study in the morning and sometimes in the afternoon, too.
Some children go to school from Sunday to Thursday.
Other children go to school from Monday to Friday.
When they finish school, some students choose to go to university. Some of the most important universities in Africa and the Arab region[2] are in Egypt.
There is the Al-Azhar University[3]. This is one of the oldest universities in the world.
And there is Cairo University in Giza.
Here, people study subjects like art, science and computer studies.
Do you want to go to university ?
Which subjects do you want to study at university ?

Check Vocabulary

(1) أعمار | (2) منطقة | (3) جامعة الأزهر

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. We have seven .... on the school day.
   a. trips b. breaks c. tapes d. lessons
2. Some pupils study .... to make some shows.
   a. social studies b. computer studies
   c. science d. drama
3. You can know everything about countries, seas and rivers in .... class.
   a. maths b. art c. social studies d. English

4. We know it is time for the next lesson when we hear the school ringing.
a. ball b. bin c. bell d. mail

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

5. At break, I play games with my friends in the .... *(Desouk - Kafr El Sheikh 2022)*
a. bathroom b. playground c. laboratory d. classroom

6. WB On a .... weekend, I visit my grandmother.
a. physical b. musical c. typical d. national
(Multidisciplinary-Qalyoubia 2021)

7. Can I look at the .... to know the time of the English lesson ?
a. laboratory b. timetable c. toilet d. bell
(Mahalla-Gharbia 2020)

8. WB Dina .... swimming on Thursdays and Saturdays.
a. makes b. does c. goes d. feels

9. SB .... is the subject of how to learn numbers. *(El Fashn-Beni Suef 2020)*
a. Drama b. Maths c. Arabic d. English

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

10. I go to school at quarter .... seven.
a. too b. to c. two d. toe

11. .... is the subject that helps us learn how to use the internet.
a. Social studies b. Art
c. Maths d. Computer studies

Definitions

12. .... is the time at school when you do not have lessons.
a. Learning b. Break c. Study d. Drama

13. A .... is a place where you can borrow or read books.
a. laboratory b. class c. library d. playground

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. My uncle .... me to school yesterday.
a. made b. gave c. drove d. went

15. Mona was late. She had to go to school .... a taxi.
a. by b. on c. at d. in

16. When I .... home, I have my lunch.
a. take b. give c. have d. get

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

1. Telling the time ١. الإخبار بالوقت

There are two ways of telling the time : هناك طريقتان للإخبار عن الوقت

الدقائق past و / to إلا → الساعة OR الساعة → الدقائق

9 :15 : a quarter past nine → nine fifteen

10 : 45 : a quarter to eleven → ten forty-five

11:05 : five past eleven → eleven five

11:30 : half past eleven → eleven thirty

12:50 : ten to one → twelve fifty

Note : 15 minutes = a quarter of an hour | 30 minutes = a half of an hour

2. Asking and answering about timetables and the school days

٢. توجيه أسئلة والإجابة عليها عن جدول المواعيد و الأيام الدراسية.

Questions	Answers
• What day is it today? - أي يوم فى الأسبوع يكون اليوم ؟	• It is Sunday. - انه يوم الأحد
• What time does science start on Sunday ? - متى تبدأ حصة مادة العلوم يوم الأحد ؟	• It starts at ten to one. - تبدأ فى الساعة الواحدة الا عشر دقائق
• What time does the math class finish on Tuesday ? - متى تنتهى حصة مادة الرياضيات يوم الثلاثاء ؟	• It finishes at half past one. - تنتهى فى الساعة الواحدة ونصف
• What time is the break ? - متى تكون فترة الراحة (الفسحة) ؟	• It is at a quarter past ten. - إنها فى الساعة العاشرة والربع

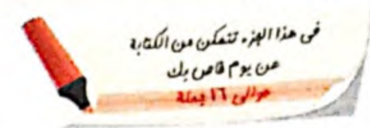
3. Asking and answering questions about how often people do things

٣. توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن كم عدد المرات التى يقوم بها الأشخاص بأداء الأشياء.

Questions	Answers
- How often do you get up at 6 : 30 am ? - كم مرة تستيقظ فى الساعة السادسة والنصف صباحًا ؟	• I never get up at 6 : 30 am ! I usually get up at 7 am. - أنا لا أستيقظ أبدًا فى الساعة السادسة والنصف صباحًا ! عادة ما استيقظ فى الساعة السابعة صباحًا.
- How often do they watch TV before they go to bed ? - كم مرة يشاهدون التلفاز قبل الذهاب إلى النوم ؟	• They sometimes watch TV before they go to bed. - يشاهدون أحيانًا التلفاز قبل الذهاب إلى النوم.



مهارة الكتابة



Your day يوم خاص بك

1. I'm .... I live in	أنا اسمى .... أنا أعيش فى ......
2. This is a typical day for me.	هذا هو يومى العادى.
3. On school days, I usually get up at	فى الأيام الدراسية عادة ما استيقظ فى الساعة ......
4. On weekends and holidays, I get up at	فى العطلات الاسبوعية والإجازات . استيقظ فى الساعة ......
5. I usually have breakfast with ..... at	عادة أتناول وجبة الأفطار مع ..... الساعة ......
6. I go to school by ...... /on foot .	أذهب إلى المدرسة مستقلًا ...... / سيرًا على الأقدام.
7. As my school is near / far	لأن مدرستى قريبة / بعيدة ......
8. It takes ...... to go to school.	إنها تستغرق ...... للوصول إلى المدرسة.
9. When we hear the bell at ...... , we go to the school playground.	عندما نسمع جرس المدرسة فى الساعة ...... نذهب إلى فناء المدرسة.
10. We have ...... lessons every school day.	لدينا ...... حصص فى اليوم الدراسى.
11. The school day finishes at	ينتهى اليوم الدراسى فى الساعة ......
12. I have lunch at	أتناول وجبة الغداء الساعة ......
13. I always do my homework at	دائمًا أقوم بأداء واجبى المنزلى الساعة ......
14. Sometimes I watch TV or play video games at	بعض الأوقات اشاهد التليفزيون أو العب العاب الفيديو الساعة ......
15. I always help at home.	أساعد فى المنزل دائمًا.
16. I go to bed at	أذهب للنوم الساعة ......

III Language

Adverbs of Frequency ظروف التكرار



• تستخدم ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عدد مرات تكرار فعل ما :

ex. - I always get up early.

• ظروف التكرار تأتى قبل الفعل الأساسى وبعد (verb to be) :

ex. - We usually go out on Fridays. - We are never late for school.

كم مرة ...؟ **How often + (do / does) + subj. (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ?**

• تستخدم للسؤال عن عدد المرات التى يتكرر فيها فعل ما وللإجابة نستخدم ظروف التكرار :

always - sometimes - usually - often - never

ex. - How often do you walk to school ?
* I never walk to school.

- How often does he do his homework in the evening ?
* He always does his homework in the evening.

• يمكن الإجابة على السؤال بعدد مرات حدوث الفعل.

- How often do you go to the club ?
* I go to the club twice a week.

Stop here! on Language (Answered & Explained)

فى هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I .... my parents at home on Fridays.
 a. helps always b. help always c. always helps d. always help
2. How .... do you go to the library ? - Twice a week.
 a. long b. often c. much d. many
3. We .... eat eggs in Sham El Nessim. It's a habit.
 a. always b. ever c. sometimes d. never
4. Mona .... comes late to school.
 a. isn't b. doesn't c. ever d. never

No.		Answer + Explanation
1	d	[illegible]
2	b	[illegible]
3	a	[illegible]
4	d	[illegible]

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. They .... to the supermarket on weekends. *(Bilbeis - Sharkia 2022)*
 a. usually goes b. goes usually c. go never d. never go
2. SB How .... do you get up at 6.30 a.m ? - Always. *(Multidisciplinary - Beheira 2021)*
 a. many b. long c. much d. often
3. We .... go to school on Fridays. *(South Giza - Giza 2020)*
 a. always b. often c. never d. usually

4. WB We .... speak English during our English lessons.
   a. not b. yet c. always d. ever
5. WB We .... go to the beach in winter. It's too cold to swim. (Multidisciplinary - Fayoum 2021)
   a. never b. always c. usually d. sometimes
6. Which lesson .... after home economics on Sunday ? (Mashtoul - Sharkia 2020)
   a. will b. has c. does d. is

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. Hala .... goes to school early. She never comes late.
   a. never b. ever c. always d. sometimes
8. Ashraf always travels on a train. This means he .... travels by plane.
   a. always b. never c. sometimes d. often
9. Salma gets ten out of ten. She .... studies her lessons very well.
   a. never b. sometimes c. always d. ever
10. How often .... he eat lunch at a restaurant ?
   a. is b. do c. does d. were

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. Dina always goes swimming. She goes swimming on Thursdays and Saturdays. (Benha - Qalyoubia 2020) (........)
2. SB We both get up in half past six. (Rafah - North Sinai 2022) (........)
3. My father travels always by plane. (Wasat Alexandria - Alexandria 2020) (........)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

4. They never walks to school. (........)
5. Sara and Mona always are happy. (........)
6. He eats never unhealthy food. (........)
7. When do you eat vegetables ? - Twice a day. (........)

General Exercises  LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Heidi and Nada are talking about school timetable.

Heidi : What's your favourite subject ?
Nada : (1) .... And you ?
Heidi : Social studies.
Nada : Do we have an English lesson tomorrow ?
Heidi : (2) .... It's after science. (3) .... ?
Nada : The science lesson starts at 10 o'clock.
Heidi : (4) .... ?
Nada : My favourite day is today, we have maths and P.E. What about you ?
Heidi : (5) ....
Nada : Wednesday is cool, too.

2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Othmano lives in Rowanda. This is a typical day for him. On school days, Othmano gets up at half past six. He usually has breakfast with his family. His school is far away, so **he** takes the school bus at five to seven. He arrives at school at quarter past seven. The school bell rings at eight o'clock and the pupils go to the school hall. Othmano has four lessons before the break. At break he talks to his friends and plays in the playground. He has more lessons after **break**. He has lunch at 12:30. The school day finishes at 3:00. He arrives home at 3:30.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.
....
2. Do you think Othmano's typical day is good or bad ?
....
3. Why does Othmano take the bus to school ?
....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun "**he**" refers to ....
   a. Othmano b. Adel c. Othmano's friend d. Samy
5. The school .... rings at 8 o'clock.
   a. pin b. bell c. bill d. bin
6. The underlined word "**break**" has the same meaning as ....
   a. work b. rest c. fun d. lunch

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. WB The subject for learning about cooking and skills for the home is called ....
   a. home economics b. science c. drama d. computer studies
2. WB .... is the subject for learning about what people believe in.
   a. Science b. Maths c. Art d. Religion
3. Yesterday was a/an .... day for me. It was the same as every day.
   a. ugly b. typical c. free d. different
4. .... is the time when you don't have lessons.
   a. Brake b. Book c. Break d. Bike
5. .... do you get up early on holidays? - Never.
   a. What time b. When c. How often d. How old
6. A plane .... fast.
   a. always is b. is always c. never is d. is never
7. We learn about acting in .... class.
   a. drama b. science c. maths d. Arabic
8. SB What .... does school start? - At 8 a.m.
   a. sport b. time c. class d. lesson
9. SB Arabic is the main .... of Arab countries.
   a. subject b. sport c. language d. hobby
10. Do you often .... your friends?
    a. visits b. visit c. to visit d. visiting

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Injy and Amal **has** math on Sundays. (..........)
2. How **many** do you watch TV? - Sometimes. (..........)
3. He **does usually** exercises on Fridays. *(El Sharabia - Cairo 2022)* (..........)
4. They play in the club every day. They **never** go to the club. (..........)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Your favourite subject"

....

LESSONS 3 & 4

SB pages 16 : 18 WB pages 81 & 82



1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

school uniform (n)	زى مدرسى	culture (n)	ثقافة
school rules (n)	القواعد المدرسية	way (n)	طريقة / وسيلة
school objects (n)	أدوات مدرسية	rain (ed) (v), (n)	تمطر / مطر
cycle (d) (v)	يقود (دراجة)	snowmobile (n)	دراجة جليدية
follow (ed) (v)	يتبع	canoe (d) (v), (n)	يجدف / قارب طويل ضيق

تنويه
- Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- قاموس المعاصر اللغوى لإتقان المفردات اللغوية.
- Dictation استعد للاختبار الاملاء ملحق Master your term.

5 min Pop Quiz تدريب يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Step 1 Read key Vocabulary — الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ المفردات اللغوية المدورة.

Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary — الخطوة الثانية : تدرب على المفردات اللغوية.

* يقوم الطالب بأداء تدريب تلقائى على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها.

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

snowmobiles - follow - school uniform - canoe - cycle

1. Pupils of primary school should wear their .... in Egypt.
2. You can cross the canal using a ....
3. People use .... in areas of heavy snow.
4. All the students should .... the school rules.

Lesson 3

SB pages 16 & 17 WB page 81

football shirt (n)	قميص كرة القدم	teachers' room (n)	حجرة المدرسين
pencil case (n)	مقلمة (حافظة أقلام)	motorbike (n)	دراجة بخارية
office (n)	مكتب	towel (n)	منشفة / فوطة

Lesson 4

SB page 18 WB page 82

forms (n)	أشكال / أنماط	village (n)	قرية
transport (n)	النقل والمواصلات	journey (n)	رحلة طويلة
travel (led) (v)	يسافر	Lake Bunyonyi	بحيرة بونيونى
again (adv)	مرة ثانية	Uganda (n)	دولة أوغندا

forms of transport أنماط / أشكال المواصلات

in a village فى القرية	in a city فى المدينة	on water على الماء	in the air فى الجو
animal/camel حيوان / جمل	car / taxi سيارة / تاكسى	boat قارب	plane طائرة

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
wear يرتدى	wore	worn
forget ينسى	forgot	forgotten

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
kind طيب / عطوف	unkind قاسى / غير طيب
outside خارج	inside داخل
dangerous خطر	safe آمن
forget ينسى	remember يتذكر

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات (glossary)

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

canoe	a small, narrow boat for one or two people	قارب طويل ضيق
cycle	ride a bicycle	يركب دراجة
snowmobile	a vehicle that you can drive on snow	دراجة جليدية
Uganda	a country in central Africa	دولة أوغندا

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 عند جمع الأسماء المنتهية بحرف (y) يسبقه حرف ساكن، يتم حذف حرف (y) ويضاف (ies) فى نهاية الاسم

* a hobby → hobbies
* a country → countries

* أما إذا كان الاسم منتهى بحرف (y) قبله حرف متحرك (a / e / i / o / u) لا يتم حذف (y) ويضاف (s) فى نهاية الاسم عند الجمع.

* a boy → boys
* a toy → toys

Reading on lesson 4 SB page 18

2 on time / in time

* on time — فى الوقت المحدد
  ex.: - Good students arrive at school on time.
* in time — فى الوقت المناسب (قبل الوقت المحدد قليلاً)
  ex.: - Ali saved the young boy in time.

Reading on lesson 4 SB page 18

3 افعال تعبر عن طريقة السفر أو وسيلة المواصلات

* He cycles to school. (by bicycle / bike)
* Bassem always drives to work. (by car)
* We often walk to school. (on foot)
* Rahma usually flies to Hurghada. (by plane)
* Tourists sailed to Alexandria. (by boat / ship)

Reading on lesson 4 SB page 18

4 by canoe = in a canoe بالقارب (الضيق الطويل)

ex.: - The children go to school in a canoe (by canoe).

Reading on lesson 4 SB page 18

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

on the right	على جهة اليمين	on the timetable	فى جدول المواعيد
on the other side of	على الجانب الآخر من	work in groups	يعمل فى مجموعات
take a difficult journey to	يقوم برحلة صعبة لـ	help each other	يساعد كلًا منا الآخر
		travel on a snowmobile	يسافر / ينتقل فى دراجة جليدية
take the same time	يستغرق نفس الوقت	important to	هام لـ
say unkind things	يقول أشياء غير طيبة		
follow school rules	يتبع القواعد المدرسية	live a long way from	يعيش بعيدًا عن

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

تدرب على ٣٧ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع | Pop Quiz



- on Lesson 3 WB page 81

Fatma : Hi Mariam. Is this Malak's pen ?
Mariam : No, that's Judy's pen. She always uses that pen.
Fatma : OK. Whose bag is this ?
Mariam : That's Huda's bag.
Fatma : No, it's not Huda's bag. Her bag is red. This bag is blue.
Mariam : Oh, OK. Then it's Malak's bag.
Fatma : There's a book on the desk. Is that your book ?
Mariam : No, it's the teachers' book. All the teachers use that book.
Fatma : Ah, I know whose ruler this is. It has Dalia and Azza's names on it.

Listening skill

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :
- Whose bag is it ? It's ....

a. Malak's b. Judy's c. Mariam's d. Fatma's

- on Lesson 4 SB page 18

Narrator 2 : 1
Narrator : Every morning, children from this village[1] in Egypt cycle[2] to school. It is a cheap[3] and healthy[4] way[5] to travel.
Boy : When the roads are busy, the bus is slow but the bike is quick[6] !

Narrator 2 : 2
Narrator : These children live next to Lake[7] Bunyonyi in Uganda[8]. Their school is on the other side[9] of the lake, so they do not walk to school. They go in a canoe[10]. The canoe takes the children to school and home again every day.
Boy : Sometimes, when it rains[11] a lot, the water's dangerous and we can't go to school that day.

Narrator 2 : 3
Narrator : This boy lives in the USA. In winter, there is a lot of snow[12]. The children travel to school on a snowmobile[13] !
Boy : It's cold, but it's fast - and fun !

Check Vocabulary

(1) قرية	(2) يركب دراجة	(3) رخيص	(4) صحى	(5) طريقة	(6) سريع
(7) بحيرة	(8) دولة أوغندا	(9) الجانب الآخر	(10) قارب طويل ضيق		(11) تمطر

Check Vocabulary

(12) جليد | (13) مركبة للتنقل فوق الجليد



- on Lesson 4 SB page 18

How do they go to school ?







- In some countries, children live a long way from[1] their school. They do not go to school by car, bus or train.

1. Every morning, children from this village in Egypt cycle to school. It is a cheap and healthy way to travel. They can always arrive on time[2].
2. These children live next to Lake Bunyonyi, in Uganda. Their school is on the other side of[3] the lake, so they do not walk to school. They go in a canoe[4]. The canoe takes the children to school and home again every day.
3. This boy lives in the USA. In winter[5], there is a lot of snow. The children travel to school on a snowmobile[6] !

Important Expressions & Prepositions

(1) على مسافة بعيدة من
(2) فى الوقت المحدد
(3) على الجانب الآخر من
(4) يذهب بالقارب (الطويل الضيق)
(5) فى فصل الشتاء
(6) بالدراجة الجليدية

Answer the following questions :

- Giving the main idea. إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

Learn 1. Give a suitable title for this passage.
- *How students go to school.*

- Critical thinking skill. مهارة التفكير النقدى

Practise 2. What do you think the best way to go to school is ? Why ?
- ....

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. There is heavy ...., we need to take our umbrellas.
   a. fog b. wind c. rain d. waves
2. Pens, notebooks and books are school ....
   a. uniforms b. rules c. objects d. subjects
3. Some children in Egypt .... to school.
   a. recycle b. cycle c. swim d. guess
4. The school .... should be followed in different schools.
   a. roles b. rulers c. rules d. rows

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

5. SB Sometimes, when it .... a lot, the water is dangerous and we can't arrive at school on time. *(Khanka – Qalyubia 202)*
   a. trains b. reads c. rains d. runs
6. WB Some children in Uganda go to school in a .... *(Multidisciplinary – Sohag 202)*
   a. canoe b. plane c. rocket d. mobile
7. SB We never .... unkind things to other students. *(Multidisciplinary – Cairo 202)*
   a. talk b. say c. speak d. see
8. My school .... is a white shirt and blue pants. *(West Cairo – Cairo 202)*
   a. rule b. uniform c. form d. picture

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. You can know a lot about different .... of countries using the internet
   a. cultures b. babies c. toilets d. rooms
10. A famous footballer gave me his football ....
    a. net b. helmet c. racket d. shirt
11. Buses, cars, trains and motorbikes are forms of ....
    a. clothes b. transport c. subjects d. energy

Definitions

12. A .... is a small, narrow boat for one or two people.
    a. ship b. ferry c. canoe d. yacht

13. A .... is a vehicle that you can drive on snow.
    a. cart b. bicycle c. canoe d. snowmobile

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. In some cities, children live a long .... from their schools.
    a. way b. weight c. height d. length
15. By cycling to school, students can always arrive .... time.
    a. into b. on c. from d. about
16. How long does it .... to finish your work ?
    a. give b. have c. take d. talk

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

1. Asking and answering questions about people's belongings.
١. توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن ممتلكات الأشخاص.

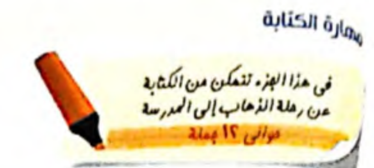
Questions	Answers
A : Is this Malak's pen ? - هل هذا قلم ملك ؟	**B :** No, that's Judy's pen. - لا. إنه قلم جودي.
A : Whose bag is this ? - ملك من هذه الحقيبة ؟	**B :** It's Malak's bag. - إنها حقيبة ملك.
A : Is that your book ? - هل هذا كتابك ؟	**B :** No, it's the teacher's book. - لا. إنه كتاب المعلم

2. Asking and answering questions about the journey to school
٢. توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن رحلة الذهاب إلى المدرسة

Questions	Answers
A : How do you travel to school ? كيف تذهب إلى المدرسة ؟	**B :** I travel to school by bus. اذهب إلى المدرسة بالأتوبيس.
A : How long does it take ? كم المدة التي تستغرقها الرحلة ؟	**B :** It takes 15 minutes. تستغرق الرحلة ١٥ دقيقة.
A : Why do some children need to take difficult journeys to school ? لماذا يحتاج بعض الأطفال للقيام برحلات صعبة للوصول لمدارسهم ؟	**B :** Because this is the only way they can go to school. لأن هذه هي الوسيلة الوحيدة للذهاب للمدرسة
A : Why is it important to go to school ? لماذا من المهم الذهاب إلى المدرسة ؟	**B :** Because we all need to learn and study. لأننا جميعًا نحتاج أن نتعلم وندرس.

3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة



Your journey to school
رحلة الوصول إلى المدرسة

1. Children go to school in different ways. يذهب الأطفال بطرق مختلفة للمدرسة.
2. Some live a long way from their school. بعضهم يعيش على مسافة بعيدة من المدرسة.
3. They can't walk to school. لا يستطيعون الذهاب للمدرسة سيرًا على الأقدام.
4. They go by car, bus or train. يستقلون السيارة أو اتوبيس أو قطار.
5. I go to school by bike. أنا أذهب للمدرسة بالدراجة.
6. It's a cheap and healthy way to travel to school. إنها وسيلة رخيصة وصحية للذهاب للمدرسة.
7. The bike can go in the busy road, too. الدراجة تستطيع التحرك فى الطرق المزدحمة أيضًا.
8. When the roads are busy, the bus is slow but the bike is quick. عندما تكون الطرق مزدحمة، تصبح حركة الأتوبيس بطيئة لكن الدراجة تكون سريعة.
9. The journey to school isn't easy but fun to me. رحلة الذهاب للمدرسة ليست سهلة لكنها ممتعة بالنسبة لى.
10. Sometimes it is not safe when roads are busy. أحيانًا لا تكون رحلة الذهاب للمدرسة آمنة عندما تكون الطرق مزدحمة.
11. But I can always arrive at school on time. لكنى دائمًا استطيع الوصول للمدرسة فى الوقت المحدد.
12. It usually takes the same time every day. عادة ما تستغرق الرحلة نفس الوقت يوميًا.

III Language

معاك — شاهد وتعلم

Possessive ('s) الملكية ('s)

تستخدم ('s) الملكية فى الحالات الآتية :

1 تستخدم عادة مع الأسماء المفردة من الكائنات الحية (الأشخاص - الحيوانات ......).

ex.
- a boy's name اسم ولد
- a spider's web شبكة عنكبوت
- a dog's tail ذيل كلب
- a king's palace قصر ملك
- Sara's book كتاب سارة
- a doctor's appointment موعد الدكتور

2 تستخدم ('s) مع الأسماء الجمع غير المنتظمة (غير المنتهية بـ -s).

ex.
- men's coats معاطف الرجال
- children's clothes ملابس أطفال
- women's bags حقائب السيدات

3 تستخدم ('s) مع الوظائف للإشارة لمكان العمل.

ex.
- the butcher's محل الجزار
- the baker's المخبز
- the chemist's الصيدلية
- the grocer's محل البقالة

4 تستخدم (s') مع الأسماء الجمع المنتظمة المنتهية بـ (-s) من الكائنات الحية (الأشخاص - الحيوانات .....) ولكن بوضع الفاصلة العليا (') فقط بعد (s).

ex.
- The boys' house منزل الأولاد
- horses' legs أرجل الخيول

5 تستخدم ('s) فى حالة المفرد أو (s') فى حالة الجمع مع التعبيرات التى تدل على الوقت.

ex.
- a week's holiday اجازة لمدة أسبوع
- tomorrow's weather طقس الغد
- ten minutes' break استراحة لمدة عشر دقائق
- two days' work عمل يومان

6 تستخدم ('s) أو (') فقط مع الأسماء المفردة المنتهية بـ (-s)

ex.
- Mr Jones's house or Mr Jones' house.

7 تستخدم ('s) بعد الاسم الأخير فى حالة إمتلاك شخصين او أكثر لشئ ما.

ex.
- WB Can you see Kamal and Amir's classroom ?

8 لا تستخدم ('s) مع أسماء الجماد.

ex.
- exercise book كتاب تدريبات
- computer screen شاشة كمبيوتر
- ink pen قلم حبر
- table leg رجل المنضدة

9 يمكن استخدام (belong to) بدلًا من ('s) الملكية للتعبير عن الملكية.

ex.
- This is Sama's dress. = This dress belongs to Sama.

Stop here! on Language (Answered & Explained)

في هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Room one is the .... room. They are holding a meeting.
   a. teacher b. teachers c. teacher's d. teachers'
2. Room one is the .... room. His name is Mr Sakr.
   a. teacher b. teachers c. teacher's d. teachers'
3. This is the ....
   a. school gate b. school's gate c. schools' gate d. schools's gate

No.	Answer + Explanation
1	d (teachers') [illegible]
2	c (teacher's) [illegible]
3	[illegible] (school gate) [illegible]

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. WB These are my .... jackets. They go to the same school.
   a. brother b. brothers c. brother's d. brothers'
   (Fayed - Ismailia 2022)
2. This dress .... Noha. *(Naqada - Qena 2020)*
   a. belonging b. belongs c. belong d. belongs to
3. SB They are not the .... notebooks.
   a. children b. childs' c. children's d. childrens'
4. .... book is it? - It's Ali's. *(El Fashn-Beni Suef 2020)*
   a. Who b. Whose c. Whom d. When
5. SB The .... are Judy and Ola. *(Multidisciplinary - Souhag 2021)*
   a. girls names b. girls' names c. girl's names d. girl names
6. SB This is the .... They are talking about English. *(Multidisciplinary - Gharbia 2021)*
   a. teacher room b. teacher's room
   c. teachers' room d. teachers room

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. He bought a new ....
   a. computer's screen b. computers' screen
   c. computer screen d. computers screen
8. Whose bag is this? - It is ....
   a. Dina b. Dina's c. Dinas' d. Dinas
9. I need to go to the .... to buy some bread.
   a. baker's b. bakers c. baker d. bakers'
10. This is the .... gate.
    a. house b. house's c. houses's d. houses'
11. We will meet at six in the ....
    a. car park b. car's park c. cars' park d. car park's
12. This mobile belongs to ....
    a. Adam b. Adams c. Adam's d. Adams'
13. This .... tail is black.
    a. cat b. cat's c. cats' d. cats

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. It's <u>Dalia's and Azza</u> ruler. *(Ashmoun - Menoufia 2022)* (..........)
2. SB The <u>girl</u> name is Lama. *(Samalout-Minia 2020)* (..........)
3. WB This is <u>Alis</u> phone. It's new. *(Kotour-Gharbia 2020)* (..........)
4. WB My sister goes to a <u>girl's</u> school. (..........)
5. SB <u>When</u> shoes are these? - They are Ali's. (..........)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. This is <u>Halas'</u> website. (..........)
7. We buy medicine at the <u>chemist</u>. (..........)

General Exercises On LESSONS 3 & 4



• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. My school is .... from my house.
   a. near b. far c. easy d. long
2. I .... to school every morning.
   a. recycle b. cycle c. drive d. take
3. I .... at my school on time.
   a. drive b. arrive c. walk d. talk
4. It's .... to go to school by bike.
   a. unhealthy b. bad c. boring d. healthy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB You shouldn't say .... things to other students.
   a. kind b. unkind c. good d. happy
2. SB The canoe .... the children to school and home again every day.
   a. takes b. forgets c. dives d. tells
3. She used a .... to clean the wet table.
   a. form b. towel c. road d. canoe
4. A snowmobile is one of the forms of ....
   a. journeys b. subjects c. transport d. rules
5. This is .... book.
   a. Fares b. Fares's c. Fares' d. b & c
6. "........" is the opposite of "safe".
   a. Expensive b. Dangerous c. Exciting d. Weak
7. The man washed the ....
   a. doctor car b. doctor's car c. car doctor d. car's doctor
8. I hope you have a .... journey.
   a. dangerous b. difficult c. hot d. safe

9. We always .... to the teacher carefully.
   a. help b. do c. forget d. listen
10. Mrs Mona is ....
    a. Saras mother b. mother Sara
    c. Sara's mother d. mother's Sara

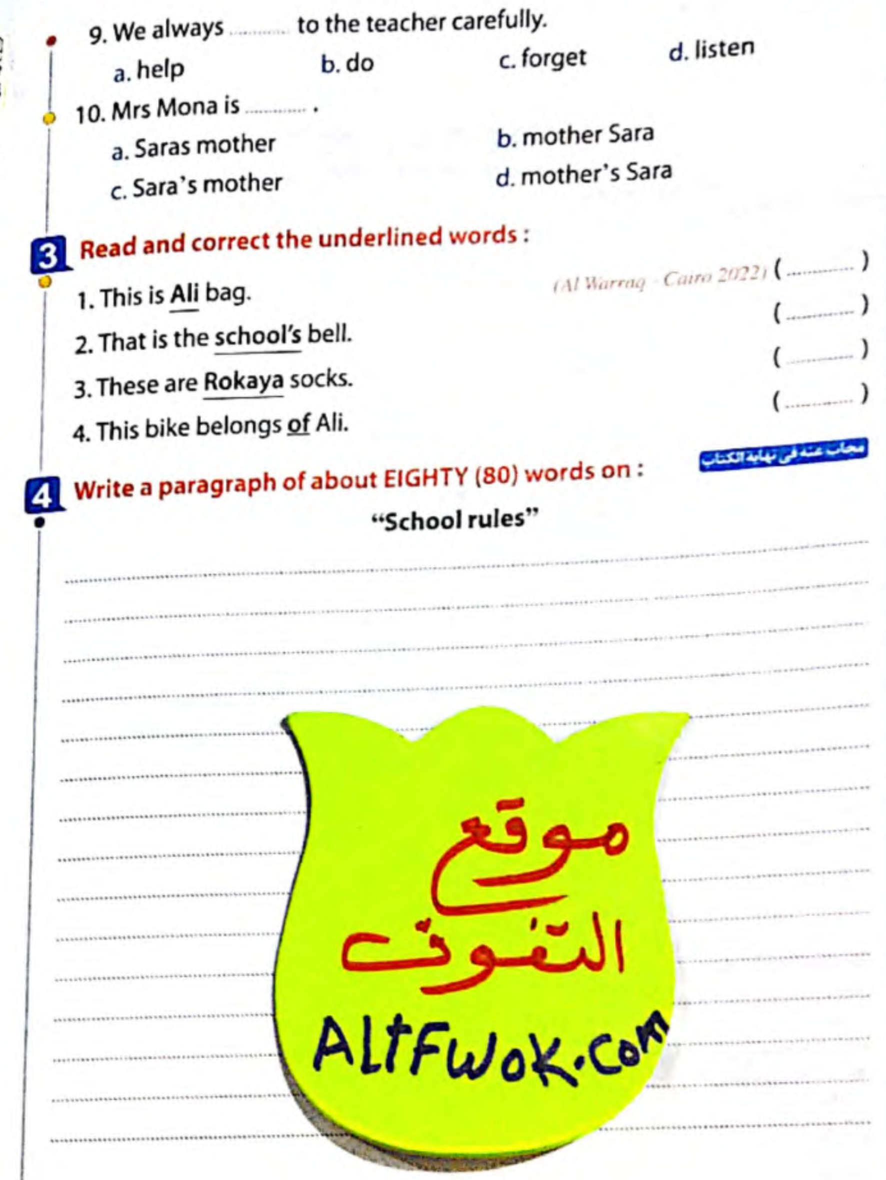
3 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. This is Ali bag. (Al Warraq - Cairo 2022) (........)
2. That is the school's bell. (........)
3. These are Rokaya socks. (........)
4. This bike belongs of Ali. (........)

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"School rules"



LESSONS **5 & 6**

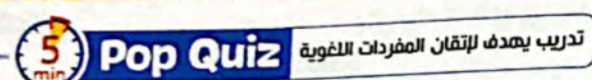
SB pages 19 & 20 WB pages 83 & 84

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

project (n)	مشروع	grade (n)	صف دراسى
message (n)	رسالة	put on (phr.v)	يرتدى
shower (n)	دش / استحمام		

تنويه
- **Key Vocabulary** هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- **قاموس المعاصر اللغوى** لإتقان المفردات اللغوية.
- **Dictation** استعد لاختبار الاملاء ملحق **Master your term**.



Pop Quiz تدريب يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Step 1 Read key Vocabulary — الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ المفردات اللغوية المحورية

Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary — الخطوة الثانية : تدرب على المفردات اللغوية

* يقوم الطالب بأداء تدريب تلقائى على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها.

⊙ **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

puts on - grade - message - shower - project

1. What .... are you in ? - Prep one.
2. Ali sent me a .... to tell me about the meeting.
3. When I get up, I have a .... to be fresh.
4. Hassan .... his school uniform at seven a.m.

Lesson 5 SB page 19 WB page 83

French (n) (adj)	اللغة الفرنسية / فرنسى (الجنسية)	quite (adv)	إلى حد ما

Lesson 6 SB page 20 WB page 84

preparatory	إعدادى / المرحلة الإعدادية	separate (d) (v)	يفصل
dinner (n)	وجبة العشاء	reply (ied) (v), (n)	يرد - رد
items (n)	أشياء / أصناف	flag (n)	علم

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
wake up يستيقظ	woke up	woken up

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
put on	يرتدى	take off	يخلع ملابسه
come	يأتى	leave	يغادر
correct	صحيح	incorrect	غير صحيح
friendly	ودود	unfriendly	غير ودود

General Notes on Reading & Listening

تستخدم هذه الظروف فى تقوية معنى الصفة وتأتى غالبًا قبل الصفات.

1 very - quite
- I am good at maths. جيد فى
- I am quite good at maths. جيد إلى حد ما
- I am very good at maths. جيد جدًا
- I am not good at maths. ليس جيد

SB page 19

2 good for / good at مفيد لـ / جيد لـ
- **good for**
  ex.:- Milk is good for our bones عظم.
- **good at (inf. + ing) / noun اسم** جيد فى
  ex.:- She is good at English / reading English.

Reading on lesson 5 WB page 83

3 What about you ? وماذا عنك ؟

يستخدم هذا التعبير فى المحادثات عند الاستفسار عن شىء يخص المخاطب.

A : What's your favourite subject ?
B : I like science. What about you ?
A : I like science, too.

Reading on lesson 6 WB page 84

4 quiet - quite
- **quiet = calm** صفة بمعنى (هادئ)
  ex.:- The village is quiet.

* **quite +** صفة / ظرف إلى حد ما
  ex.:- He is quite good at maths.
  - He runs quite quickly.

Reading on lesson 5 WB page 83

5 too - either

* **too** تستخدم (too) بمعنى ايضا وتاتى فى نهاية الجملة المثبتة.
  ex.:- I like music, too.

Reading on lesson 6 SB page 20

* **either** تستخدم (either) بمعنى ايضا وتاتى فى نهاية الجملة المنفية.
  ex.:- I don't like music, either.

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

through the internet	من خلال الإنترنت	talk on the bus	يتحدث فى الأتوبيس
go shopping	يذهب للتسوق	from another country	من دولة أخرى
at the weekend	فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	come home from school	يعود للمنزل من المدرسة
have a shower	يستحم	end with	ينهى بـ
Hooray = Hurray	تستخدم للتعبير عن الفرحة والدهشة	send through	يرسل خلال
best wishes	أطيب التمنيات	work with computers	يتعامل مع أجهزة الحاسب الآلى

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening
تدرب على ٣٧ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع | Pop Quiz



Listening

on Lesson 5 SB page 19



Leila : There's the bell[1] !
Aya : What subject have we got next ?
Leila : Let's look at the timetable[2]. We've got computer studies next, in the hall. Hooray !



Aya : Computer studies ... I'm not very good at computer studies !
Leila : I love it ! It's my favourite ! What's your favourite subject, Aya ?
Aya : I like science and languages.
Leila : Are you good at languages ?
Aya : I'm quite good at English, and I'm not bad at French.
Leila : Who's our English teacher this year ?
Aya : It's Mrs Amal.
Leila : Oh good. She's really friendly[3]. When have we got English ?
Aya : It's after break[4].
Leila : What time is break ?
Aya : It's from quarter past ten to half past ten. Let's meet in the playground[5] and go to the library.
Leila : OK !

Check Vocabulary
(1) جرس (2) جدول الحصص / المواعيد (3) ودود (4) راحة / فسحة (5) ملعب

Listening skill
⊙ Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :
• .... is Aya's favourite subject.
a. Maths b. Art c. English d. Science

Reading

on Lesson 5 WB page 83

Hatem : What's your favourite subject, Hazem ?
Hazem : I like English.
Hatem : Who's our English teacher this year ?
Hazem : It's Mrs Eman.
Hatem : She's a good teacher. And when have we got English ?
Hazem : We have it today, after break. Then we have maths.
Hatem : Good, I like maths. Are you good at maths ?
Hazem : I'm quite good at maths. I'm not bad at science, too.
Hatem : Yes, you're good at science. What time is break ?
Hazem : Now. Let's go to the playground.

• on Lesson 6 SB page 20

A Day in MY Life !

Amira is from Egypt.

Q : How old are you, and where are you from ?

A : I'm twelve years old, and I'm from Hurghada[1].

Q : What subjects do you like ?

A : This year, I'm in preparatory[2] 1 at school. My favourite[3] subjects are science, computer studies[4] and maths. We have science and maths in the first lesson every day, but we only have computer studies on Wednesday. I like music, too[5], but I'm not very good at it !

Q : What do you usually do after school ?

A : I sometimes read or watch TV. I always do my homework[6] before I have dinner[7]. After dinner, I usually have a shower[8] and read my book in bed. What time do you wake up[9] and go to bed ?

Check Vocabulary

(1) مدينة الغردقة	(2) المرحلة الإعدادية	(3) مفضل	(4) مادة الحاسب الآلى	
(5) أيضًا	(6) واجب منزلى	(7) وجبة العشاء	(8) دش	(9) يستيقظ

• on Lesson 6 WB page 84

Hi Nagwa

How are you ? **You** want to know what my parents do at the weekend. My father works with computers. My mother is a teacher. My dad never works at the weekend, but sometimes my mum looks at students' homework! We often go shopping. When it is not very hot, we usually go to the park.



My brother always plays football when we go there! **He** is very good at football. What about you ? What do you do at the weekend ?

Best wishes

Nesma

Answer the following questions :

Understanding reference فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

Learn 1. The pronoun "He" in the text refers to ....

a. Nesma's cousin　b. Nesma's brother　c. Nesma's father　d. Nesma's teacher

Practise 2. The pronoun "You" in the first line refers to ....

a. Nesma　b. Nahed　c. Nagwa　d. Noha

Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

➲ **Key vocabulary**

1. What .... are you in ? - I'm in preparatory one.
   a. age　b. grade　c. colour　d. school
2. He always takes a .... after the training.
   a. bed　b. project　c. shower　d. hobby
3. They're doing a big .... to make a new mall in my city.
   a. nap　b. map　c. shopping　d. project
4. Breakfast, lunch and .... are meals.
   a. dinner　b. dessert　c. drones　d. dams

➲ **SB , WB and Previous Exams** تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

5. My brother is .... short for a basketball player. *(Zefta-Gharbia 2020)*
   a. quiet　b. quit　c. quite　d. quote
6. WB An email is a simple .... sent through the internet. *(El Manzala - Dakahlia 2022)*
   a. project　b. card　c. message　d. calendar

7. Taking .... is the favourite hobby for some tourists. They have modern cameras. (Multidisciplinary - Aswan 2..)
a. showers b. photos c. rest d. sandwiches

8. WB We often .... shopping at the weekend. (Multidisciplinary - Menia 20..)
a. go b. make c. give d. lead

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. He is 14 years old, so he goes to a .... school.
a. preparatory b. primary c. kindergarten d. secondary

10. Pupils in my school must .... on their school uniform every day.
a. take b. put c. make d. talk

11. We all like Dr Amir because he is kind and ....
a. unkind b. friendly c. impatient d. greedy

12. Look at the .... We have a science lesson at 10:00 a.m.
a. date b. calendar c. timetable d. article

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. People who come .... China are Chinese.
a. to b. in c. from d. about

14. I like music, but I'm not very good .... it.
a. for b. on c. in d. at

15. He works .... computers. He is a computer engineer.
a. for b. on c. with d. from

16. I usually finish an email with ....
a. Hi b. Hello c. Dear d. Best wishes

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

Asking and answering questions about your school day.
توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن يومك الدراسى.

Questions 	Answers 
• What subjects have we got today ? ما المواد الدراسية التى ندرسها اليوم ؟	- We have computer studies and science. سندرس مادة الحاسب الآلى والعلوم
• What is your favourite subject ? ما هى المادة المفضلة بالنسبة لك ؟	- I like science. أحب مادة العلوم.
• Are you good at languages ? هل أنت جيد فى اللغات ؟	- I'm quite good at English, and I'm not bad at French. إلى حد ما أنا جيد فى اللغة الإنجليزية ولست سيئا فى مادة اللغة الفرنسية.
• Who is our English teacher this year ? من هو مدرسنا لمادة اللغة الإنجليزية هذا العام ؟	- It is Mrs Amal. إنها الأستاذة أمل
• When have we got English ? متى ندرس مادة اللغة الإنجليزية ؟	- It is after break. بعد فترة الاستراحة (الفسحة).
• What time is the break ? ما وقت فترة الاستراحة (الفسحة)؟	- It is from quarter past ten to half past ten. إنها من الساعة العاشرة والربع حتى الساعة العاشرة والنصف.

3. Writing مهارة الكتابة

Writing tips نصائح للكتابة

Punctuation : علامات الترقيم :

1 **full stop (.)** تستخدم فى نهاية الجملة الخبرية.
ex.: - I'm in grade one at school.

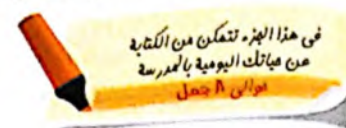
2 **question mark (?)** تستخدم فى نهاية السؤال.
ex.: - What subjects do you like ?
- Is it your book ?

3 **Comma (,)** تستخدم للفصل بين الأشياء فى قائمة.
ex.: - My favourite subjects are science , computer studies and maths.

4 **Apostrophe (')**
- تستخدم فى حالة الملكية.
ex.: - Amira's family is from Hurghada.
- The pupils' books are over there.
- تستخدم فى الاختصارات.
ex.: - I'm very good at English.
- He's my teacher.

▸ **Email :** رسالة البريد الإلكترونى :

An email is a simple message sent through the internet.
رسالة البريد الإلكترونى هى رسالة بسيطة ترسل من خلال / عبر الإنترنت.



Your daily life at school
حياتك اليومية بالمدرسة

1. This year, I'm in preparatory one at school.
١. هذا العام، أنا فى الصف الأول الإعدادى بالمدرسة.
2. I start my school day at 8 : 00 am.
٢. أبدأ يومى الدراسى فى الساعة الثامنة صباحًا.
3. We have 7 lessons a day.
٣. لدينا ٧ حصص كل يوم.
4. We have science in the first lesson every day.
٤. لدينا مادة العلوم فى الحصة الأولى كل يوم.
5. But we only have computer studies on Wednesday.
٥. لكن لدينا فقط مادة الحاسب الآلى فى يوم الأربعاء.
6. My favourite subjects are science, computer studies and maths .
٦. المواد المفضلة بالنسبة لى هى مادة العلوم والحاسب الآلى والرياضيات.
7. I am good at English, but I am not good at maths.
٧. أنا جيد فى اللغة الإنجليزية ولست جيدًا فى مادة الرياضيات.
8. I finish my school day at 2 : 00 pm.
٨. أنتهى من يومى الدراسى فى الساعة الثانية ظهرًا.





General Exercises



On LESSONS 5 & 6

• Understand • Apply • Create



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. How old is Amira ? - She is ....
   a. 13 b. 14 c. 12 d. 16
2. Where is she from ?
   a. Cairo b. Hurghada c. Luxor d. Giza
3. Amira is in .... one at school.
   a. kindergarten b. primary c. secondary d. preparatory
4. She likes ....
   a. English and art b. maths and Arabic
   c. science and sport d. science and maths

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Nehal is meeting a new girl called Toka.

Nehal : It's good to see you, Toka.
Toka : Me, too, Nehal.
Nehal : Where are you (1) .... ?
Toka : I'm from Hurghada.
Nehal : Hurghada! It is a beautiful (2) .... What grade are you in ?
Toka : I am in (3) .... one.
Nehal : What do you (4) .... after school ?
Toka : I usually (5) .... a shower and study my lessons.
Nehal : Do you have any hobbies ?
Toka : Yes, I like tennis.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. He sent me a message and he is waiting my .... now.
   a. flag b. reply c. grade d. hobby

2. We use a comma to .... between items in a list. *(Itay El Barud - Beheira 2022)*
   a. put on   b. separate   c. leave   d. take off
3. WB My father works .... computers.
   a. at   b. for   c. with   d. about
4. Mark is from France. He is ....
   a. English   b. French   c. Brazilian   d. American
5. WB We .... go to the beach in winter.
   a. always   b. ever   c. never   d. usually
6. What time do you .... up ? - At 6 : 00 am.
   a. wake   b. walk   c. wait   d. talk
7. SB I always .... my homework before I have dinner.
   a. take   b. do   c. make   d. have
8. My mother often .... shopping at the weekend.
   a. takes   b. goes   c. makes   d. has
9. SB I usually have a shower and read my book .... bed.
   a. onto   b. from   c. in   d. at
10. A : Are you .... at maths ? B : Yes, I'm not bad at it.
   a. good   b. favourite   c. bad   d. sad

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB What subjects do they **studied** ? (............)
2. He **don't** go swimming on Mondays. *(Hadayek El-Kobba - Cairo 2022)* (............)
3. No, he **ever** does his homework after breakfast. (............)
4. Where **are** you come from ? (............)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A day in your life"

....
....
....
....
....



Review on unit 2

SB page 21   WB page 85

Vocabulary	Language	Speaking
home economics مادة الاقتصاد المنزلي social studies الدراسات الاجتماعية drama مادة الفن المسرحي typical نموذجي / نمطي playground ملعب library مكتبة bell جرس hall صالة / قاعة cycle يركب دراجة canoe قارب صغير / يجدف snowmobile دراجة جليدية computer studies مادة الحاسب الآلي classroom حجرة دراسة uniform زي موحد pencil case مقلمة timetable جدول حصص / مواعيد Hurghada مدينة الغردقة break استراحة / فسحة	**1. Adverbs of frequency ١. ظروف التكرار** - always دائمًا - sometimes أحيانًا - often غالبًا - never أبدًا - usually عادة • تستخدم ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عدد مرات تكرار حدوث فعل ما : ex.: - She always studies hard for her exams. - He usually plays tennis on Friday. **2. Possessive ('s) ٢. الملكية ('s)** • تستخدم ('s) مع الأسماء المفردة (الأشخاص - الحيوانات) ex.: - a girl's name - a cat's tail • تستخدم (s') مع الأسماء الجمع المنتهية بـ (s) بإضافة (') فقط : ex.: - a girls' school - cats' legs • تستخدم ('s) مع الأسماء الجمع غير المنتظمة وغير المنتهية بـ (s) : ex.: - men's jackets - women's pens	**Asking and answering questions about school and timetables** السؤال عن المدرسة وجداول المواعيد والإجابة عليها : **Questions** / **Answers** • What subjects have we got today ? ما المواد الدراسية التي لدينا اليوم ؟ → - We have computer studies and science. سندرس مادتي الحاسب الآلي والعلوم • What is your favourite subject ? ما هي المادة المفضلة بالنسبة لك ؟ → - I like science. أحب مادة العلوم • Are you good at languages ? هل أنت جيد في اللغات ؟ → - I'm quite good at English, and I'm not bad at French. أنا جيد جدًا في اللغة الإنجليزية ولست سيئًا في مادة اللغة الفرنسية • Who is our English teacher this year ? من هو مدرسنا لمادة اللغة الإنجليزية هذا العام ؟ → - It is Mrs Amal. إنها الأستاذة أمل • When have we got English ? متى ندرس مادة اللغة الإنجليزية ؟ → - It is after the break. بعد فترة الاستراحة • What time is the break ? ما وقت فترة الاستراحة ؟ → - It is from quarter past ten to half past ten. إنها من الساعة العاشرة والربع إلى الساعة العاشرة والنصف

Skills

1 Speaking مهارة التحدث

تعتمد مهارة التحدث مع الاخرين بشكل أساسي على تكوين أسئلة ومعرفة كيفية الرد عليها.

Question السؤال	Answer الإجابة	Usage استخدام
That's the bell. What's the next lesson? What are your favourite subjects? What language are you good at? Do you like languages?	*Let's look at the timetable. We have got maths.* *I like maths and science.* *I love science and languages.* *Oh! I don't like languages I'm bad at French.* (Mallawi - Minia 2020)	سؤال عن جدول الحصص والمواد الدراسية
What's your typical day? When do you have breakfast? What time do you arrive at school? When do you finish school? Do you always do your homework after lunch?	*I usually get up at six o'clock.* *At six thirty with my family.* *At seven thirty.* *At one thirty in the afternoon.* *Yes, I do.*	سؤال عن الحياة اليومية
Hello! Ali. What's this? What's his name? How old is he? Where does he live? What is his hobby?	*This is a photo of my cousin.* *His name is Omar.* *He is fourteen.* *He lives in Giza.* *He likes chess.* Tur Sinai - South Sinai 2020	سؤال عن [illegible] صورة
How do you get to school? Why do you usually go by car? How long does it take? Why does it take a long time? Do you always arrive on time? Which is better to go to school in the car or on the bus?	*My dad drives us there in his car.* *Because my school is far away.* *It takes one hour.* *Because the roads are so busy.* *Yes, I do.* *Of course, in the car.* [illegible] 2022	سؤال عن رحلة الذهاب إلى المدرسة

2 Writing Skill مهارة الكتابة

- عناصر تساعدك على تنظيم أفكارك للتعامل مع معارة الكتابة متبوعة بنموذج.

My typical day

start	Activities
I get up at	I ...... take a shower - cycle - play read a book - watch TV.

Meals	School
I have breakfast at ...... I have lunch at ...... I have dinner at	I go to school at ...... I go to school by ...... I go to school with ......

Lessons	End
I have ...... lessons a day. I am good at ...... I am not good at	The school finishes at ...... I go to bed at ......

Sample

I am Adam. This is a typical day for me. I usually get up at seven. I take a shower. I have my breakfast at 7:30 with my family. I cycle to school. I have eight lessons a day. The break is from ten to quarter past ten. I play with my friends in the playground. I am good at English, but I am not good at science. The school finishes at 3 p.m. I have lunch at 3:30. I do my homework. I sometimes read or watch TV. Sometimes I play video games with my brother. I have dinner at 9 p.m. I go to bed at 10 p.m.

تبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب
تخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة، قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على حل سؤال
فقرة الإنشائية فى الورقة الإمتحانية (٣٦ جملة)

1 My typical day

I am Osama[1]. I live in Cairo[2]. I have a typical school day[3]. I get up at 6 : 30 am[4]. I have my breakfast with my family[5]. I walk to school on foot because my school isn't far[6]. At school, I have seven lessons a day[7]. During the break, I talk to my friends[8]. I go home at 3 o'clock[9]. I have my lunch[10]. After that, I do my homework[11]. I watch Tv or play video games with my brother[12]. I always go to bed at 10 p.m[13].

2 How children go to school

Children in different countries go to school[14]. Children in Egypt cycle to school[15]. They use bikes because they are cheap and clean[16]. Children in the USA travel to schools on snowmobiles[17]. They use snowmobiles in winter[18]. They can't use cars because there is always a lot of snow[19]. In Uganda, children use a canoe[20]. There is a lake and their school is on the other side[21]. The canoe takes the children to school and home again every day[22]. I think children go on foot when their school is not far[23].

3 My school day

My school day starts at 8 : 00 am[24]. We have different subjects. First, we have Arabic[25]. I like it very much[26]. After that, we have computer studies[27]. It teaches us how to use computers and the internet[28]. We have a break for 30 minutes[29]. We have math and English[30]. During maths lesson, we learn about numbers[31]. I enjoy the English lesson[32]. I learn English to communicate with other people all over the world[33]. In the last lesson, we do the hobby of drawing and painting[34]. I enjoy my school day very much[35]. It finishes at two o'clock[36].

Test on unit 2

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونيا وتصويبه

• Understand • Apply • Create

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

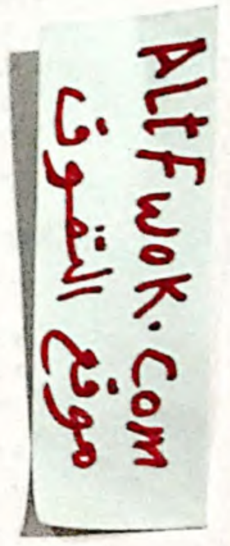
1. Akeyo lives in ....
   a. Nairobi b. Cairo c. Paris d. Rome
2. Her .... drive her to school.
   a. brothers b. uncles c. sisters d. parents
3. Akeyo's school is ....
   a. near b. far away c. not remote d. difficult
4. Akeyo goes to the .... to read.
   a. playground b. bookshop c. club d. library

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Samar and Aya are talking about how they go to school.

Samar : How do you go to school ?
Aya : (1) .... And you ?
Samar : (2) ....
Aya : Why do you usually go by bus ?
Samar : (3) ....
Aya : (4) .... ?
Samar : It takes 50 minutes to get to school.
Aya : (5) .... ?
Samar : I think it is better to go by car.
Aya : I agree with you.



C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

I'm Nada. I live in Hurghada **by** the Red Sea. I'm in preparatory one. My favourite subjects are science and home economics. **I** have science and

maths in the first lesson every day, but I only have home economics on Tuesday. I always do my homework before I have dinner. I usually have a light dinner عشاء خفيف : a cheese sandwich or some vegetables. I usually have a shower and surf the internet on my mobile phone. I sleep at 10:00 p.m. But before sleeping, I prepare my uniform and my school bag.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What does the underlined pronoun "I" refer to ?

....

2. Give a suitable title for the passage.

....

3. Why do you think Nada's mobile phone is useful ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. Nada goes to bed at ....
   a. 10:00 a.m.   b. 12 p.m.   c. 10:00 p.m.   d. 1: 00 a.m.
5. Nada does her homework .... she has dinner.
   a. in   b. before   c. after   d. next
6. The underlined word "**by**" has the same meaning as ".........".
   a. above   b. under   c. next to   d. far away

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My village is .... far from the city center.
   a. queue   b. quit   c. quite   d. quiet
2. WB An email is a simple .... sent through the Internet.
   a. subject   b. message   c. blog   d. post
3. We go to the .... in science lessons.
   a. garden   b. laboratory   c. park   d. club
4. This is the ....
   a. school playground   b. schools' playground
   c. school's playground   d. school playground's

5. It's healthy to .... to school. (Exam / ... 2017)
   a. cycle   b. use   c. recycle   d. rain
6. Reading and painting are my favourite ....
   a. sports   b. languages   c. subjects   d. hobbies
7. I .... on my school uniform at 7 a.m.
   a. have   b. talk   c. take   d. put
8. We use a question mark at the .... of a question.
   a. first   b. left   c. end   d. top
9. Sama .... happy when she meets her friends.
   a. are always   b. is always   c. always is   d. always
10. The .... is Ali.
   a. boys' name   b. boy's name   c. boy's the name   d. boys'

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. She works in a famous chemist. (..........)
2. Let's goes to the summer camp. (..........)
3. Who's book is this ? (... 2017) (..........)
4. SB The girl's names are Sara and Toka. (..........)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

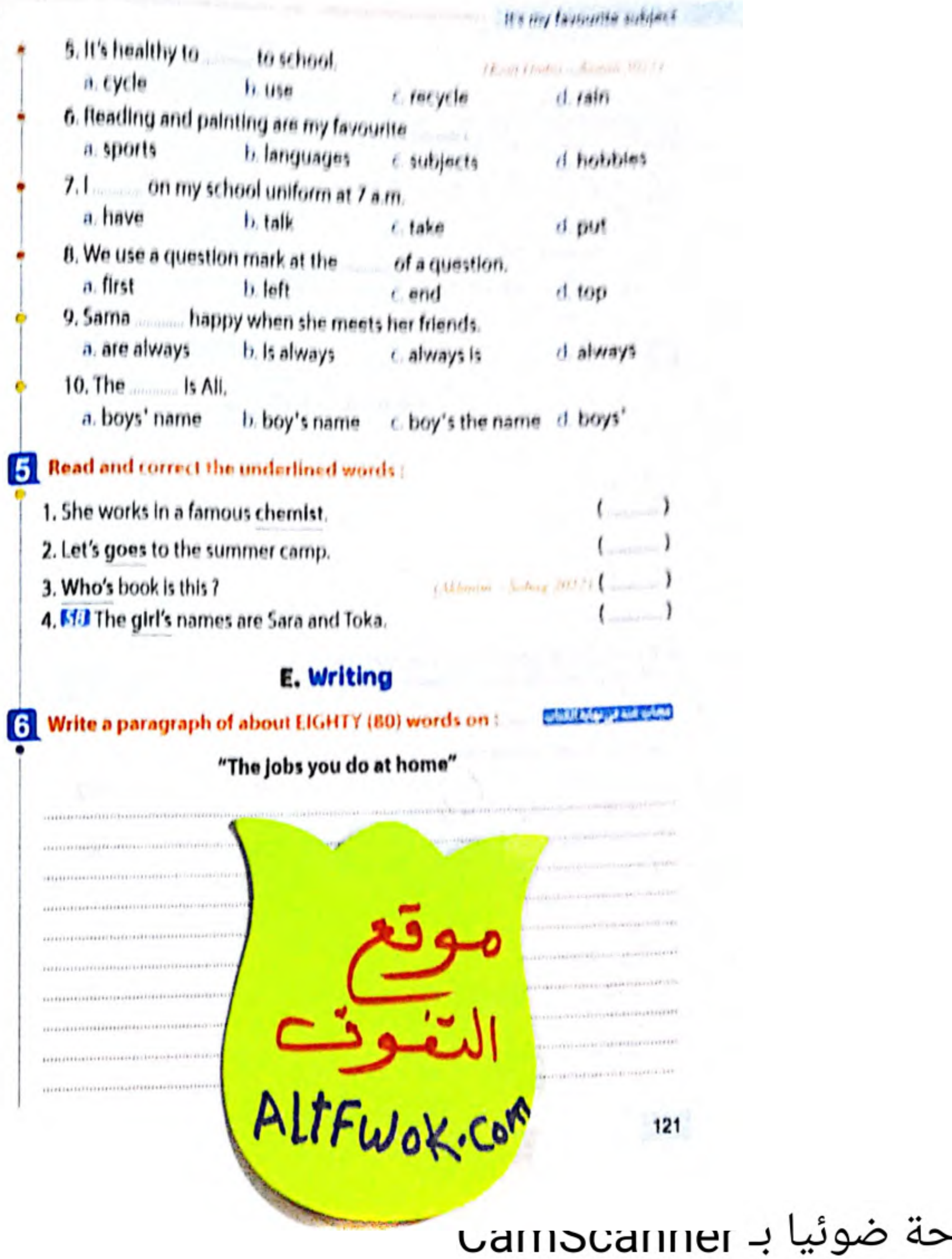
"The jobs you do at home"

....

....

....

....



Stop here !

1. Mini-Test on unit 2 for Al-Azhar students
اختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues :

A. Salma : .... ?
Mariem : Today is Monday.

B. Tabarak : How often do you go to the library ?
Nada : ....

2 Write a paragraph of five sentences about :

"Your school day"

....
....
....
....
....
....

2. Use your brain, think smart
طبق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Ain Shams University is the best one in the Arab ....
   a. village b. city c. world d. country
2. "Join" is the opposite of "..............".
   a. separate b. take on c. wake d. put on
3. Home economics .... my favourite subject at school when I was at primary school.
   a. is b. was c. has d. had
4. It's time .... lunch. I've to leave.
   a. to b. for c. about d. onto
5. Which sentence is correct?
   a. This is a girl school. b. This is a girl's school.
   c. This is a girls school. d. This is a girls' school.

Quiz on units 1 & 2
اختبار تراكمي على الوحدات (١ و ٢)

- يقوم المعلم باختيار اختبار مصغر (واحد) من (A) or (B) لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمعلومات الواردة في الوحدات





* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(Masr El-Gedida - Cairo 2022)

1. Soha .... like swimming.
   a. don't b. isn't c. aren't d. doesn't
2. We always .... our problems with our parents.
   a. go b. discuss c. drive d. cut
3. A child who doesn't have a father or mother is called a/an ....
   a. member b. cousin c. orphan d. adult
4. Playing chess is one of my favourite ....
   a. subjects b. colours c. hobbies d. ideas
5. We .... go to school on Fridays.
   a. always b. usually c. ever d. never

Model B



* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. This pen is .... I bought it for him yesterday.
   a. him b. hers c. mine d. his
2. The sun .... us heat and light.
   a. gives b. giving c. given d. gave
3. She .... voluntary work at a children's hospital.
   a. plays b. makes c. does d. watches
4. I look at the .... to know the time of the English lesson.
   a. library b. bell c. timetable d. laboratory
5. The athletes .... hard to be in the next Olympics.
   a. use b. train c. find d. make



UNIT 3

Different People

SB pages 22-31 WB pages 86-92

Objectives

- **Reading:**
  A description of a sports star; a blog post; Alice's Adventures in Wonderland
- **Writing:**
  A blog post about a friend
- **Listening:**
  Descriptions of people
- **Speaking:**
  Describing people; talking about likes and dislikes
- **Language:**
  have / has got; can / can't
- **Life Skills:**
  Respect for diversity; resilience

مسابقة

المعاصر في اللغة الانجليزية في نهاية الكتاب.

لإتقان الوحدة

- للمتابعة اليومية والشهرية ملحق Master your term.
- تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر ملحق الأزهر الشريف.
- للمهارات اللغوية ملحق Master your term.
- قاموس المعاصر اللغوى.
- Dictation لاختبار الإملاء فى ملحق Master your term.

أسئلة كل وحدة تشمل

- العلامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب.
- العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات.

LESSONS **1 & 2**



SB pages 22 - 25 WB pages 86 & 87

1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

blond hair (n)	شعر أشقر	beard (n)	لحية
curly hair (n)	شعر مجعد	moustache (n)	شارب (شنب)
dark hair (n)	شعر داكن	glasses (n)	نظارة
straight hair (n)	شعر غير مجعد	scarf (n)	إيشارب (طرحة)
team (n)	فريق	sports star (n)	نجم رياضي
running (n)	الجري	grey (n)	رمادي اللون
fans (n)	مشجعين - معجبين	feature (n)	سمة / ميزة
runner (n)	عدّاء / متسابق	poor people (n)	الفقراء

تنويه
- Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- قاموس المعاصر اللغوي لتقان المفردات اللغوية.
- استعد لاختبار الاملاء ملحق Dictation Master your term.

5 min Pop Quiz تدريب يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Step 1 Read key Vocabulary — الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ المفردات اللغوية المحورية.

Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary — الخطوة الثانية : تدرب على المفردات اللغوية.

* يقوم الطالب بأداء تدريب تلقائي على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها.

◎ **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

curly hair - beard - friendly - fans

1. Salah has .... His hair isn't straight.
2. The .... is the hair that grows on a man's cheek and chin.
3. Mohammed Munir has a lot of .... Many people like his songs.

Lesson 1 SB pages 22 & 23 WB page 86

Italian (n), (adj)	اللغة الإيطالية- إيطالي الجنسية	holiday (n)	أجازة

Lesson 2 SB pages 24 & 25 WB page 87

smile (d) (v) , (n)	يبتسم - ابتسامة	video games (n)	ألعاب فيديو
footballer (n)	لاعب كرة قدم	funny (adj)	مضحك
score (d) (v)	يحرز / يسجل	Cairo Tower (n)	برج القاهرة
squash (n)	لعبة الاسكواش	nicely (adv)	بطريقة لطيفة
person (n)	شخص	name (d) (v), (n)	يسمي - اسم

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
give	يعطي	gave	given
build	يبني	built	built

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
famous	مشهور	unknown	غير معروف
normal	طبيعي - عادي	abnormal	غير طبيعي

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

beard	hair that grows on a man's face or chin	لحية / ذقن
blond	yellow or light brown hair	أشقر (الشعر)
curly	hair that has turns	شعر مجعد
dark	brown or black hair	شعر داكن اللون
Europe	a continent. France, Germany, Italy and Spain are some of the countries in Europe	قارة أوروبا
friendly	behaving in a way to people that shows you like them	ودود
glasses	what you wear over your eyes to help you see better	نظارة

goal	when you win a point in e.g. football	هدف (فى كرة القدم)
kind	wanting to help and be good to people	طيب / عطوف
moustache	hair that grows above a man's top lip الشفاة العليا	شارب (شنب)
score	win points / goals in a game or a match	يسجل (نقاط أو أهداف)
smile	when the corners of your mouth turns up to show that you are happy	ابتسامة/ يبتسم
straight	hair without any turns	شعر غير مجعد
fans	people enjoying watching football matches and players	مشجعين / معجبين

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 enjoy / like + (inf. + ing) يستمتع بـ / يحب

ex.:- He enjoys eating pizza in a restaurant.
- I like playing football and watching films. *Reading on lesson 2 SB page 24*

2 tall / long

- **tall (adj)** طويل (تستخدم للأطوال الرأسية «مباني / أشخاص / أشجار»)

ex.:- My brother is tall (✓).
- My brother is long (✗). *Listening on lesson 2 SB page 25*

- **long (adj)** طويل (تستخدم للأطوال الأفقية / المسافات)

ex.:- My hair is long (✓).
- My hair is tall (✗). *Reading on lesson 1 WB page 86*

3 Adjectives • لاحظ أن الصفات تستخدم فى وصف الأسماء وتسبقها

ex.:- He is a fast runner.
- He is a kind person.

• الصفة أيضًا يمكن أن تأتى بعد (verb to be)

ex.:- She is beautiful. *Reading on lesson 2 SB page 24*

4 Adverbs • لاحظ أن الظرف يتكون بإضافة (ly) للصفة ويأتى بعد الفعل

ex.:- Nader always talks nicely to people. He's very nice.

(١) لاحظ أيضًا أن هناك ظروف لا يضاف لها (ly) ولكن تبقى كما هى

ex.:- He is a fast runner. He runs fast.

(٢) لاحظ أيضًا أن هناك كلمات تنتهى بـ (ly) وتعتبر صفات وليس ظروف مثل (friendly)

ex.:- Mohammed Salah is friendly. *Reading on lesson 2 SB page 24*

5 dark مظلم - غامق

ex.:- The room is dark. I can't see.
- My shirt is dark blue.

• لاحظ : تستخدم كلمة dark لوصف hair – eyes – skin لتدل على اللون البنى أو الأسود.

* dark hair شعر أسود – بنى غامق
* dark skin بشرة سمراء

Reading on lesson 1 WB page 86

6 glass / a glass / glasses

- **glass** الزجاج (اسم لا يُعد)

ex.:- Windows are made of glass.

- **a glass** كوب (اسم يُعد مفرد)

ex.:- Bassem drinks a glass of milk every evening.

- **glasses** أكواب - نظارة

ex.:- How many glasses of tea do you drink a day ?
- I can't find my glasses. I can't see without them. *Listening on lesson 1 SB page 23*

7 sport / sports رياضة

- **sport (n)**

ex.: Tennis is my favourite sport.

- **sports (adj) , (n)** رياضى / رياضات

ex.:- Essam el Hadary is a famous sports star.
- Hala is very good at many different sports. *Reading on lesson 2 SB page 24*

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

easy for	سهلًا لـ	give money to	يعطى مالًا لـ
look like	يشبه	pick up	يلتقط
know about	يعرف عن	score goals	يحرز أهدافًا

play for يلعب لصالح / لأجل	quite short for .. قصير إلى حد ما لـ
go at (70 km/h) يسير بسرعة (٧٠ كيلو متر في الساعة)	jump high يقفز عاليا

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

تدرب على ٣٧ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع | Pop Quiz



• on Lesson 1 SB page 23








Mazin : There's my friend, Samir.
Mum : I don't know Samir. What does he look like[1] ?
Mazin : He's got short, dark hair[2].
Mum : Oh, I think I can see him. Has he got glasses ?
Mazin : No, he hasn't. His dad's with him.
Mum : Has Samir's dad got a beard[3] ?
Mazin : Yes, he has.
Mum : Oh, yes. I can see Samir now.

Check Vocabulary
(1) يشبه
(2) شعر داكن
(3) لحية / ذقن

Listening skill
Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :
• Samir has .... hair.
a. long b. curly c. dark d. straight

Reading

• on Lesson 2 SB page 24



Mohamed Salah is my favourite sports star[1]. He plays football for a very good team in Europe. He plays for[2] Egypt, too. He is very good at[3] scoring goals[4]. He is a fast runner[5].

Mohamed Salah has usually got a big smile[6]. He is quite short for[7] a footballer. He is 1.75 metres tall. In this photo, Mohamed Salah has got dark, curly hair and a beard.

He is a kind person. He gives money to[8] build schools and hospitals in Egypt. He also gives money to poor people. He is very friendly and he always talks to[9] his fans.

He has not got much time for[10] hobbies, but when he is at home, he enjoys playing video games and watching films.

Important Expressions & Prepositions
(1) نجم رياضي
(2) يلعب لصالح
(3) جيد في
(4) إحراز الأهداف
(5) عداء سريع
(6) ابتسامة عريضة
(7) قصير إلى حد ما لـ
(8) يعطي مالا لـ
(9) يتحدث إلى
(10) وقت لـ

Answer the following questions :
- Critical thinking skill مهارة التفكير النقدي
Learn 1. How do you know that Mohamed Salah is very friendly ?
- *He always talks to his fans.*
Practise 2. Would you like to be like Mohamed Salah ? Why ?
....

• on Lesson 1 WB page 86






The woman in the first picture has got long straight hair[1] and glasses. The man in the second picture has got short curly dark hair[2] and a moustache[3]. The second woman has got short blond hair[4]. The second man has got short dark hair and a beard[5].

Check Vocabulary
(1) شعر مفرود | (2) شعر مجعد أسود | (3) شارب | (4) شعر أشقر | (5) لديه

on Lesson 2 WB page 87

Mohamed Salah can score lots of goals and he can run very fast. He lives in England. He can speak English, of course. He lived in Italy for two years, so he can speak Italian, too! He is famous, so he can't have a normal life. If he goes outside, many people want to talk to him. He is very busy. He can't take many holidays.



Listening

on Lesson 2 SB page 25



My favourite sports star is Doaa Elghobashy. She plays volleyball for Egypt. She's very tall. She's 180 centimetres tall. She's strong and she's fast. She can jump very high ! She's friendly. She always has a big smile.

Videoscript Lesson 2 SB page 24

Of course, football is a popular[1] sport in Egypt. There are many excellent[2] Egyptian footballers[3].
Mohammed Salah is one of the best players in the world. He's played for some famous football clubs in England and Italy.
Hossam Hassan, Mido and Essam el Hadary are all famous Egyptian footballers. They played football for teams in Africa and Europe.
People love playing it ... and watching it.
Thousands of people go to see football clubs like Al-Ahly ... and El-Zamalek.
The country's national[4] side are known as the Pharaohs[5]. They often play in the World Cup. This is a tournament[6] for the best teams in the world.
The Pharaohs sometimes win a tournament called the Africa Cup of Nations[7]. This is a competition[8] for countries in Africa. In 2019, it was in Egypt !
Do you like playing football ?
Do you like watching football ?

Check Vocabulary

(1) مشهور / محبوب	(2) ممتاز	(3) لاعبى كرة القدم	(4) قومى / وطنى	(5) الفراعنة (لقب الفريق القومى لكرة القدم)
(6) بطولة	(7) كاس الأمم الأفريقية	(8) منافسة / مسابقة		

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. Old people usually have white ....
   a. hair b. glasses c. fur d. bears
2. Famous people have a lot of .... They encourage them.
   a. vans b. fins c. vets d. fans
3. My sister likes her hair to be .... It's very light brown colour.
   a. blind b. blond c. grey d. dark
4. She's wearing a .... around her neck.
   a. sock b. scarf c. dress d. T-shirt

SB , WB & Previous exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

5. WB Mohammed Salah is very famous, so he can't have a / an .... life. (El Marg - Cairo 2022)
   a. normal b. unusual c. strange d. busy
6. WB A baby bird is very .... It can't fly for many days. (Multidisciplinary - Beni Suef 2021)
   a. weak b. poor c. ugly d. bad
7. Mohammed Salah is an Egyptian .... star. He is very famous. (Samalout - Minia 2020)
   a. sport b. sporty c. sport's d. sports
8. WB The Queen of England is very .... She has got many houses. (Multidisciplinary - Sharkia 2021)
   a. poor b. ugly c. strong d. rich

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. People around the world have different .... They don't look like each other.
   a. dreams b. features c. subjects d. balls
10. My mother can't see well. She needs to wear ....
    a. jackets b. dresses c. glasses d. jeans
11. What's your favourite football .... ? – Liverpool.
    a. language b. colour c. subject d. team

Definitions

12. To .... means to win points in a game.
    a. build b. score c. sell d. give
13. The hair growing over the man's mouth is called ....
    a. feature b. mouse c. moustache d. beard
14. The hair that grows on a man's cheeks خدود and chin ذقن is called ....
    a. bread b. beard c. bird d. bride

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. **A :** What does your brother .... like ?
    B : He's got short, curly hair.
    a. make b. take c. look d. give
16. Mohamed Salah is quite short .... a footballer.
    a. on b. from c. for d. in

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

Describing your favourite sports star وصف نجمك الرياضي المفضل

- My favourite sports star is (Messi) .
- He / She plays (football) .
- He / She's quite / very (fast) .
- He / She can (score goals) .

3. Writing مهارة الكتابة

في هذا الجزء تتمكن من الكتابة عن وصف الأشخاص
حوالي ١٢ جملة

Description of people وصف الأشخاص

1. He / She is tall / short.	هو / هي ... طويل / قصير.
2. He / She has got straight / curly hair.	لديه / لديها شعر مفرود / مجعد.
3. He / She has long / short hair.	لديه / لديها شعر طويل / قصير.
4. He / She has got glasses.	يرتدي / ترتدي نظارة.
5. He has got a beard.	لديه لحية.
6. He / She has got ...... eyes.	لديه / لديها أعين لونها ......
7. He / She is ...... cm tall.	طوله / طولها ...... سم
8. He / She has a big smile.	يتسم بأن لديه / لديها إبتسامة عريضة.
9. He / She is kind / funny / friendly.	هو / هي ...... طيب / مرح / ودود
10. He / She can speak	هو / هي يستطيع التحدث باللغة ......
11. He / She is strong.	هو / هي أقوى / قوية.
12. He / She is very good at	هو / هي جيد في ......

III Language



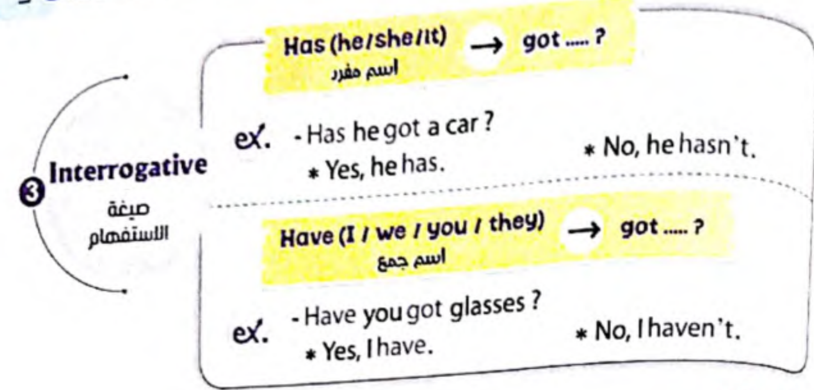
(A) have / has got يملك / لديه / عنده

1 Affirmative statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

- I / We / You / They (اسم جمع) → have got = ('ve got)
  - ex. They have got blond hair.
- He / She / It (اسم مفرد) → has got = ('s got)
  - ex. She has got dark hair.

2 Negative statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

- I / We / You / They (اسم جمع) → have not got = (haven't) got
  - ex. We have not (haven't) got cars.
- He / She / It (اسم مفرد) → has not got = (hasn't) got
  - ex. He has not (hasn't) got a beard.



③ Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

Has (he / she / it) اسم مفرد → **got ..... ?**

ex. - Has he got a car?
* Yes, he has. * No, he hasn't.

Have (I / we / you / they) اسم جمع → **got ..... ?**

ex. - Have you got glasses?
* Yes, I have. * No, I haven't.

لاحظ أن :

هناك أفعال أخرى تعطى معنى الملكية.

have / have got = own = possess

ex. : He owns/possesses a car.

(B) can / can't يستطيع / لا يستطيع



Expressing ability and inability التعبير عن القدرة وعدم القدرة

Subject فاعل → **can / cannot (can't) + inf.** مصدر الفعل

ex. - Mohammed Salah can score many goals.
- I can't pick up that box. My arms are weak.

Asking about ability السؤال عن القدرة

Yes / No questions السؤال بـ (هل)

a Can + subject الفاعل + inf. ?

ex. Can you climb a tree?
Yes, I can. No, I can't.

Wh-questions السؤال بكلمات الاستفهام

b Question word + can + subject فاعل + inf مصدر الفعل .. ?

ex. A : What can you do, Ahmed?
B : I can lift heavy weights.

لاحظ أن :

هناك تعبيرات وتركيبات أخرى تستخدم للتعبير عن القدرة.

can + inf. = (am / is / are) + able to + inf. = has / have the ability to + inf. / of + (inf. + ing)

can't + inf. = (am / is / are) + not able to + inf. = doesn't / don't have the ability to + (inf.) / of + (inf. + ing)

Examples :
I can drive a car.
= I am able to drive a car.
= I have the ability to drive a car.
= I have the ability of driving a car.

Stop here ! on Language (Answered & Explained)

فى هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. She .... run fast with these high shoes.
a. can b. is c. don't d. can't

2. I am .... make this decision myself.
a. can b. able to c. have d. should

3. Can you .... a paragraph ?
a. writing b. wrote c. to write d. write

No.		Answer + Explanation
1	d	(can't ...)
2	b	(be able to ...)
3	d	(can + write)

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

➲ SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. SB She .... got blond hair. (Faraskor - Damietta 2022)
a. have b. having c. has d. is having

2. My father has .... a smart phone. *(Deshna - Qena 20*

a. get b. got c. gets d. getting

3. WB Mohammed Salah .... score a lot of goals. He is very fast. *(Multidisciplinary - Alexandria / Souhag 20*

a. can b. was c. mustn't d. has

4. SB I .... got short, curly hair.

a. 've b. 'm c. 's d. 'll

5. Amira .... got a car. She walks to work. *(El Fashn-Beni Suef 20*

a. has b. haven't c. hasn't d. have

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. We .... any bikes.

a. have got b. haven't got c. has got d. hasn't got

7. .... Rahma and you got the same father ? - Yes, we have.

a. Has b. Does c. Have d. Do

8. .... has got a new laptop.

a. They b. I c. She d. We

9. Has he got an umbrella ? - No, he ....

a. haven't b. hasn't c. don't have d. wasn't

10. .... they got any pencils ?

a. Has b. Are c. Do d. Have

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. We has got an apple tree in the garden. *(Nasser-Beni Suef 2020)* (............)
2. She've got curly hair. *(West Mahalla - Gharbia 2020)* (............)
3. SB Has she got glasses ? - Yes, she hasn't. (............)
4. SB Have Samir's dad got a beard ? *(Haram - Giza 2022)* (............)
5. SB We can gives money to help the poor. (............)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. My sister hasn't get a pen. (............)
7. They has got pencils. (............)
8. He lives in England. He can't speak English well. (............)

General Exercises  On LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Doaa Elghobashy is a .... player.

a. basketball b. volleyball c. football d. handball

2. She's .... centimetres tall.

a. 180 b. 118 c. 80 d. 1800

3. Doaa always has a big ....

a. smile b. smell c. climb d. life

4. Doaa is ....

a. strong and fast b. short and fast
c. short and slow d. strong and slow

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Kareem asks Yasser about his favourite sports star.

Kareem : Who is your favourite sports star ?
Yasser : Mohammed Salah. He plays (1) .... Egypt.
Kareem : (2) .... sport does Mohammed Salah play ?
Yasser : (3) ....
Kareem : How does he help people ?
Yasser : He (4) .... money to build schools and hospitals in Egypt.
Kareem : Does he (5) .... a normal life ?
Yasser : No, he doesn't.
Kareem : Why ?
Yasser : Because he is famous and has a lot of fans.

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. SB I .... got glasses, but my sister has got glasses.

a. haven't b. have c. has d. hasn't

2. How tall are you ? - I am 160 ....

a. centimetres b. kilometres c. metres d. kilograms

3. He plays football for a famous .... in Africa.
a. fan b. team c. member d. score

4. "........" is the opposite of "fast".
a. Low b. Slow c. Quick d. Lucky

5. A .... is hair that grows above a man's top lip. *(Dokki - Giza 2022)*
a. blond b. beard c. check d. moustache

6. This man's photo is in all the papers. He's very ....
a. unknown b. famous c. free d. lazy

7. He always has a big .... on his face.
a. site b. smell c. smile d. sight

8. WB Camels are very strong. They .... carry 200 kilos of bags.
a. can b. cannot c. shouldn't d. mustn't

9. France, Germany and Italy are countries in ....
a. Europe b. Africa c. Asia d. Australia

10. Has Salma got a pen ? - No, she ....
a. haven't b. has c. hasn't d. have

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. He is able to running fast. *(Abo Korkas - Minya 2022)* (........)
2. Do you play the drums ? Yes, I can. (........)
3. Rodina and Mohammed has got a camera. (........)
4. Have she got chips for dinner ? (........)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Your favourite sports star"

....
....
....
....
....
....

LESSONS 3 & 4

SB pages 26 - 28 WB pages 88 & 89



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

children's story	قصة أطفال	character (n)	شخصية
painting (n)	الرسم بالفرشاة / التلوين	guess (ed) (v)	يخمن
scary (adj)	مرعب / مخيف	Wonderland (n)	أرض العجائب
brave (adj)	شجاع	paint (ed) (v), (n)	يدهن / يلون - طلاء
strange (adj)	غريب	frightened (adj)	خائف / مرعوب
blog post (n)	منشور مدونة	sensible (adj)	عاقل / حكيم

تنويه
- Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- قاموس المعاصر اللغوي لاتقان المفردات اللغوية.
- استعد لاختبار الاملاء ملحق Dictation .Master your term



Pop Quiz تدريب يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Step 1 Read key Vocabulary الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ المفردات اللغوية المحورية.
Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary الخطوة الثانية : تدرب على المفردات اللغوية
* يقوم الطالب بأداء تدريب تلقائي على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها.

◉ Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

danger - brave - frightened - sensible - strange

1. A .... person is happy to do something dangerous.
2. A .... person makes good decisions.
3. Ali is very .... of dogs.
4. Wonderland was a .... place, but it was interesting.

Lesson 3

SB pages 26 & 27 WB page 88

learning (n)	تعلم	clear (adj)	واضح
regularly (adv)	بانتظام	website (n)	موقع على الأنترنت
online (adj) (adv)	متصل بالأنترنت	twice (adv)	مرتان

Lesson 4

SB page 28 WB page 89

simple (adj)	بسيط	laugh (ed) (v)	يضحك
hearts (n)	قلوب	shout (ed) (v)	يصرخ / يصيح
meaning (n)	معنى	true story (n)	قصة حقيقية
main (adj)	أساسي / رئيسي	decisions (n)	قرارات
check (ed) (v)	يتحقق / يفحص	notebook (n)	دفتر / كراسة

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
swim	يسبح	swam	swum
begin	يبدأ	began	begun
understand	يفهم	understood	understood

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
brave	شجاع	cowardly	جبان
able	قادر	unable	غير قادر

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

angry	very cross	غاضب
brave	not easily frightened	شجاع
blog	is a website on which someone writes regularly. It is like an online diary	مدونة على الإنترنت
character	a person in a book or a film	شخصية (فى فيلم أو كتاب)
clever	good at learning things	ماهر

late	arriving after the correct time	متأخر
scary	something that makes you feel frightened	مخيف
sensible	thinking carefully so that you do the right thing	عاقل / حكيم
twice	two times	مرتان

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 Because ⟶ جملة (فعل + فاعل) لأن (تربط السبب بالنتيجة)

ex.: - Ahmed is good at basketball because he is tall and fast.

Reading on lesson 3 SB page 26

2 another / other

* **another** + اسم مفرد آخر

ex.: - I can see another boy.

* **other** + اسم جمع آخرون

ex.: - I can see other boys.

SB page 28

3 interesting / interested

* **interesting (adj.)** شيق / رائع (وصف الأشياء والأشخاص)

ex.: - She meets a lot of interesting characters. رائع

- She thinks that Wonderland is interesting. شيق / مثير

* **interested (adj.)** (noun / inf. + ing) مهتم بـ (ويتبعها حرف الجر in متبوعًا بـ)

ex.: - She is interested in history.

- She is interested in reading novels.

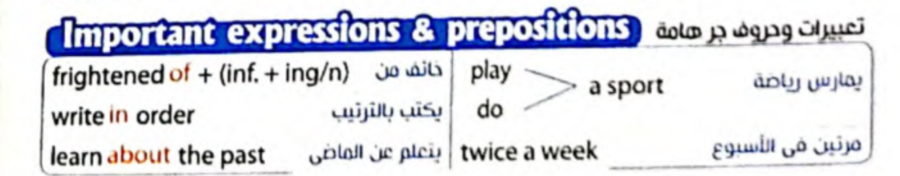
Reading on lesson 3 SB page 28

4 help + مفعول به + → مصدر inf. / → to + inf. المصدر

ex.: - We help poor people live / to live a happy life.

Reading on lesson 3 SB page 28

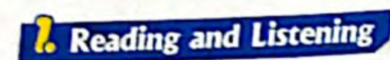
Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة



frightened of + (inf. + ing/n)	خائف من	play / do > a sport	يمارس رياضة
write in order	يكتب بالترتيب		
learn about the past	يتعلم عن الماضي	twice a week	مرتين فى الأسبوع

do art	يقوم بالرسم	do maths	ل مسائل الرياضيات
has no time	ليس لديه وقت	make good decisions	خذ قرارات جيدة
get angry	يغضب	know a lot about	رف الكثير عن
shout at	يصيح فى	feel hungry	شعر بالجوع
at the end of	فى نهاية	feel happy	شعر بالسعادة

II Skills



1. Reading and Listening

تدرب على ٣٧ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Pop Quiz



Reading

• on Lesson 3 SB page 26

All about me

Hi! My name is Yunis. I have got short, dark curly hair[1]. I live in Alexandria with my mum, dad and two brothers.

My favourite school subject is history[2]. I love learning about the past. I like maths and science[3], too. I do not like art[4] because I am not very good at drawing or painting.

I often play sport after school. My favourite[5] sport is basketball[6]. I am good at it because I am tall and I can jump high. I like swimming[7], too. I go swimming twice a week.

At home, I like reading and playing video games[8]. I do not like watching TV. I think it is boring[9].

Check Vocabulary

(1) شعر مجعد
(2) مادة التاريخ
(3) العلوم
(4) الرسم
(5) مفضل
(6) كرة السلة
(7) السباحة
(8) ألعاب فيديو
(9) ممل

Answer the following questions :

- Critical thinking skill — مهارة التفكير النقدى

Learn 1. Do you think Yunis lives a healthy life ? Why ?
- *Yes, because he often plays sport.*

Practise 2. Why do you think studying history is important ?
....

Listening

• on Lesson 3 SB page 27



Girl 1 : Let's play a game. I'm looking at a girl. Who is it ?
Girl 2 : Does she like watching TV ?
Girl 1 : No, she doesn't.
Girl 2 : Does she like swimming ?
Girl 1 : Yes, she does.
Girl 2 : It's Noha.
Girl 1 : Good ! OK. Number two. Who is it ?



Girl 2 : Does she like swimming ?
Girl 1 : Yes, she does. She loves swimming !
Girl 2 : Does she like playing basketball ?
Girl 1 : No, she doesn't.
Girl 2 : It's Dina.
Girl 1 : Well done ! Three. Who is this ?



Girl 2 : Does she like watching TV ?
Girl 1 : Yes, she does.
Girl 2 : It's Eman.
Girl 1 : No, it isn't !
Girl 2 : Does she like basketball ?
Girl 1 : Yes, she does.
Girl 2 : It's Maya.



Girl 1 : Yes !
Girl 2 : OK, so the last one loves painting, she likes watching TV and she doesn't like playing basketball. It's Eman.
Girl 1 : Yes again !

- Reading on Lesson 4 SB page 28

Alice's Adventures in Wonderland

By Lewis Carroll





Alice's Adventures in Wonderland is a famous[1] children's story. Alice's adventure[2] begins when she goes to Wonderland. Alice thinks that Wonderland is interesting[3], but it is a strange place. She is a sensible[4] girl, but she does not understand Wonderland.

Alice is also brave[5] and clever. She meets a lot of interesting characters.

Alice often sees the White Rabbit. The White Rabbit is very busy – and he is usually very late. He always runs fast.

The Cheshire Cat is a funny animal. He has got a big smile and he is very friendly. He tells Alice about Wonderland and helps her to find different places and characters[6].

The Queen of Hearts is not very nice. She is a scary[7] person. She is always angry[8] and she shouts at people. Alice is brave, so she is not frightened[9] of her.

At the end of the story, all the characters help Alice so she can go home again.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مشهور
(2) مغامرة
(3) شيق
(4) عاقل / حكيم
(5) شجاع
(6) شخصيات
(7) مخيف
(8) غاضب
(9) خائف

Answer the following questions :

- **Giving the main idea.** إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

Learn 1. Give a suitable title for this passage.
Alice's Adventures in Wonderland.

- **Critical thinking skill** مهارة التفكير النقدى

Practise 2. Do you think Wonderland is an exciting place ? Why ?
- ....

- on Lesson 3 WB page 88

What is your favourite subject ?

- My name is Riham. My favourite subject at school is Science. I love learning about how things work. I like doing maths, too. I am quite good at maths.

Which sport do you like ?

- I quite like doing sport. My favourite sport is tennis. I like playing it with my friends, but I am not very good at it.

What do you do in the evening ?

- I usually go home after school. I do not like playing computer games. After I do my homework, I like reading a book. I like writing stories, too.

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. He was wearing a .... hat. Everyone was looking at him.
a. clear b. scared c. strange d. normal
2. The word .... has the same meaning as "frightening".
a. scared b. scary c. frightened d. afraid
3. Our teacher gets .... when we don't do our homework.
a. happy b. angry c. frightened d. cold
4. He likes .... with water colours.
a. doing b. learning c. reading d. painting

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

5. **SB** I read Alice's .... in Wonderland which is a wonderful children's story.
a. History b. Sports c. Adventures d. Comedy
6. **WB** A .... is a person in a book or a film. (Multidisciplinary - Qena 2021)
a. character b. driver c. doctor d. farmer
7. I like adventure stories, they are .... (Menia 2020)
a. frightening b. terrible c. boring d. exciting
8. **WB** I love learning about how things work, so I love .... (Kafr Al Zayyat - Gharbia 2022)
a. history b. Arabic c. science d. English

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. Adel Emam is the ...... character in the new film.
   a. mean   b. main   c. mine   d. man
10. "Brave" is the opposite of " ...... ".
   a. famous   b. cowardly   c. crazy   d. late
11. A woman who rules a country is called a ....
   a. hero   b. manager   c. king   d. queen

Definitions

12. A ...... is a website on which someone writes regularly. It's like an online diary.
   a. dairy   b. newspaper   c. book   d. blog
13. ...... means to be good at learning things.
   a. Brave   b. Clever   c. Scary   d. Angry

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. Good teachers always ...... good decisions.
   a. shop   b. make   c. do   d. order
15. She likes ...... art.
   a. doing   b. making   c. giving   d. having
16. How often do you go to the library? – ...... a week.
   a. Two   b. Second   c. Twice   d. One

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

1. Describing a character from a story عند وصف شخصية من قصة

1. What is his / her name?
2. Which book or film is he / she from?
3. He's / She's ...... صفة
4. He / She ...... فعل

- Her name is Alice.
- She is from Alice's Adventures in Wonderland story.

ex.: - Alice is a sensible girl, but she doesn't understand Wonderland.
- The White Rabbit is very busy. He always runs fast.
- The Queen of Hearts is not very nice. She is a scary person.
- The Cheshire Cat is a funny animal. He has got a big smile and he is very friendly.

2. Talking about likes and dislikes التحدث عن الأشياء المحببة وغير المحببة

A : Does Ahmed like swimming?
B : No, he doesn't. He likes football.
A : Do they like painting?
B : Yes, they do.

- Sara likes painting, but she doesn't like watching TV.
- Ahmed doesn't like basketball, but he likes tennis.

III Language

• هناك بعض الأفعال التي يمكن أن يتبعها (inf. + ing) أو (noun) اسم

like / love / enjoy / prefer / don't like / hate / dislike → (inf. + ing / noun)



ex. - I like swimming.
- They don't like watching TV.
- Salma likes maths.
- She loves learning about the past.
- She doesn't like painting.

• وعند الاستفهام (بسؤال يبدأ بفعل مساعد) باستخدام هذه الأفعال يكون السؤال كالتالي :

Interrogative في السؤال: Do / Does + (subject) فاعل + like / love ... ?

ex. Do you like playing tennis?
- Yes, I do.   - No, I don't.

ex. Does she like playing tennis?
- Yes, she does.   - No, she doesn't.

هناك بعض الصفات تتبعها حروف جر ثم (inf. + ing) أو (noun) اسم :

good at / interested in / bad at → **inf. + ing / noun**

- Ahmed is good at English.
- Huda is interested in reading adventure stories.

ـط أن الأفعال :

like / love / prefer

ـبتها ('d = would) نتبعها (to + inf.)

He'd like to drive a small car.

Stop here ! on Language (Answered & Explained)

هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Salah .... social studies.
   a. like b. like to c. likes d. likes to
2. Are you good at .... ?
   a. paint b. to paint c. painted d. painting
3. What do you enjoy .... ?
   a. doing b. do c. does d. did
4. Would you like .... and play chess with me ?
   a. come b. to come c. coming d. comes

No.	Answer + Explanation الإجابة والتوضيح	
1	c	[illegible] (likes) [illegible]
2	d	(ing) [illegible] (good at) [illegible] (painting) [illegible]
3	a	(ing) [illegible] enjoy [illegible] (doing) [illegible]
4	b	to + [illegible] (like) [illegible] (would) [illegible] (to come) [illegible]

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. SB Dina likes .... very much.
   a. paint b. painted c. painting d. to painting
2. SB Noha .... like swimming.
   a. don't b. isn't c. aren't d. doesn't
3. I don't like ....
   a. fly b. flew c. flying d. flown
4. SB .... she like watching TV ? - Yes, she does.
   a. Do b. Does c. Doing d. Don't
5. WB I don't like .... computer games.
   a. play b. playing c. plays d. played

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. She doesn't .... staying up late.
   a. like b. likes c. liked d. to like
7. He prefers .... maths.
   a. do b. did c. doing d. does
8. Hoda doesn't enjoy .... action films.
   a. watching b. watch c. to watch d. watches
9. They'd like .... computer games.
   a. play b. to play c. plays d. playing
10. Captain Bassem is good at .... guns.
    a. use b. to use c. uses d. using

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. She enjoys listen to her grandpa's stories. (Youssef Al Seddik - Fayoum 2022) (........)
2. I am interested about art. (El Fashn - Beni Suef 2022) (........)
3. Does she like play chess ? (Aaseem-Giza 2020) (........)
4. WB Does your father like travel ? (Mataria - Cairo 2022) (........)
5. Emad likes watch football matches on TV. (El Fashn-Beni Suef 2020) (........)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. Would you prefer ride bikes ? (........)
7. Baleigh is interested in listens to music. (........)
8. I hate walk in the sun in summer. (........)

General Exercises On LESSONS 3 & 4

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed is asking Alaa about his favourite sport.

Ahmed : What's your favourite sport ?

Alaa : (1) ....

Ahmed : Why are you good at it ?

Alaa : (2) ....

Ahmed : (3) .... ?

Alaa : I play basketball in the club.

Ahmed : (4) .... ?

Alaa : I play basketball twice a week.

Ahmed : Can I play with you ?

Alaa : (5) ....

2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Alice's Adventures in Wonderland is a famous children's story. Alice had a lot of adventures in Wonderland. She met a lot of interesting characters. Wonderland was strange but interesting place for Alice. Alice was a sensible, brave and clever girl. **She** met the White Rabbit that was always late but ran fast. The Cheshire Cat was a funny animal which helped Alice to find different places and characters. The Queen of Hearts was a scary person and she **shouted** at people but Alice was not frightened of her. At the end of the story, all the characters helped Alice so she could go home again.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What does this passage talk about ?

....

2. How did the Cheshire Cat help Alice ?

....

3. Why do you think Alice was brave ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The worst character is ....
   a. Alice   b. Cheshire Cat   c. the Queen of Hearts   d. the King

5. The underlined word "**shouted**" means said ....
   a. slowly   b. happily   c. calmly   d. loudly
6. The underlined pronoun "**She**" refers to ....
   a. the Queen of Hearts   b. Alice   c. the Cheshire Cat   d. the White Rabbit

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. They love .... about science.
   a. learn   b. learning   c. learned   d. learns
2. Do you live in Cairo ? - Yes, I ....
   a. do   b. does   c. is   d. have
3. WB A .... person makes good decisions قرارات.
   a. lazy   b. foolish   c. sensible   d. funny
4. When Ahmed is angry, he .... at people.
   a. smiles   b. shouts   c. goes   d. runs
5. Does Toka .... playing tennis ?
   a. likes   b. to like   c. liked   d. like
6. I'm always .... of dogs.
   a. frightening   b. frighten   c. terrifying   d. frightened
7. SB Yunis doesn't like watching TV because he thinks it is ....
   a. interesting   b. boring   c. beautiful   d. exciting
8. I don't like .... because I'm not good at painting. (Matali - Cairo 2022)
   a. art   b. history   c. science   d. maths
9. .... teaches us many things about the past.
   a. Geography   b. Maths   c. Algebra   d. History
10. You can write some information in your .... post.
    a. book   b. office   c. blog   d. notebook

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. How often <u>do</u> he play football ? (..........)
2. Are you interested in <u>read</u> adventure stories ? (Naqada - Qena 2022) (..........)
3. I am not very good at <u>draw</u>. (..........)
4. He'd like <u>going</u> to the park. (..........)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A famous children's story"

....

....

....

LESSONS 5 & 6

SB pages 29 & 30 WB pages 90 & 91



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

best friend (n)	أفضل صديق	storm (n)	عاصفة
classroom (n)	حجرة الدراسة	personality (n)	شخصية
secret (n)	سر	appearance (n)	مظهر / هيئة
wheelchair (n)	كرسي متحرك		

تنويه
- Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- قاموس المعاصر اللغوي لإتقان المفردات اللغوية.
- Dictation استعد لاختبار الاملاء ملحق Master your term.

5 min Pop Quiz تدريب يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Step 1 Read key Vocabulary الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ المفردات اللغوية المحورية.

Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary الخطوة الثانية : تدرب على المفردات اللغوية.

* يقوم الطالب بأداء تدريب تلقائي على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها.

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :



wheelchair - appearance - storm - best - secret

1. People who can't walk use a .... to move.
2. You should look after your .... well.
3. Don't tell people about your personal information. It's a ....
4. Hisham is my .... friend. He is very friendly.

Lesson 5 SB page 29 WB page 90

call (ed) (v)	يُسمي / يدعي	island (n)	جزيرة
pool (n)	حمام سباحة	review (n)	مقال نقدي

Lesson 6 SB page 30 WB page 91

join (ed) (v)	ينضم	connect (ed) (v)	يربط / يتصل

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
speak يتحدث	spoke	spoken

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

together	with one or more people	معًا
wheelchair	a chair with wheels, for people who cannot walk	كرسي متحرك
appearance	what the person looks like	مظهر
personality	what the person is like	شخصية
hobbies	what the person likes doing	هوايات

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 travel - travel around

* **travel** يسافر لدولة أخرى / لبلدة أخرى
  ex.: - Ahmed travelled to France last week.
* **travel around** يتجول في مكان
  ex.: - SB It's easy for Basel to travel around school.

Reading on lesson 6 SB page 30

2 He is a lot of fun. = He is very funny. هو شخص لديه الكثير من المرح / شخص مرح

Reading on lesson 5 SB page 30

3 Using joining words to connect ideas. استخدام كلمات الربط لربط الأفكار

and / because / but

- تستخدم (and) للعطف والإضافة.

ex.: - He goes to all of his lessons and we have lunch together.

- تستخدم (but) لربط الأفكار المتناقضة.

ex.: - Basel cannot run, but he is fast in his wheelchair !

- تستخدم (because) لربط السبب بالنتيجة.

ex.: - I like Basel because he is a lot of fun. Reading on lesson 6 SB page 30

4 Whose / Who's

لمن / ملك من ... ؟ (كلمة استفهام تسأل عن الملكية)

- **Whose ..... ?**
  ex.:- A : Whose bag is this ? B : It's Ali's.

من يكون ... ؟

- **Who's = Who is ..... ?** *WB page 90*
  ex.:- A : Who's your best friend ? B : Ali.

5 It's + صفة + (for + اسم / ضمير مفعول) + to + inf. المصدر

ex.:- SB It is not easy (for Basel) to travel around the city.
- It is important (for Hala) to study hard. *Reading on lesson 6 SB page 30*

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

in a wheelchair	في كرسي متحرك	make sure	يتأكد
different from	مختلف عن	get things	يحصل على الأشياء
work on a boat	يعمل على مركب	far from home	بعيدًا عن المنزل
on the island	على الجزيرة	(be) written by	كُتب بواسطة
do things	يقوم بأداء أشياء	a book by	كتاب تم تأليفه
difficult for ...	صعب على ...		عن طريق (اسم الشخص)

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

تدرب على ٣٧ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع | Pop Quiz



• on Lesson 6 SB page 30

Who's your best friend ?



My best friend[1] is called Basel. He has got straight hair and brown eyes. He is kind and he is very funny. He likes reading and playing video games. Those are my favourite hobbies, too !

Basel has got a wheelchair because he cannot walk. It is not easy for[2] Basel to travel around[3] school. I open doors for Basel and I help him to get things in the classroom.

Basel's wheelchair is not usually a problem. We do a lot of things together[4]. He goes to all of my lessons and we have lunch together. Sometimes we even play football in the playground[5]. Basel cannot run, but he is fast in his wheelchair[6]!

I like Basel because he is a lot of fun[7]. I am very happy that he is my friend.

Fady, 12

Important Expressions & Prepositions

(1) أفضل صديق
(2) سهل لـ
(3) يتنقل
(4) معًا
(5) في الملعب
(6) على الكرسي المتحرك
(7) ممتع

Answer the following questions :

- Giving the main idea. إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

Learn 1. What's the main idea of the passage ?
- *Basel is my best friend.*

- Critical thinking skill مهارة التفكير النقدي

Practise 2. Why do you think Basel is funny ?
- ....





• on Lesson 5 WB page 90

1. My name's Nevine. I like sports and I love playing tennis.
2. I'm Sayed. My favourite subject is English and I like writing stories.
3. Hi, I'm Maya. I like art. I don't like drawing but I love painting.
4. I'm Rami. I love swimming, but I don't like swimming in the sea. It's cold.
5. My name's Lina and this is my sister Maya. We don't like watching TV but we like reading books.

• on Lesson 5 WB page 90



My favourite book is Treasure Island. It is by Robert Louis Stevenson. It is about a brave boy called Jim. He travels in a big boat to an island. It is very far from his home. The boat has got many scary men on it and they all want to find some money on the island. It is very exciting.



My favourite book is Anne of Green Gables by Lucy Maud Montgomery. It is about an orphan girl called Anne. She goes to live with a brother and sister in the country. Life is not easy for her and she has many adventures, but Anne is a sensible girl. It is a good book.



My favourite book is called Gulliver's Travels by Jonathan Swift. It is about a clever doctor. He works on a boat but there is a big storm. He falls in the sea and swims to a strange place. All the people here are very tall. Some of them are very friendly, but some of them are scary. I like the book very much.

• on Lesson 7 SB page 31

Magda has got a lot of hobbies. She likes reading and sport. She likes playing basketball and she likes playing tennis, but her favourite sport is swimming. She loves swimming! Magda doesn't like playing video games and she also doesn't like playing chess.

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary

1. There was a strong .... so all the boat trips were cancelled yesterday.
   a. journey b. storm c. plan d. site
2. Our teacher has an attractive .... All students like him.
   a. time b. secret c. personality d. review
3. People who can't walk can use a .... to travel around.
   a. chair b. wheel c. wheelchair d. ship
4. You shouldn't tell people about your ....
   a. book b. house c. dress d. secrets

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

5. SB I like Basel because he is a lot of ....
   a. fun b. fans c. fins d. falls
6. Mohammed Salah .... Liverpool Football Club in 2018.
   a. called b. opened c. joined d. walked
   (Ain Shams - Cairo 2022)
7. WB My favourite book is .... "Treasure Island". (Wasat Alex. 2020)
   a. called b. played c. opened d. travelled

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

8. After the ship sank, he swam to a nearby .... surrounded by water.
   a. beach b. storm c. island d. desert
9. .... short stories helps young children improve their language.
   a. Speaking b. Walking c. Reading d. Calling
10. Ali is tall but his mother is short. They are ....
   a. difficult b. different c. the same d. difference

Definitions

11. .... means with one or more people.
   a. Too b. Both c. Together d. Alone
12. .... are what the person likes doing.
   a. Plans b. Hobbies c. Issues d. Secrets

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. Travelling .... Cairo in the rush hour ساعة الذروة is not easy.
   a. about b. around c. above d. under
14. Children who can't walk can .... a lot of things using wheelchairs.
   a. sail b. give c. do d. have
15. Basel can't walk. It's not easy .... him to travel around school.
   a. about b. for c. in d. of
16. This is an exciting book. It was written .... Naguib Mahfouz.
   a. in b. on c. by d. from

مهارة التحدث

2. Speaking

مناقشة كتابك المفضل

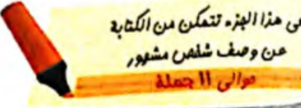
Discussing your favourite book

- I like reading (نوع الكتاب) historical books / adventure books / science books
- I love reading books by .... (اسم الكاتب/المؤلف).
- My favourite book is .... (اسم الكتاب).
- It's about a girl / a boy called .... (اسم الشخصية الرئيسية).
- The other characters are .... (اسماء الشخصيات الفرعية).
- In this book, the boy / girl likes .... (ما تحبه الشخصية).
- I like .... (اسم الشخصية التى تحبها) because he/she .... (السبب).

مهارة الكتابة

3. Writing

A famous person شخص مشهور



Use these questions to help you.

1. Why is he / she famous ?	لماذا هذا الشخص مشهور ؟
2. What does he / she look like ?	كيف يبدو / تبدو ؟
3. What does he / she like doing ?	ما الأشياء التى يحب / تحب القيام بها ؟
4. What is he / she usually like ?	كيف تكون شخصيته ؟
5. What can / can't he / she do ?	ما الأشياء التى يستطيع / لا يستطيع القيام بها ؟
6. Mohamed Salah is a famous sports star.	محمد صلاح نجم رياضى مشهور.
7. He is quite short for a footballer.	هو قصير لحد ما بالنسبة للاعبى كرة قدم.
8. He has got dark, curly hair and a beard.	شعره مجعد وأسود ولديه لحية.
9. He likes playing video games and watching films.	يحب العاب الفيديو ومشاهدة الأفلام.
10. He is very friendly and kind.	هو شخص ودود وطيب جدًا.
11. He can score a lot of goals.	يستطيع تسجيل كثير من الأهداف.

General Exercises On LESSONS 5 & 6

• Understand • Apply • Create



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع الى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. What is your best friend called ?
   a. Omar b. Yasser c. Basel d. Tarek
2. He has got .... hair and brown eyes.
   a. curly b. blond c. long d. straight
3. Basel is ....
   a. unfriendly b. coward c. kind d. unkind
4. What does he like doing ? - He likes ....
   a. reading b. playing video games
   c. drawing d. a & b

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ramy and Kamal are talking about their favourite subjects.

Ramy : What are your favourite school subjects ?
Kamal : I like English and (1) ....
Ramy : (2) .... do you like history ?
Kamal : To learn about the past.
(3) .... about you, Ramy ?
Ramy : I (4) .... art and computer studies.
Kamal : Why do you like computer studies ?
Ramy : Because I like playing computer (5) ....
Kamal : Oh, me too.
Ramy : Fantastic !
Kamal : OK. Let's play computer games together.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB It is important to be .... like Alice.
   a. coward b. weak c. brave d. sad
2. He is kind .... friendly.
   a. and b. because c. but d. so

3. It's important .... sport regularly.
   a. do b. doing c. done d. to do

4. He likes reading and .... video games.
   a. playing b. giving c. reading d. hurrying

5. SB Basel has got a .... because he can't walk.
   a. table b. ladder c. wheelchair d. pool

6. A .... is a place where we do sports. *(October - Giza 2022)*
   a. funfair b. fair c. waterwheel d. playground

7. She has got .... hair. It has turns.
   a. straight b. curly c. blond d. dark

8. Something hidden from others is called a ....
   a. secret b. secretary c. problem d. game

9. My father is very busy, ... he does sports every day.
   a. too b. but c. so d. and

10. My .... friend is Abdel Rahman. He helps me a lot.
   a. worst b. bad c. tall d. best

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. WB Rami loves basketball and he doesn't like volleyball. (........)
2. He'd like drinking orange juice. (........)
3. WB Nevine loves play tennis. *(Kawm Hamadah - Beheira 2022)* (........)
4. Has your father gets glasses ? (........)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A review on your favourite book"

....

....

....



Review on unit 3

SB page 31 WB page 92

Vocabulary	
beard	لحية
moustache	شارب
curly hair	شعر مجعد
dark	غامق اللون
glasses	نظارة
friendly	ودود
weak	ضعيف
dangerous	خطير
famous	شهير / مشهور
blond hair	شعر أشقر (أصفر)
wheelchair	كرسي متحرك
fans	مشجعين
twice	مرتان
boring	ممل
brave	شجاع
sensible	عاقل / حكيم
scary	مخيف
clever	ماهر

Language

have / has got يملك / لديه

Affirmative :

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع → have got + اسم noun

He / She / It / اسم مفرد → has got + اسم noun

Negative :

Subject → haven't / hasn't got + اسم noun .

ex.: - She hasn't got dark hair.

Interrogative :

Have / Has subject + got اسم noun ?

ex.: Have you got a moustache ?
- Yes, I have.
- No, I haven't.

ex.: Has she got straight hair ?
- Yes, she has.
- No, she hasn't.

Speaking

1. Describing people : وصف الأشخاص :

Has your friend got .... ?
Yes, he / she has. | No, he / she hasn't.

ex.: - Has your friend got curly hair ?
No, she hasn't.

Is it اسم الشخص ?
Yes, it is. | No, it isn't.

ex.: - Is it Ali / Leen .... ?
Yes, it is. / No, it isn't.

2. Describing your favourite sports star :
وصف نجمك الرياضي المفضل :
- للحديث عن نجمك المفضل نستخدم الجمل والتعبيرات التالية :
- My favourite sports star is ....
- He / She plays ....
- He's / She's quite / very ....
- He / She can ....

3. Talking about likes and dislikes :
الحديث عن الشيء المحبب وغير المحبب نستخدم :
- I like apples a lot.
- I don't like eating chicken.
- She loves reading short stories.

Skills

1 Speaking مهارة التحدث

تعتمد مهارة التحدث مع الآخرين بشكل أساسي على تكوين أسئلة ومعرفة كيفية الرد عليها.

Question السؤال	Answer الإجابة	Usage الاستخدام
What is your favourite sports star ? Which sport does Mohamed Salah play ? What is he good at ? Why do you admire him ? How does he help people ? Which team does he play for ? Has he got many fans ?	*Mohamed Salah.* *He plays football.* *He is good at scoring goals.* *Because he helps people.* *He gives them money to build many schools and hospitals.* *He plays for a very good team in Europe.* *Yes, he has.* *West Mahalla - Gharbia 2020*	حوار عن "محمد صلاح"
What's your English teacher's name ? What does he look like ? Has he got glasses ? What kind of person is he ?	*He is Mr Mohamed.* *He has got short, straight hair.* *Yes, he has.* *He is friendly and active.*	حوار عن وصف شخصية
What are you doing at the moment ? What is the title of this book ? What's the name of the writer ? Who's the main character in this book / story ? What do you think of Alice ? What does the word "sensible" mean ? Who is the most frightening character in the story ?	*I am reading a book.* *It's Alice's Adventures in Wonderland.* *He's Lewis Carroll.* *Alice.* *She's a sensible girl.* *Sensible means that she can think carefully and makes good decisions.* *I think the Queen of Hearts.* *SB page 28*	حوار عن وصف كتاب / قصة مفضلة بالنسبة لك

Do you like playing games ? What game do you play ? When do you play it ? Where do you play it ?	*Yes, I do.* *I play football.* *I play it after school.* *I play it at the club.* *Beni Suef 2022*	حوار عن رياضة مفضلة

2 Writing Skill مهارة الكتابة

- عناصر تساعدك على تنظيم أفكارك للتعامل مع مهارة الكتابة متبوعة بنموذج.

Different people

Look	Hair
He is .... tall / short / thin / fat. He has got a beard / moustache / glasses	He has got .... hair. short / long / straight / curly

Eyes	Personality
He has got .... eyes. black / green / blue / brown	He is kind / helpful / friendly / funny / brave / smart / strong etc .....

Likes	Abilities
He likes .... football / tennis	He can .... run fast / score a lot of goals

Sample

He is Adam. He is a football player. He is tall. He has got a short curly hair. He has got black eyes. He has got a beard. He is very kind and always helps others. He likes football so much. He can run very fast and score a lot of goals. He has a busy life. He can not take many holidays.

...بار مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع إذا يجب
...ستخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة، ثم قراءة هذه الجمل والتساعد على حل سؤال
...ارة الإنشائية في الورقة الامتحانية (٢١ جملة)

1 My best friend

My best friend is called Omar[1]. He is twelve years old[2]. He has got short black hair[3]. He has got blue eyes[4]. He has got glasses[5]. He is very kind[6]. He always helps me[7]. He likes playing football and basketball[8]. He is a good runner[9]. He can run fast[10]. He wants to be a footballer[11].

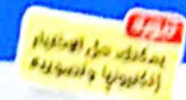
2 My favourite sports star

My favourite sports star is Doaa El ghobashy[12]. She is a famous sports star[13]. She is Egyptian[14]. She is very tall[15]. She is strong and fast[16]. She is very friendly[17]. She always has a big smile[18]. She can jump very high[19]. She plays volleyball for Egypt[20]. She is very good at volleyball[21]. She has a lot of fans[22]. She has a busy life[23].

3 Alice's A dventures in Wonderland

I like reading[24]. Adventure stories are my favourite[25]. Last week, I read a story called Alice's Adventures in Wonderland[26]. It is a famous children's story[27]. The story is about a girl called Alice went to Wonderland[28]. She had many adventures there[29]. She was a sensible and brave girl[30]. She met a lot of interesting characters there[31]. At the end of the story, all the characters helped her to back home[32]. I liked this story so much[33]. I'd like to read it again[34].

Test on unit 3



• Understand • Apply • Create

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى مقطع الاستماع الخاص بالسؤال في الكتاب

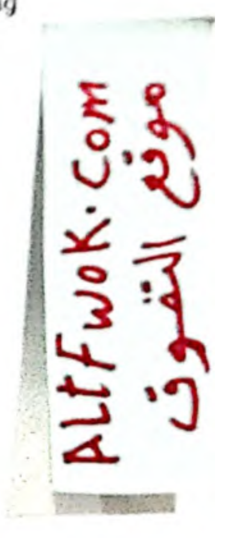
1. Yunis has got short, ... curly hair.
   a. dark b. brown c. grey d. blue
2. Yunis's favourite subject is ....
   a. art b. science c. maths d. history
3. He doesn't like ....
   a. science b. history c. art d. geography
4. He is not good at ....
   a. singing b. eating c. drawing d. cooking

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Tarek is telling Tamer about his best friend.

Tamer : What is your best friend's name ?
Tarek : (1) ....
Tamer : (2) .... ?
Tarek : He has got curly hair and green eyes.
Tamer : (3) .... ?
Tarek : He likes reading and playing video games.
Tamer : What is he good at ?
Tarek : (4) ....
Tamer : Wonderful ! Do you think he'll be a football player ?
Tarek : (5) .... I think he will be a great footballer.



C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

I have got many friends, but Akram is my best friend. He has got short, dark straight hair. **He** lives in Qalyoubia Governorate with his mum,



dad and two sisters. His favourite subject is history because he loves learning about the past. He also likes maths and science. He doesn't like art because he isn't good at drawing or painting. His favourite sport is swimming. He goes swimming **twice** a week.

He is a big fan of Liverpool Sports Club and Mohamed Salah. He always watches football matches on TV and sometimes goes to the stadium. In the stadium, he watches matches of our national team.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.
....
2. Why do you think Akram sometimes goes to the stadium ?
....
3. How often does Akram go swimming ?
....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun "**He**" refers to ....
a. Mohammed Salah b. Akram c. Akram's father d. Akram's friend
5. The underlined word "**twice**" means ....
a. three times b. two times c. four times d. one time
6. Akram has got short, ... straight hair.
a. dark b. blond c. red d. brown

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My friend told me a .... that no one else knows. *(Sayeda Zainab - Cairo 2022)*
a. storm b. call c. advert d. secret
2. The little puppy couldn't get out of the .... itself, as he can't swim.
a. pool b. park c. view d. playground
3. People who like something or admire someone are called ....
a. fans b. pans c. vans d. hats

4. He wasn't scared .... he is a brave boy.
a. and b. but c. because d. although
5. Dr Magdi Yacoub has an attractive .... Everyone loves him.
a. person b. personality c. personal d. personally
6. The first .... on Monday morning is science.
a. glass b. bottle c. classroom d. lesson
7. At school, we play football in the ....
a. hall b. playground c. gym d. office
8. I always help my sister .... things at home.
a. do b. ride c. eat d. drive
9. Leen likes .... to her father.
a. talk b. talks c. talking d. talked
10. Ayman has .... a smartphone.
a. gets b. got c. getting d. get

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Has they got their presents ? (..........)
2. I like English but maths. (..........)
3. SB Does he like play basketball ? (..........)
4. She is strong. She can't jump high. (..........)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Your best friend"

....
....
....

Stop here !

1. Mini-Test on unit 3 for Al-Azhar students
اختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues :

A. A : .... ?
B : My hobbies are reading and drawing.

B. Ali : Who is your favourite sports star ?
Sam : ....

2 Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences on :

"Your favourite sports star"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

2. Use your brain, think smart
طبق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Which word is missing ?
   - Women and men - Husbands and wives
   - Boys and girls - Kings and ....

   a. lions b. stars c. scarfs d. queens
2. Ahmed Zaki acted the .... of Jamal Abdel Nasser.
   a. painting b. drawing c. person d. character
3. Helmy is interested .... geography.
   a. about b. in c. at d. for
4. A : Where's Sara ? B : She's .... maths homework.
   a. doing b. making c. cooking d. diving
5. .... you able to swim ? - Yes, I am.
   a. Is b. Do c. Have d. Are

Quiz on units 1,2&3

أختبار تراكمي على الوحدات (١ ، ٢ و ٣)

- يقوم المعلم باختيار اختبار مصغر (واحد) من (B) or (A) لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمعلومات الواردة في الوحدات

Model A

Marks

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My friend and I always .... to school.
   a. recycle b. swim c. cycle d. follow
2. Nada .... long, brown hair.
   a. is b. does c. has d. have
3. .... stories are exciting and dangerous.
   a. Comedy b. Romantic c. Adventure d. Funny
4. Gymnastics .... you to stay strong.
   a. to help b. help c. helping d. helps
5. People who can't walk can use a .... to travel around.
   a. stick b. wheelchair c. wheel d. ship

Model B



Marks

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A .... person is happy to do something dangerous.
   a. strange b. brave c. frightened d. funny
2. Egypt is a big .... in Africa.
   a. town b. village c. country d. city
3. Doing work for no money is a/an .... work.
   a. bad b. daily c. adventure d. voluntary
4. These boots are ....
   a. Dina's b. Dinas' c. Dina d. Dinas
5. I like .... games online.
   a. play b. plays c. playing d. to playing

Review A

SB pages 32 & 33 WB pages 93 & 94





Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 32

My family By Lina

1 B

This is my aunt. Her name's Amal. She's my mum's sister. She's got long, dark curly[1] hair and she's got glasses. Aunt Amal is very kind.

2 D

This is my uncle. His name's Nader and he's got short, dark hair. Uncle Nader is very tall ! He's a teacher[2] and he's very clever.

 A

Aunt Amal and Uncle Nader have got two children - a son[3] and a daughter[4]. They're my cousins. Their names are Fares and Malak. This is Fares. He's five. He's got short, curly hair and he's very friendly[5].



4 C

Malak is two. She's got short, straight[6] hair. She likes playing with her toys[7]. She usually has a big smile[8]. I think she's very funny[9].



Check Vocabulary

(1) مجعد (غير مستقيم)	(2) مدرس	(3) ابن	(4) ابنة	(5) ودود
(6) مستقيم	(7) ألعاب أطفال	(8) ابتسامة	(9) مضحك	

Listening

on Lesson 2 SB page 33

Woman : What time do you get up, Shady ?

Shady : I usually get up at a quarter[1] to seven on a school day.

Woman : How do you travel to school ?

Shady : I always walk[2] to school with my brother. We never go by car.

Woman : Do you like school ?

Shady : Yes, I do! My lessons are interesting[3] and I see my friends. I always sit next to my best friend, Hassan, in lessons.

Woman : And what do you do after school ?

Shady : I sometimes play sport[4]. On Mondays, I play football, and on Wednesdays, I go swimming.

Woman : Do you have any other hobbies[5] ?Do you play chess[6] ?

Shady : No! I never play chess. I don't like it. But I often listen to music[7] or watch TV.

Check Vocabulary

(1) ربع	(2) يمشى	(3) شيق	(4) رياضة	(5) هوايات	(6) لعبة الشطرنج	(7) الموسيقى

WB page 93

Aya: Hi, my name's Aya. My friends have got long, straight hair but I've got short, curly hair. We go to a girls' school in Cairo. My favourite school subject[1] is art. I love drawing[2] . I'm not very good at it, but I want to be ! We have art at quarter to eleven, after maths and before English. I've got one brother and one sister. My brother is very friendly and my sister is very clever[3].



Check Vocabulary

(1) مادة دراسية	(2) الرسم	(3) ذكى / ماهر

Reading

- WB page 93

(a) twins (b) Huda (c) Amal (d) Lina

Teacher : OK children. It's time to go home. I've got four school bags here.
Magda : Huda's bag has got flowers on it. That's her bag there.
Maya : That's Amal's bag. It has got birds on it.
Nevine : Lina's bag is red. It hasn't got any pictures on it.
Teacher : Good, but I've now got one bag with tennis balls on it. Is it your bag, Magda ?
Magda : No, it isn't my bag. I think it's one of the twins' bags.
Teacher : Yes, but which twin, Azza or Dalia ?



Listening

- WB page 94

Narrator 1
Boy 1 : I often go to the cinema with my uncle.
Narrator 2
Girl 1 : Do you like playing chess ?
Narrator 3
Girl 1 : I have got a long, white coat[1].
Narrator 4
Boy 1 : After break, we go to the hall[2].
Narrator 5
Girl 1 : My uncle has got glasses[3] and a beard[4].

Check Vocabulary
(1) بالطو / معطف (2) صالة (3) نظارة (4) لحية

GENERAL Revision

Based on Units 1 , 2 & 3

Mini-Test on Unit 1

If you got 🔴 , you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد ، قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى فى نهاية كل وحدة.

🟢 جيد جدا 🟡 جيد 🔴 غير جيد

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. It is her car. .... often drives it. *(Ashmoun – Menoufia 2022)*
   a. She b. Her c. Hers d. Herself
2. Omar plays the violin in a famous .... *(El Edwa – Minya 2022)*
   a. bank b. library c. hospital d. band
3. The girl is not a/ an ...., she has a father and a mother.
   a. exciting b. difficult c. orphan d. lazy
4. A/An .... is a room at the top of a house.
   a. attic b. cinema c. park d. aisle
5. Teachers should .... between their work at school and their lives at home.
   a. balance b. block c. practise d. dive
6. I .... in Aswan with my family.
   a. live b. lives c. living d. is lived
7. He usually plays basketball .... Fridays.
   a. at b. on c. in d. about
8. She eats .... food so that she can stay strong.
   a. unhealthy b. healthy c. bad d. happy
9. " .... " is the opposite of "female".
   a. Mail b. Meal c. Male d. Mile
10. .... is an interesting sport.
   a. Mathematics b. Physics c. Gymnastics d. Painting

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. It is not my mobile. My is new. *(Menia 2022)* (..........)
2. Asmaa don't like swimming. *(Dayrout – Assiut 2022)* (..........)
3. What's he name ? - Ali. (..........)
4. Lamia often listening to her best friend. (..........)

3. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Your family"



If you got 🔴 , you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد ،
قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى فى نهاية كل وحدة.

Mini-Test on Unit 2

1. Complete the following dialogue :

They're talking about school subjects.

A : Hi, Ali
B : Hi, Ahmed.
A : What's your favourite (1) .... of the week ?
B : It (2) .... Monday.
A : Why ?
B : (3) .... I have art and P.E.
A : What's your favourite subject ?
B : Science.
A : (4) .... do you have it ?
B : I have science (5) .... Tuesday.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The .... rings when the lesson starts or finishes. *(Dayrout - Assuit 2022)*
   a. pull b. bell c. bull d. bill
2. In Egypt, students .... go to school on Fridays. *(Somosta - Beni Suef 2022)*
   a. always b. never c. sometimes d. usually
3. It's healthy and cheap to .... to school.
   a. cycle b. recycle c. reread d. reuse
4. On a .... holiday, I always go to the beach.
   a. kind b. typical c. bad d. silly
5. A canoe is a long, narrow ....
   a. box b. boat c. ball d. bell
6. My favourite subject is .... I love acting.
   a. economics b. drama c. science d. maths
7. Amir .... basketball after school.
   a. often plays b. often play c. often playing d. is often playing
8. A snowmobile can travel on ....
   a. water b. air c. snow d. rail
9. Do you want to join the .... this week ?
   a. books's club b. books' club c. book club d. book club's
10. .... is time to rest.
    a. Plan b. Broke c. Break d. Bread

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. I go always running in the morning every day. *(Esna - Luxor 2022)* (..........)
2. My sister goes to a girl's school. *(Agami - Alexandria 2022)* (..........)
3. What is good at football ? – Baher. (..........)
4. Ali usually arrives in school at 8 : 00. (..........)

If you got 🔴 , you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد ،
قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى فى نهاية كل وحدة.

ممتاز
جيد جدا
جيد
غير جيد

Mini-Test on Unit 3

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The Egyptian are friendly people. "Friendly" is a/an .... *(West Shubra El Kheima - Qalyubia 2022)*
   a. verb b. noun c. adverb d. adjective
2. Something scary makes you feel .... *(Girga - Sohag 2022)*
   a. sad b. bad c. funny d. frightened
3. Fatma .... got long hair. *(Hadayek El-Kobba 2022)*
   a. have b. do c. having d. has
4. A big .... on your face can make people happy.
   a. smell b. smile c. snack d. silk
5. A / An .... is a chair with wheels for people who cannot walk.
   a. armchair b. sofa c. wheelchair d. deck chair
6. He lives in England. He .... speak English.
   a. wasn't b. don't c. can d. can't
7. She is very busy. She .... take any holidays.
   a. can b. can't c. don't d. could
8. The hair that grows above a man's top lip is called ....
   a. shoulder b. moustache c. beard d. chin
9. She thinks carefully. She is ....
   a. scary b. sensible c. poor d. weak
10. Mohammed Salah has a lot of ....
    a. fans b. fins c. fats d. pans

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. This man is strong; he can't carry this box. *(Matruh - Matruh 2022)* (..........)
2. She loves play chess. (..........)
3. What food does you like ? (..........)
4. Has you got dark hair ? (..........)

3. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

" An exciting story you read."



UNIT 4

We're using technology!

SB pages 34:43 WB pages 95:101

Objectives

- **Reading :**
  A text message conversation; a text about hobbies
- **Writing :**
  A paragraph and a poster about online safety
- **Listening :**
  A description of technology in a classroom; a phone call
- **Speaking :**
  Describing the technology in your classroom; a guessing game; giving instructions
- **Language :**
  There is / There are; the present continuous
- **Life Skills :**
  Problem solving; resilience.



مسابقة

المعاصر في اللغة الانجليزية في نهاية الكتاب.

لإتقان الوحدة

- للمتابعة اليومية والشهرية ملحق Master your term
- تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر ملحق الأزهر الشريف.
- للمهارات اللغوية ملحق Master your term
- قاموس المعاصر اللغوي.
- Dictation لاختبار الإملاء في ملحق Master your term

أسئلة كل وحدة تشمل

- العلامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب.
- العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات.

LESSONS **1 & 2**

SB pages 34 : 37 WB pages 95 & 96



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

laptop computer (n)	كمبيوتر محمول	3D printers	طابعات ثلاثية الأبعاد
picture (n)	صورة طبيعية أو مرسومة	whiteboard (n)	سبورة بيضاء
tablet (n)	كمبيوتر لوحى	classmate (n)	زميل فصل
mobile phone (n)	تليفون محمول	email (n)	رسالة بريد إلكترونى
selfie (n)	صورة فوتوغرافية بالكاميرا الأمامية للتليفون	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
mouse (n)	فأرة	phone charger (n)	شاحن الهاتف
printer (n)	الطابعة	MP3 player (n)	مشغل الأغانى

تنويه
- **Key Vocabulary** هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- **قاموس المعاصر اللغوى** لإتقان المفردات اللغوية.
- استعد لاختبار الاملاء ملحق **Dictation** **Master your term**.



Pop Quiz تدريب يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Step 1 Read key Vocabulary — الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ المفردات اللغوية المحورية.

Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary — الخطوة الثانية : تدرب على المفردات اللغوية.

• يقوم الطالب بأداء تدريب تلقائى على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها.

⊙ **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

classmate - email - selfie - player - laptop

1. A .... is a photo you take of yourself.
2. Salma has got a new MP3 ....
3. I'll send you a/an .... online.
4. A .... small, light computer that you can carry easily.

Lesson 1 SB pages 34 & 35 WB page 95

print (ed) (v)	يطبع (ورق)	charge (d) (v)	يشحن (كهربيًا)

Lesson 2 SB pages 36 & 37 WB page 96

text message (n)	رسالة نصية	great (adj)	رائع / عظيم
moment (n)	لحظة	video call (n)	مكالمة مرئية بالفيديو
paper (n)	ورق	icon (n)	أيقونة / رمز
plastic model (n)	نموذج بالاستيك	click (ed) = tap (ped) (v)	ينقر / يضغط
design (ed) (v)	يصمم / يرسم تصميم		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
know يعرف	knew	known

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
new	جديد	old	قديم
online	متصل بالإنترنت	offline	غير متصل بالإنترنت
necessary	ضرورى	unnecessary	غير ضرورى

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (**glossary**) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

charge	increase the power of a battery	يشحن (كهربيًا)
click	press a mouse or icon to make something happen on a computer	ينقر / يضغط
email	a letter or message you send on a computer	رسالة بريد إلكترونى
icon	a small picture on a computer screen	أيقونة / رمز
laptop computer	a small, light computer that you can carry easily	كمبيوتر محمول

mobile phone	a small phone that you can carry with you	تليفون محمول
mouse	an object you move so that you can read and write on a computer screen	فأرة
MP3 player	a machine that can play music	مشغل موسيقى
online	using the internet	متصل بالإنترنت
phone charger	you use a phone charger to increase the battery power of a mobile phone	شاحن (تليفون محمول)
printer	a machine that can print documents from a computer	طابعة
selfie	a photo you take of yourself	صورة فوتوغرافية بالكاميرا الأمامية للتليفون
tap	touch quickly with your finger	ينقر / يضغط
text message	sentences you write on a mobile phone	رسالة نصية
tablet	a flat, mobile computer that is smaller than a laptop computer	كمبيوتر لوحي
video call	a way to talk to and see people online	مكالمة بالفيديو
website	an internet page with information about something	موقع على الإنترنت
whiteboard	a classroom board that is sometimes connected to a computer	سبورة بيضاء
3D printer	a machine that can print documents in 3D from a computer	طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 tap / click

- tap — يلمس برفق على سطح شاشة محدثًا صوت أحيانًا [ينقر باللمس]
  ex.:- Leen tapped on her mobile screen to make a call.
- click — يضغط على زر فى فأرة أو لوحة مفاتيح.
  ex.:- He clicked on the file icon to open it.

SB page 92 / WB page 96

2 the same / similar

- the same — نفس الشيء «دون اختلاف كبير»
  ex.:- He has the same features of his father.
- similar (to) — متشابه فى بعض الصفات
  ex.:- Amr is similar to Ali in some points.

SB page 36

3 Each — يستخدم بعدها اسم مفرد وتعنى (كل على حدة)

ex.:- Each laptop has got a mouse.

4 Online — متصل بالإنترنت

ex.:- There are many online shops on the internet. تستخدم كصفة قبل الاسم
- Grandfather is playing chess online. تستخدم كظرف بعد الفعل.

Reading on lesson 2 SB page 36

5 look

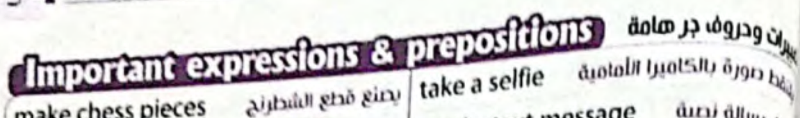
- look at — ينظر إلى
  ex.:- I'm looking at websites for information about 3D printers.
- look for — يبحث عن
  ex.:- She is looking for a new pair of shoes.
- look after — يعتنى بـ
  ex.:- I look after my baby sister while mother is out.
- look up — يبحث عن معلومة أو كلمة فى قاموس
  ex.:- I use my dictionary to look up new words.
- look out for — يحذر من
  ex.:- Divers should look out for dangerous sharks.

Reading on lesson 2 SB page 36

6 a mouse – mouses – mice

- a mouse — فأر - فأرة (الكمبيوتر)
  ex.:- There is a mouse in the attic.
  - My laptop has got a mouse.
- mouses — جمع كلمة mouse عندما نقصد فأرات الكمبيوتر
  ex.:- I have two mouses for my computer.
- mice — فئران (جمع غير منتظم)
  ex.:- There are two mice in the kitchen.

Reading on lesson 1 SB page 34



Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

make chess pieces	يصنع قطع الشطرنج	take a selfie	يلتقط صورة بالكاميرا الأمامية
charge ... with	يشحن ... باستخدام	send a text message	يرسل رسالة نصية
play ... online	يلعب ... متصلاً بالإنترنت	do computer studies homework	يؤدى واجب مادة الحاسب الآلى
at the moment	فى هذه اللحظة	design an icon for	يصمم أيقونة لـ
easy to use	سهل الاستخدام		

II Skills

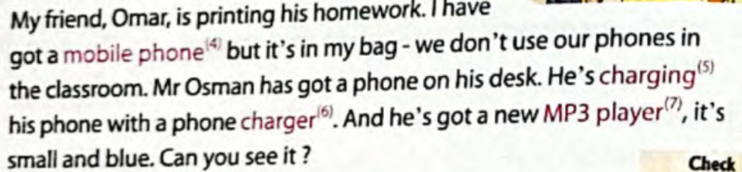
1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz | تدرب على ٣٧ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع



Reading

- on Lesson 1 SB page 34



I am Ziad and this is a picture of my classroom. We often use tablets in school. There are two laptop(1) computers in the classroom, too. One laptop has got a mouse(2). I don't know why it's called a mouse. Do you know? And there's a printer(3), too. My friend, Omar, is printing his homework. I have got a mobile phone(4) but it's in my bag - we don't use our phones in the classroom. Mr Osman has got a phone on his desk. He's charging(5) his phone with a phone charger(6). And he's got a new MP3 player(7), it's small and blue. Can you see it?

Answer the following questions:

- Giving the main idea إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

Learn 1. What is the main idea of the passage?

- Using technology at classroom.

- Extracting information إستخراج المعلومات

Practise 2. Who is printing his homework?

- ....

Check Vocabulary
(1) كمبيوتر محمول
(2) فأرة الكمبيوتر
(3) طابعة
(4) تليفون محمول
(5) يشحن
(6) شاحن
(7) مشغل أغانى

Listening

- on Lesson 1 SB page 35







There's a laptop computer on the table. Under the table, there's a printer. There isn't an MP3 player but there are two mobile phones near the laptop. The laptop has got a mouse.

Listening skill

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- There is a printer .... the table.

a. on b. in c. next to d. under

- Reading on Lesson 2 SB page 36

Adam : Hi, Granddad. It's Adam. What are you doing?

Granddad : I'm playing chess online(1). I'm winning at the moment!

Adam : Are you using your new laptop?

Granddad : Yes, it's quite easy to use(2). What are you doing?

Adam : I'm doing my computer studies homework(3). I'm looking at websites(4) for information(5) about 3D printers(6).

Granddad : What are your mum and Alia doing?

Adam : They're taking selfies(7). I'm sending you one of their photos now.

Granddad : Oh yes! That's a great photo.

Check Vocabulary

(1) متصل بالإنترنت	(2) سهل الاستخدام	(3) يؤدى واجب مادة الحاسب الآلى	(4) مواقع على الإنترنت
(5) معلومات	(6) طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد	(7) يلتقط صور بالكاميرا الأمامية	

Videoscript Lesson 2 SB page 36

Narrator : We use technology every day. Modern technology[1] is very different from technology in the past. The ancient Egyptians[2] used their own forms[3] of technology to do a lot of different things. For example, ancient Egypt was the first civilization[4] to use calendars[5]. This is a calendar in the Temple of Karnak[6] in Luxor. Today, we can use our phones to find our way. The ancient Egyptians used astronomy[7] to find their way in the desert and at sea. Astronomy is the study of stars and planets.
How do you tell the time ? Have you got a phone ... or a watch ? The ancient Egyptians had the first clocks. They were called sundials[8], like this one in Alexandria.
They used the sun to tell the time. Hieroglyphics[9] is the oldest writing in the world. The ancient Egyptians used hieroglyphics to communicate[10].
And of course, the ancient Egyptians used a plant[11] called papyrus[12] to make the first kind of paper.
This is papyrus. It grows[13] along the River Nile. Today, we use different technology to the ancient Egyptians. This woman is writing a text message on her phone. And this man is writing a story. He is not using paper at all !
Today, we have calendars on our phones, computers and tablets. Today's technology is different, but we can thank the ancient Egyptians for starting the ideas[14] for our technology too.

Check Vocabulary

(1) التكنولوجيا الحديثة	(2) قدماء المصريين	(3) أشكال	(4) حضارة	(5) تقويم	(6) معبد الكرنك	(7) علم الفلك
(8) ساعات شمسية	(9) اللغة الهيروغليفية	(10) يتواصل	(11) نبات	(12) نبات البردى	(13) ينمو	(14) أفكار

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. I need a/an .... and some paper to print these photos.
   a. charger b. MP3 player c. printer d. scanner
2. Ali sits beside me in the class. He is my ....
   a. teacher b. classmate c. clerk d. manager
3. A/An .... is a kind of computers.
   a. whiteboard b. charger c. MP3 player d. laptop
4. My mobile battery is empty, can you lend me your .... ?
   a. marker b. printer c. charger d. mouse
5. A machine that can play music is called a / an ....
   a. MP3 player b. printer c. watch d. clock
6. You can use the .... to click on different icons on the computer.
   a. mouse b. printer c. charger d. tablet

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

7. WB I'd like to .... a selfie in front of the river. (Snoras - Fayoum 2022)
   a. make b. give c. pick d. take
8. WB She's .... you a photo now. (Multidisciplinary-Beni Suef 2021)
   a. writing b. sending c. doing d. making
9. WB .... on the icon on your laptop. (El Fashn-Beni Suef 2020)
   a. Click b. Write c. Give d. Turn

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

10. When the battery of the mobile is low, you can .... it.
    a. play b. break c. charge d. drive
11. When you want to send someone a message on a computer, send a / an ....
    a. letter b. email c. paragraph d. story
12. In 1992 , a computer engineer sent the world's first .... message.
    a. test b. taxes c. text d. toast

Definitions

13. Making a .... is a way to talk and see people online.
 a. website b. video call c. printer d. selfie

14. A .... is an internet page with information about something.
 a. view b. diary c. website d. site

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. I'm looking at websites .... information about 3D printers.
 a. at b. about c. for d. with

16. I'm .... my computer studies homework now.
 a. making b. giving c. doing d. taking

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

A description of technology in a classroom

وصف التكنولوجيا الموجودة فى حجرة الدراسة

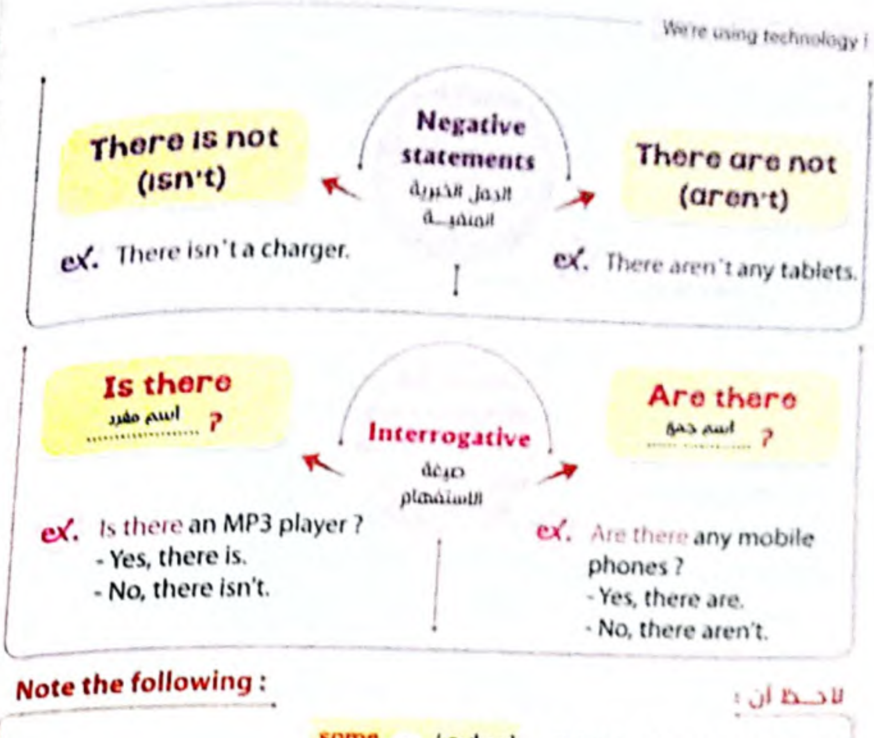
- What's in your classroom ? ما الموجود داخل فصلك الدراسى ؟
- There are some laptops and a whiteboard. يوجد بعض أجهزة الكمبيوتر المحمولة وسبورة بيضاء.
- There aren't any tablets. لا يوجد أى أجهزة لوحية.

III Language



There is يوجد (للمفرد) **There are** يوجد (للجمع)





Note the following : لاحظ أن :

- تستخدم فى الجمل الخبرية المثبتة **some** بعض + اسم لا يعد / اسم جمع

There is some milk in the bottle.
There are some pencils in my pencil case.

- تستخدم أيضًا some عند التعبير عن العرض والطلب

- Would you like some coffee ? (عرض)
- Can I have some tea ? (طلب)

- تستخدم فى الجمل الخبرية المنفية وصيغة الاستفهام بمعنى أى **any** أى + اسم لا يعد / اسم جمع

There isn't any ink in my pen.
There aren't any cakes in the fridge.
Is there any ink in your pen ?
Are there any cakes in the fridge ?

- تستخدم (an) قبل كلمة MP3 player وليس (a) لأنها تبدأ بصوت متحرك.

Is there an MP3 player ?

Stop here ! on Language (Answered & Explained)

في هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... there any useful information in this website ?
   a. Were b. Is c. Are d. Do
2. Would you like .... cookies ?
   a. any b. few c. some d. an
3. There .... many kinds of flowers around the world.
   a. is b. are c. was d. does
4. Have you got .... questions ?
   a. some b. a c. a little d. any

No.	Answer + Explanation الإجابة والتوضيح	
1	b	[illegible]
2	c	[illegible]
3	b	[illegible]
4	d	[illegible]

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. SB There are some laptops and there .... a whiteboard.
   a. are b. aren't c. do d. is *(Helwan - Cairo 2022)*
2. There .... a lot of interesting books in the library.
   a. is b. are c. isn't d. wasn't *(Minya El-Qamh - Sharkia 2022)*
3. .... there any water in the fridge ? *(El Fashn-Beni Suef 2020)*
   a. Are b. Does c. Aren't d. Is
4. WB Are there .... printers ? *(Multidisciplinary - Sharkia 2021)*
   a. some b. any c. much d. little

5. SB There .... any tablets.
   a. is b. are c. aren't d. isn't

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. There .... a big wardrobe in my parents' room.
   a. doesn't b. are c. is d. aren't
7. .... there any pens with you, Mona ?
   a. Is b. Are c. Do d. Was
8. There are .... books in my bag.
   a. any b. much c. some d. enough not
9. There .... more women than men in the office.
   a. is b. isn't c. are d. am
10. Is there an umbrella for me ? - No, there ....
    a. aren't b. is c. are d. isn't

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. SB There <u>aren't</u> a charger. *(Borg Elarab - Alexandria 2022)* (........)
2. WB Is there a teacher ? – Yes, there <u>are</u>. (........)
3. Would you like <u>any</u> water ? *(Damanhour 2021)* (........)
4. There <u>are</u> any books on the shelf. *(Hehia-Sharkia 2020)* (........)
5. WB There aren't <u>some</u> computers. *(Wasat Alex 2020)* (........)

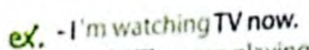
El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. <u>Is</u> there any computers in the classroom ? (........)
7. Are <u>their</u> any mobile phones ? (........)

The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Formation التكوين

Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة	→	Subject	+	Verb to be	+	
		I		am		
		He / She / It / فاعل مفرد غائب		is		inf. المصدر + ing
		We / You / They / فاعل جمع		are		



ex. - I'm watching TV now.
- Look! They are playing tennis.
- He's studying for his exams at the moment.

Usage الاستخدام

يعبر هذا الزمن عن حدث يقع أثناء التحدث (لحظة الكلام).

ex.: - They are designing a new library now.
- He is reading a book at present.

يستخدم هذا الزمن أيضًا لوصف أحداث مخطط لها فى المستقبل.

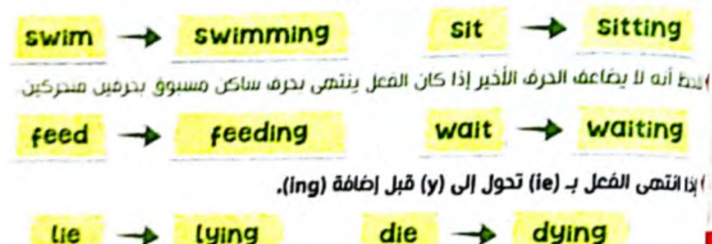
ex.: - We are going to Aswan tomorrow.
- They are having a party tonight.

ملاحظات على إضافة (ing) للفعل

عندما ينتهى الفعل بحرف الـ (e) غير منطوق (قبلة حرف ساكن) تحذف (e) قبل إضافة (ing) أما إذا كان حرف (e) منطوقًا لا تحذف ويضاف (ing).



إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبوقًا بحرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير قبل إضافة (ing) (بشرط أن يكون الفعل مكون من مقطع واحد)



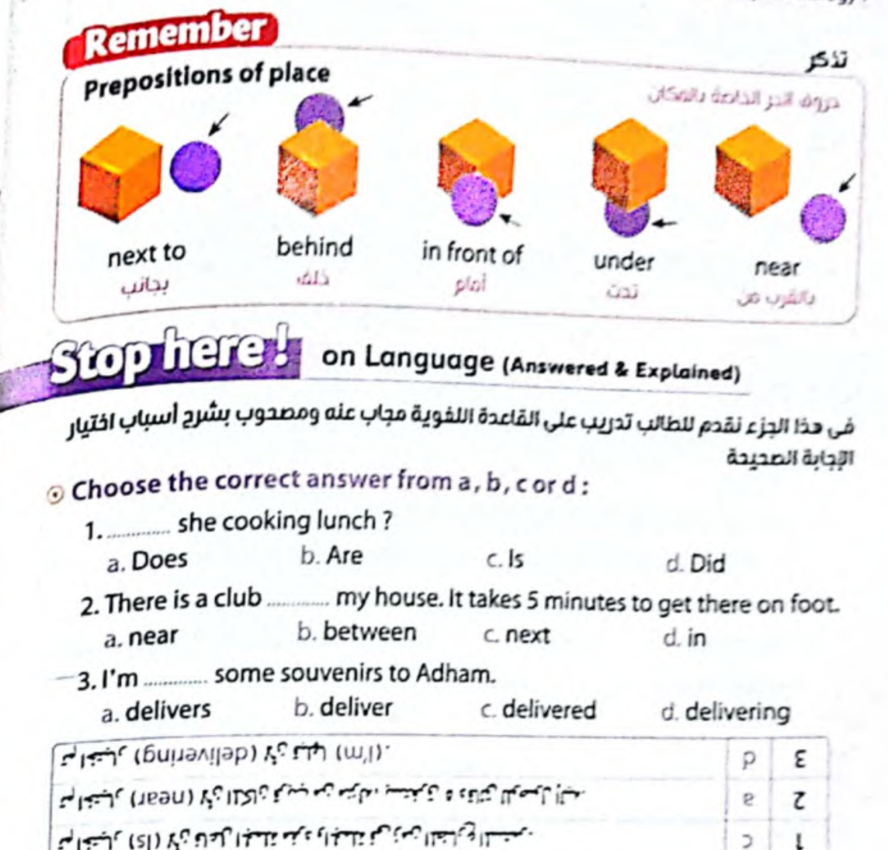
لاحظ أنه لا يضاعف الحرف الأخير إذا كان الفعل ينتهى بحرف ساكن مسبوق بحرفين متحركين

إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (ie) تحول إلى (y) قبل إضافة (ing).

كلمات دالة (Key words) : غالبًا تأتى مع الزمن :

now الآن	Take care! احذر!	at the moment فى تلك اللحظة
Look! انظر!	still لايزال	at present فى الوقت الحاضر
Listen! انصت!	tonight فى هذه الليلة	Look out! / Watch out! احترس!

ex.: - Listen! She's singing.
- He is working now.



Remember تذكر

Prepositions of place حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

Stop here! on Language (Answered & Explained)

فى هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... she cooking lunch?
   a. Does b. Are c. Is d. Did
2. There is a club .... my house. It takes 5 minutes to get there on foot.
   a. near b. between c. next d. in
3. I'm .... some souvenirs to Adham.
   a. delivers b. deliver c. delivered d. delivering

No.	Answer + Explanation شرح الإجابة
1	c (Is) [illegible]
2	a (near) [illegible]
3	d (delivering) [illegible]

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

➲ SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. SB I'm playing chess online. I'm .... at the moment. (Multidisciplinary - Giza 2021)
   a. win b. wins c. winning d. won
2. WB Mum and my sister .... a cake.
   a. making b. are making c. is making d. makes

3. Watch out ! A car .... (Samanoud - El Gharbia 20..)
a. comes b. coming c. came d. is coming

4. Ali .... his English book now. (Quesna - Menofia 20..)
a. reads b. read c. is reading d. reading

5. My friend and I .... chess now. (Rasheed - Beheira 20..)
a. are playing b. am playing c. played d. plays

6. SB I am .... you a photo.
a. sent b. sends c. send d. sending

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. There is a new restaurant in .... of my school.
a. next b. front c. back d. behind

8. I'm .... ready for the show at the moment.
a. gets b. get c. got d. getting

9. The dog is .... the tree. I can't see its head.
a. next b. near c. behind d. front of

10. Look ! Youssef is .... the ball.
a. kicking b. kicks c. kick d. kicked

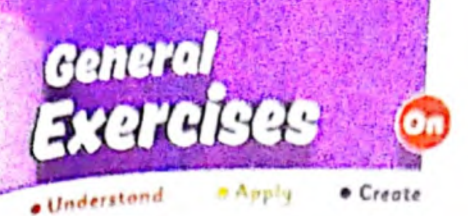
2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. WB There is an MP3 player behind to the laptop. (Maadi - Cairo 2022) (........)
2. SB He is charged his phone with a phone charger. (........)
3. The baby sleeps at the moment. (North Giza 2020) (........)
4. Omar prints his homework now. (Aswan 2020) (........)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. The whiteboard is next up the students' desks. (........)
6. I drink tea at the moment. (........)
7. They is making chess pieces. (........)



On LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Where is Ziad ? - He is in his ....
a. playground b. classroom c. car d. homework

2. How many laptops are there in the classroom ?
a. 3 b. 4 c. 2 d. 5

3. There is one .... in the classroom .
a. laptop b. MP3 player c. tablet d. printer

4. Who is printing his homework ?
a. Omar b. Ziad c. Tarek d. Ali

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ali is busy using his mobile.

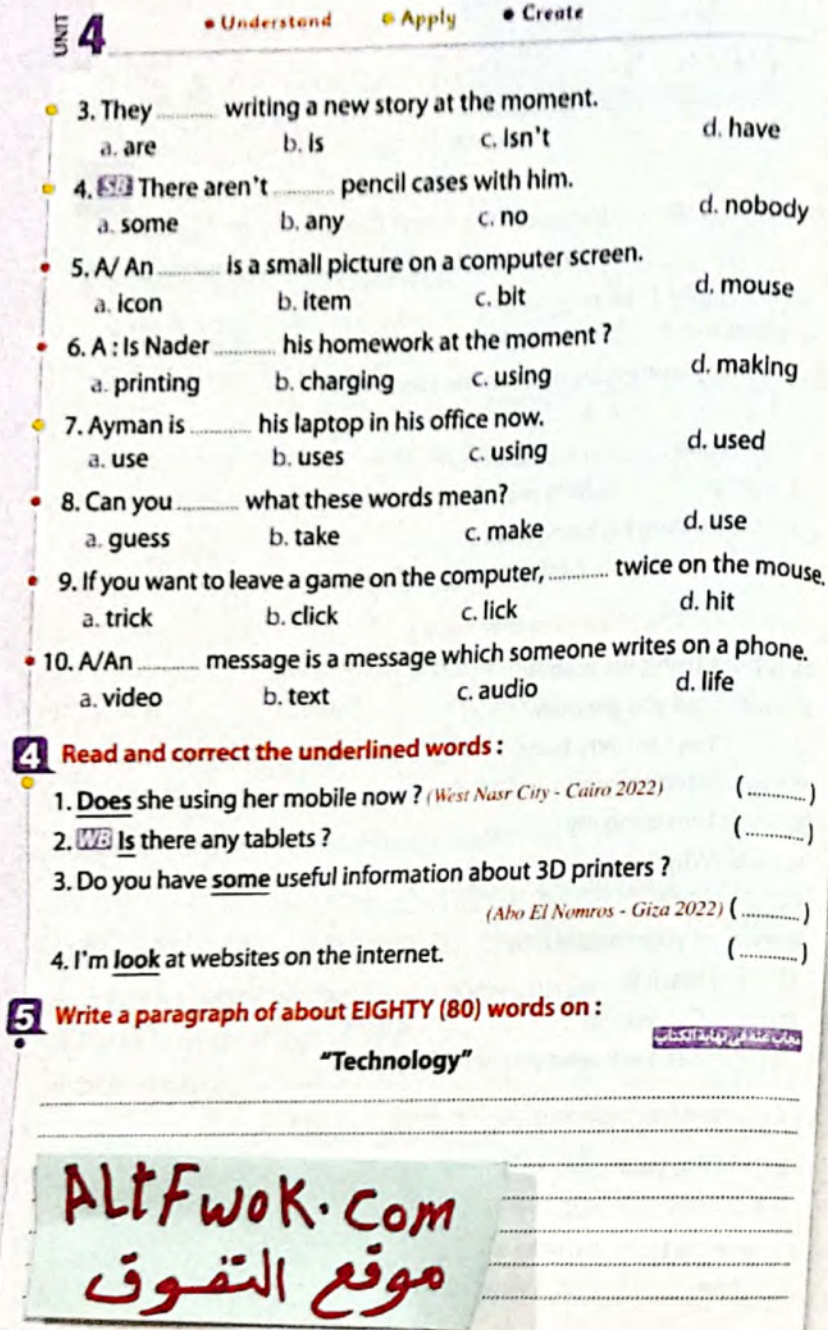
Marwa : I see you are busy.
Ali : Yes, I am very busy.
Marwa : What are you (1) .... ?
Ali : I am using my (2) ....
Marwa : Why ?
Ali : To (3) .... an email.
Marwa : Is your mobile new ?
Ali : Yes, it is.
Marwa : Can you (4) .... a selfie ?
Ali : Yes, I will send you one of my (5) ....



3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Can I use your .... to make a call ? (El Hamoul - Kafr El Sheikh 2022)
a. printer b. charger c. phone d. mouse

2. I use my tablet to make a research ....
a. line b. online c. in line d. at line



3. They .... writing a new story at the moment.
   a. are   b. is   c. isn't   d. have
4. SB There aren't .... pencil cases with him.
   a. some   b. any   c. no   d. nobody
5. A/ An .... is a small picture on a computer screen.
   a. icon   b. item   c. bit   d. mouse
6. A : Is Nader .... his homework at the moment ?
   a. printing   b. charging   c. using   d. making
7. Ayman is .... his laptop in his office now.
   a. use   b. uses   c. using   d. used
8. Can you .... what these words mean?
   a. guess   b. take   c. make   d. use
9. If you want to leave a game on the computer, ... twice on the mouse.
   a. trick   b. click   c. lick   d. hit
10. A/An .... message is a message which someone writes on a phone.
   a. video   b. text   c. audio   d. life

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **Does** she using her mobile now ? *(West Nasr City - Cairo 2022)* (........)
2. WB **Is** there any tablets ? (........)
3. Do you have **some** useful information about 3D printers ? *(Abo El Nomros - Giza 2022)* (........)
4. I'm **look** at websites on the internet. (........)

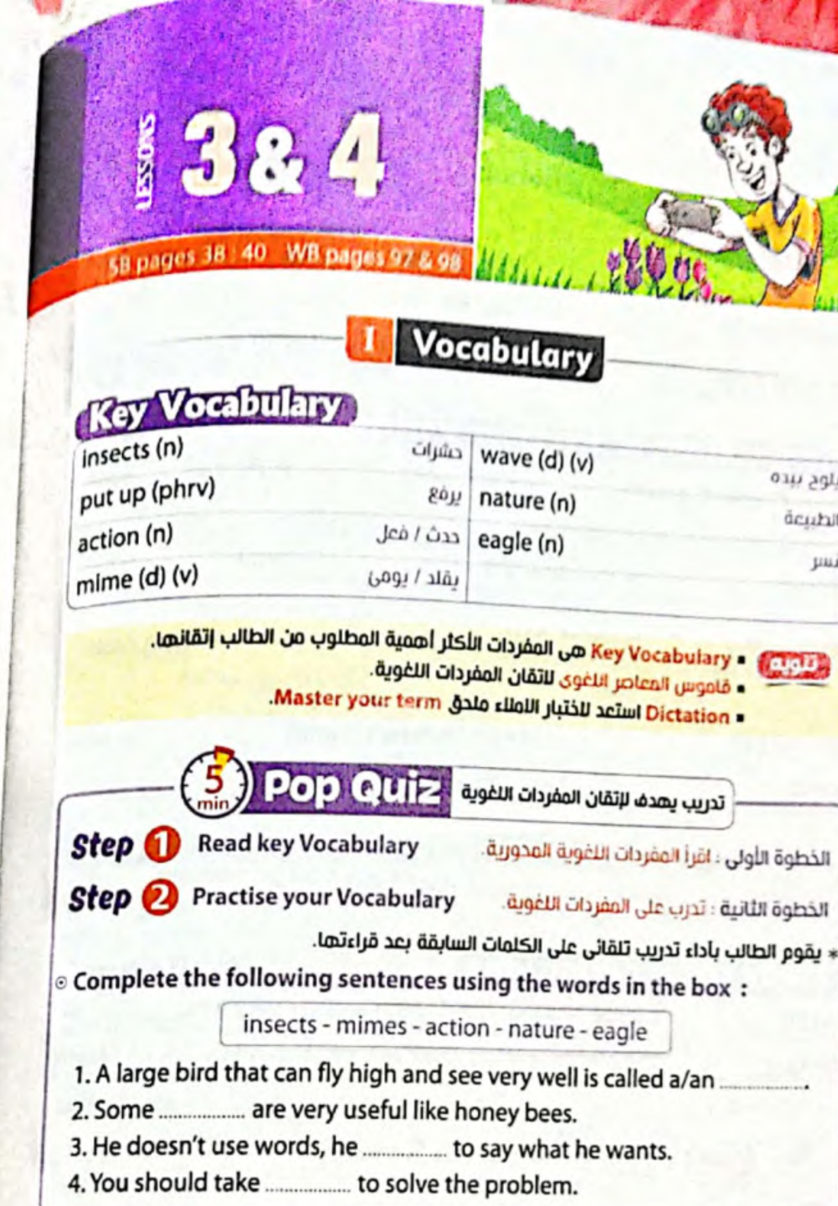
5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

جواب عنقافي نهاية الكتاب

"Technology"

....

....



LESSONS 3 & 4

SB pages 38 : 40   WB pages 97 & 98

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

insects (n)	حشرات	wave (d) (v)	يلوح بيده
put up (phrv)	يرفع	nature (n)	الطبيعة
action (n)	حدث / فعل	eagle (n)	نسر
mime (d) (v)	يقلد / يومئ		

تنويه
- Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- قاموس المعاصر اللغوي لاتقان المفردات اللغوية.
- Dictation استعد لاختبار الاملاء ملحق Master your term.

5 min Pop Quiz تدريب يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Step 1 Read key Vocabulary — الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ المفردات اللغوية المحورية

Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary — الخطوة الثانية : تدرب على المفردات اللغوية

* يقوم الطالب بأداء تدريب تلقائي على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها.

⊙ Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

insects - mimes - action - nature - eagle

1. A large bird that can fly high and see very well is called a/an ....
2. Some .... are very useful like honey bees.
3. He doesn't use words, he .... to say what he wants.
4. You should take .... to solve the problem.

Lesson 3   SB pages 38 & 39   WB page 97

email (n)	رسالة بريد إلكتروني	sunny (adj)	مشمس
programme (n)	برنامج		

Lesson 4

SB page 40 WB page 98

spelling (n)	الهجاء	advice (n)	نصيحة
lunchtime (n)	وقت الغذاء	kind (n)	نوع
around (prep)	حول	grammar mistakes (n)	أخطاء القواعد اللغوية

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
spend	يقضي / ينفق	spent	spent
bring	يحضر	brought	brought

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
similar (to)	مشابه (لـ)	different (from)	مختلف (عن)
send	يرسل	receive	يستقبل

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

eagle	a large bird that can fly high and see very well	نسر
nature	the plants, animals, land, sea, etc. around us	الطبيعة

General Notes on Reading and Listening

1 break

- break – broke – broken (v) يكسر
  ex.: - Don't break your pencil.
- break (n) فسحة
  ex.: - At break, we play video games. (لاحظ أنه يسبقها حرف الجر at)
  Reading on lesson 4 SB page 40

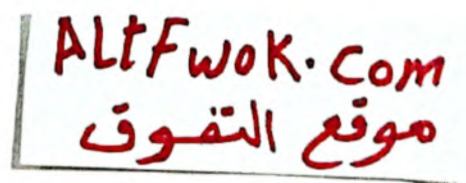
2 What do you think of .... ? تستخدم للسؤال عن الرأى
ex.: - What do you think of Wael and Mazin ?
SB page 40

3 There / Their

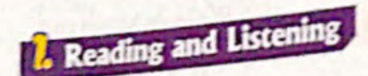
- There is/are ... يوجد
  ex.: - There is a girl in the playground.
- there هناك
  ex.: - Who is over there ?
- Their صفة ملكية من الضمير They
  ex.: - Their father is a gymnast.
  Listening on lesson 3 WB page 97

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

write ..... with	يكتب ... باستخدام	aged 13	عمره ١٣ عام
make questions	يكون أسئلة	do a hobby	يمارس هواية
put my hand up	أرفع يدى	near my house	بالقرب من منزلى
have to + inf.	يضطر إلى	take notes	يدون ملاحظات
take photos of	يلتقط صور لـ	on my laptop	على الكمبيوتر المحمول (الخاص بى)
		on my mobile phone	على هاتفى
fly a kite	يطير طائرة ورقية	sit under the tree	يجلس تحت الشجرة
wear black shoes	يرتدى حذاء أسود	smile at	يبتسم لـ



II Skills



1. Reading and Listening

تدرب على ٣٧ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع



Listening

on Lesson 3 SB page 38

Listen to the conversation between two sisters. What is Randa doing?

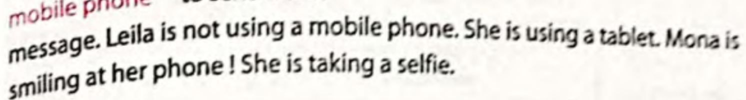
Randa : Hi, Sherifa, it's Randa.
Sherifa : Oh, hello Randa. Where are you? Are you at home?
Randa : Yes, and Uncle Yasser's here with our cousins Ola, Reem and Samira.
Sherifa : What's Mum doing?
Randa : She's looking at a website[1]. She wants to make a cake[2].
Sherifa : Yum! Mum makes the best cakes. Is she using the tablet?
Randa : No, she isn't. She's using the laptop. Uncle Yasser's using the tablet. He's writing an email.
Sherifa : Is grandmother watching TV?
Randa : Yes, she is. It's her favourite programme on[3] now.
Sherifa : Of course. What are Ola and Samira doing?
Randa : They're taking selfies in the garden.
Sherifa : Again? They're always taking selfies[4]!
Randa : I know. Reem isn't taking a selfie; she's listening to music on her MP3 player.
Sherifa : She's a good dancer[5]! What are you doing, Randa?
Randa : I'm talking to[6] you!
Sherifa : Oh yes!

Check Vocabulary
(1) موقع على الإنترنت (2) يصنع كعكة / تورتة (3) يعرض (4) يلتقط صور بالكاميرا الأمامية للهاتف (5) راقصة (6) يتحدث إلى

Reading

on Lesson 3 SB page 39

Soha is not making a video call[1] but she is talking to her friend. Amira is not using any technology[2]. Fatma has got long, curly hair[3]. She is writing. Hala is using her mobile phone[4] to send a text



message. Leila is not using a mobile phone. She is using a tablet. Mona is smiling at her phone! She is taking a selfie.

Check Vocabulary
(1) يجري مكالمة فيديو (2) تكنولوجيا (3) شعر مجعد (4) هاتف محمول

on Lesson 4 SB page 40

I love technology[1]! **My** favourite hobby is playing video games. I usually play them on my laptop[2], but sometimes I play **them** on my mobile phone.

Can you guess[3] my favourite[4] lesson at school? Yes, it is computer studies! At break and lunchtime[5] I stay in the classroom and I look at video game[6] websites on my phone.

Wael, age 12

Check Vocabulary
(1) تكنولوجيا (2) كمبيوتر محمول (3) يخمن (4) مفضل (5) وقت الغداء (6) لعبة فيديو

Answer the following questions:

- Understanding reference. فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

Learn 1. What does the word "My" refer to?
- *It refers to Wael.*

Practise 2. What does the word "them" refer to?
- ....

• **on Lesson 4 SB page 40**

I love nature [1]. I like walking and watching the trees, animals [2], flowers and insects [3] all around us. I don't like being in the house; I like being in the garden [4] and looking at the sky. At school, I always go outside [5] at break. I go when it's very hot or cold! I've got a mobile phone. I don't send text messages or make video calls on my phone, but I take photos of flowers.

Mazin, age 13



Answer the following questions :

- Critical thinking skill مهارة التفكير النقدي

Learn 1. What do you think of Mazin's hobby ?
- *I think it's interesting because I love nature, too.*

Practise 2. How do you know that Mazen loves nature ?
- ....

Check Vocabulary
(1) طبيعة
(2) حيوانات
(3) حشرات
(4) حديقة
(5) بالخارج

• **on Lesson 4 WB page 98**

In this picture, there is a big park. There are lots of flowers and insects and there is a big tree. A girl is sitting under the tree. Her mother is taking a photo of her. Her father is not sitting under the tree. He is flying a kite ! The girl's brothers are playing tennis.





• **on Lesson 3 WB page 97**




Judy : Hi, Leila. Where are you ?
Leila : Hi, Judy. I'm in the park with my family.
Judy : What are you doing there ?
Leila : I'm sitting under a tree. It's very sunny.
Judy : Are your brothers sitting, too ?

Leila : No, they aren't. They're playing football.
Judy : Is your dad playing football with them ?
Leila : No, he isn't. He's not here. He's working today. But my Uncle Hassan is playing football!
Judy : What's your mother doing ?
Leila : Er, wait ... here she is. She's bringing me a drink of water. Thanks, Mum!

Listening skill

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :
- Uncle Hassan is in the ....
  a. zoo b. cinema c. museum d. park

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. Flies and bees are kinds of ....
   a. plants b. insects c. fish d. birds
2. Monkeys are smart animals, they can .... people's actions.
   a. place b. guess c. mime d. decide
3. My little brother learnt to .... his hand goodbye.
   a. see b. wave c. wear d. take
4. It's polite to .... your hands up first when you want to ask a question.
   a. make b. give c. put d. take

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

5. WB He's .... under the tree. (Al Wasta-Beni Suef 2022)
   a. flying b. sitting c. taking d. making
6. SB Soha isn't making a .... , but she is talking to her friend. (Multidisciplinary - Gharbia 2021)
   a. project b. video call c. selfie d. message
7. Is it good to have a hobby you .... all the time ? (Balteem-Kafr El Sheikh 2020)
   a. make b. do c. give d. take
8. WB He is .... a kite.
   a. eating b. sitting c. going d. flying

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. It is always .... in the summer.
   a. rainy b. sunny c. windy d. cold

10. What ______ of stories do you like?
a. age b. height c. width d. kind

11. Pupils should wear their school ______ every school day.
a. form b. books c. uniform d. playground

12. Life in the city is ______ from life in the country.
a. similar b. different c. easy d. important

Definitions

13. A/ An ______ is a large bird that can fly high and see very well.
a. canary b. duck c. eagle d. hen

14. ______ means the plants, animals, land, sea, etc. around us.
a. Nature b. Plant c. Information d. Place

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. Please, ______ me a drink of water.
a. do b. make c. bring d. answer

16. SB Mona is ______ at her phone! She is taking a selfie.
a. smelling b. smiling c. doing d. trying

17. The teacher taught us how to ______ questions.
a. take b. do c. make d. have

18. Soha is talking ______ her phone at the moment.
a. at b. on c. from d. in

2. Writing مهارة الكتابة

Writing tips نصائح للكتابة

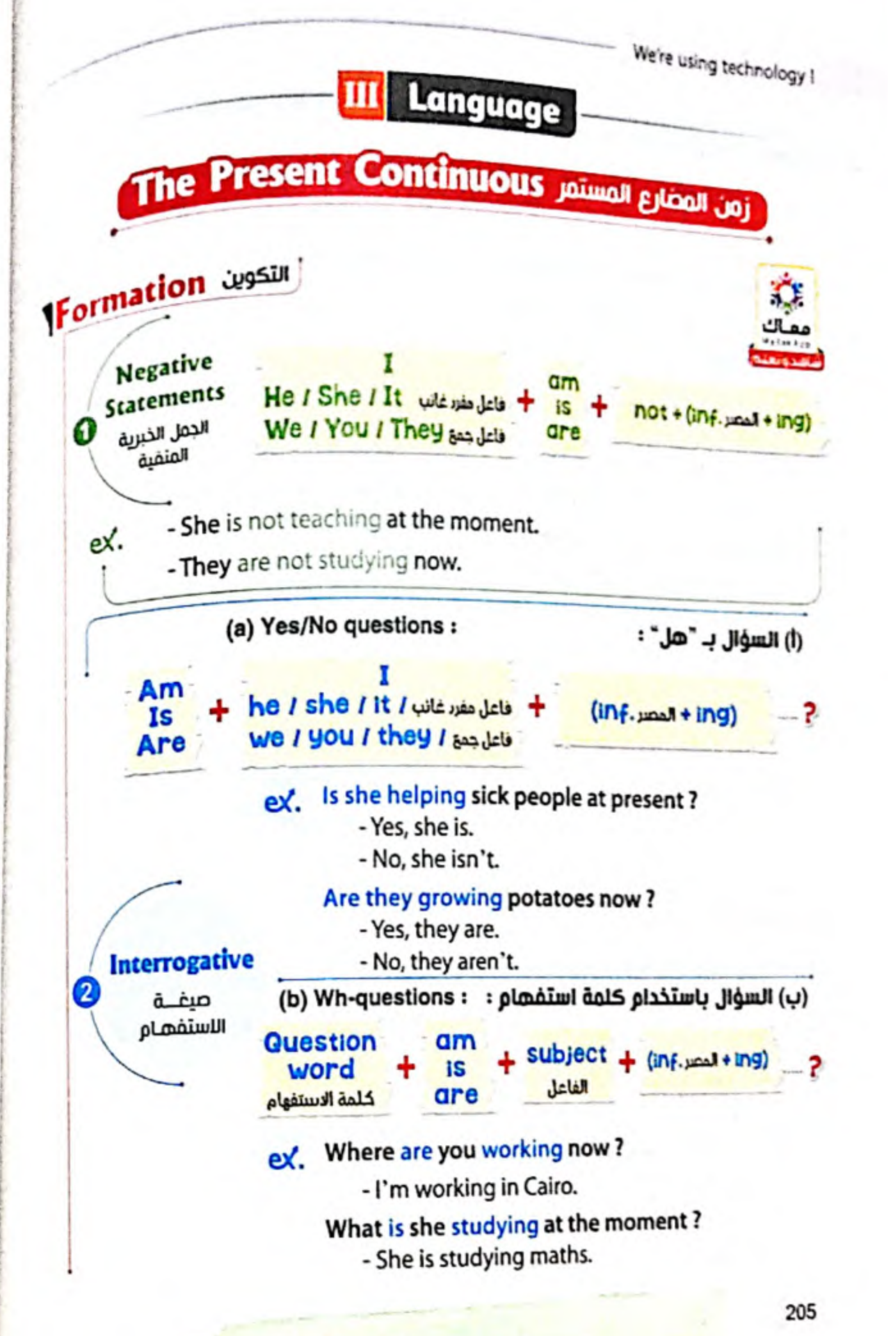
- **Review your paragraph for spelling and grammar mistakes**

قم بمراجعة الفقرة الإنشائية للتحقق من الهجاء والأخطاء اللغوية

في هذا الجزء تتمكن من الكتابة عن الطبيعة حوالي ٤ جمل

Nature الطبيعة

1. I love nature so much. ١. أنا أحب الطبيعة جدًا.
2. I like watching the trees, animals, flowers and insects. ٢. أنا أحب مشاهدة الأشجار والحيوانات والزهور والحشرات.
3. I like being in the garden and looking at the sky. ٣. أنا أحب البقاء في الحديقة والنظر للسماء.
4. I like photos of flowers so much. ٤. أحب صور الزهور جدًا.



III Language

The Present Continuous زمن المضارع المستمر

Formation التكوين

1 Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

Subject		Verb to be		
I	+	am	+	not + (inf. المصدر + ing)
He / She / It فاعل مفرد غائب		is		
We / You / They فاعل جمع		are		

ex.
- She is not teaching at the moment.
- They are not studying now.

2 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

(a) Yes/No questions : (أ) السؤال بـ "هل" :

Am / Is / Are + I / he / she / it / فاعل مفرد غائب / we / you / they / فاعل جمع + (inf. المصدر + ing) ... ?

ex. Is she helping sick people at present?
- Yes, she is.
- No, she isn't.

Are they growing potatoes now?
- Yes, they are.
- No, they aren't.

(b) Wh-questions : (ب) السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام :

Question word كلمة الاستفهام + am / is / are + subject الفاعل + (inf. المصدر + ing) ... ?

ex. Where are you working now?
- I'm working in Cairo.

What is she studying at the moment?
- She is studying maths.

Stop here! on Language (Answered & Explained)

في هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I .... my dinner right now.
   a. eat b. eating c. eats d. am eating
2. Where .... going ? - I'm going home.
   a. are they b. are you c. is he d. is she
3. .... you waiting for a bus ?
   a. Do b. Did c. Is d. Are
4. What is John .... at the moment ?
   a. do b. doing c. does d. did

No.		Answer + Explanation الإجابة والتوضيح
1	d	تم اختيار (am eating) لأن (right now) تدل أن الجملة فى زمن المضارع المستمر.
2	b	تم اختيار (are you) لأن الإجابة تبدأ بـ (I am) والتى تتحول فى السؤال إلى (are you).
3	d	تم اختيار (Are) لأن الفاعل (you) والفعل بعدها مضاف له (ing) فى زمن المضارع المستمر.
4	b	تم اختيار (doing) لأن السؤال فى زمن المضارع المستمر حيث يأتى بعد الفعل (be) فعل مضاف له (ing).

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. WB What .... you doing ? *(Multidisciplinary - Menia 2021) (Belbis- Sharkia 202...)*
   a. is b. are c. do d. was
2. SB Are you watching TV, Ahmed ? - Yes, ...
   a. he is b. we are c. I am d. she is
3. SB Is he .... an email ?
   a. write b. writes c. writing d. to write

4. WB She isn't .... at the hospital today. *(Shibin El Kom-Menoufia 2022)*
   a. work b. working c. works d. worked
5. Who is .... ? -Yasser. *(Dikirnis-Dakahlia 2022)*
   a. call b. called c. calling d. to call

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. .... Ali doing his homework ?
   a. Are b. Is c. Does d. Do
7. .... Hany and his brother walking to school ?
   a. Are b. Is c. Do d. isn't
8. Mera .... studying English now.
   a. doesn't b. don't c. aren't d. isn't
9. Is Maged .... the same as his twin Magdy ?
   a. wear b. to wear c. wears d. wearing
10. What are your mum and Alia .... at the moment ?
   a. do b. does c. did d. doing

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. SB **Are** Ali's mother cooking lunch ? (.........)
2. Ahmed can't talk to you now because he **does** his homework. *(Al-Amria-Alex 2020)* (.........)
3. What are Omar and Ali **do** now ? (.........)
4. She **wearing** a beautiful dress. *(Girga-Sohag 2022)* (.........)

El Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. A : Who **do** calling Ali on the phone ? B : Tarek (.........)
6. She is still **use** her old mobile phone. (.........)
7. Mona's father **are** reading a book. (.........)

General Exercises  LESSONS 3 & 4

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Ashraf is telling Ayman about his favourite place.

Ayman : What's your favourite place ?
Ashraf : It is the (1) ________ near my house.
Ayman : What can you (2) ________ in this park ?
Ashraf : I can see (3) ________ of birds.
Ayman : What (4) ________ would you like to see one day ?
Ashraf : An eagle.
Ayman : What else do you do there ?
Ashraf : I (5) ________ my kite.
Ayman : Do you enjoy your time ?
Ashraf : Yes, of course.

2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Rokaya loves nature. She likes walking and watching the trees, animals, flowers and insects all around her. She doesn't like staying at home, but she loves being in the garden. Her favourite place is the park near her house. She can see lots of different kinds of birds <u>**there**</u>. She has got a mobile phone. She takes lots of photos of flowers and birds, but she doesn't send text messages or make video calls. She <u>**doesn't like**</u> playing video games. Rokaya loves writing articles about nature.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.
....
2. What does Rokaya use her mobile phone for ?
....
3. How do you know that Rokaya loves nature ?
....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. Rokaya doesn't make .... calls.
   a. audio b. video c. earphone d. message
5. The underlined word **"there"** refers to the ....
   a. birds b. home c. school d. park
6. The underlined verb **"doesn't like"** means ....
   a. enjoys b. hates c. loves d. prefers

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. What .... can you give to your friends ?
   a. advice b. nature c. lunchtime d. mistake
2. Animal World is my favourite .... on TV.
   a. sport b. subject c. language d. show
3. I .... chess online at the moment.
   a. plays b. playing c. am playing d. to play
4. .... are good hunters. They are very fast.
   a. Parrots b. Pigeons c. Ostriches d. Eagles
5. I'd like to .... all day playing video games.
   a. send b. spend c. put d. see
6. **A :** What do you .... of this book ? - **B :** It's wonderful.
   a. sink b. think c. give d. bring
7. Are you .... a selfie with your mobile now ?
   a. to take b. take c. taking d. took
8. I used to .... notes when I read a book.
   a. has b. do c. take d. put
9. Ants are a kind of ....
   a. plants b. insects c. birds d. whales
10. Sara .... putting her hand up at the moment to answer the question.
   a. is b. has c. are d. am

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Listen! She is <u>play</u> the piano. (........)
2. Are you <u>listen</u> to music ? (........)
3. <u>Does</u> she flying the kite ? (........)
4. They are <u>make</u> a video call. (........)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Which do you like more, nature or technology ?"

....
....
....

LESSONS 5 & 6



SB pages 41 & 42 WB pages 99 & 100

1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

drink (n), (v)	مشروب - يشرب	poster (n)	ملصق
world (n)	العالم	boil (ed) (v)	يغلي
font (n)	خط	drop (ped) (v)	يسقط
colourful (adj)	ملون	kettle (n)	غلاية (كهربائية)
popular (adj)	شائع / مشهور	SEND icon (n)	أيقونة الإرسال
instructions (n)	تعليمات	subheading (n)	عنوان فرعي
subheading (n)	عنوان فرعي	password (n)	كلمة السر

تنويه
- **Key Vocabulary** هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- قاموس المعاصر اللغوى لاتقان المفردات اللغوية.



- **Dictation** استعد للاختبار الاملاء ملحق **Master your term**.



Pop Quiz تدريب يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Step 1 Read key Vocabulary الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ المفردات اللغوية المحورية.

Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary الخطوة الثانية : تدرب على المفردات اللغوية

* يقوم الطالب بأداء تدريب تلقائى على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها.

⊙ **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

boil - world - password - popular

1. Keep your .... secret.
2. There are 7 continents in the ....
3. When you .... water, it turns into vapour.

Lesson 5 SB page 41 WB page 99

sugar (n)	سكر	message icon (n)	أيقونة الرسائل
imperative (n)	صيغة الأمر	without (prep)	بدون

Lesson 6 SB page 42 WB page 100

secret (adj) (n)	سري / سر	tea bag (n)	كيس شاي
personal (adj)	شخصي	worried (adj)	قلق

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
send	يرسل	sent	sent
keep	يحتفظ	kept	kept

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

boil	if you boil water, it is very hot and bubbles	يغلي
kettle	a machine in the kitchen that makes water hot	غلاية (كهربية)
turn on	start a machine	يشغل (جهاز) أو آلة
secret	something that only you or a few people know	سر
technology	computers and mobile phones are examples of this	تكنولوجيا
password	• a special word or letters that you write before you can use a computer or website • A word or numbers you use to go onto a website	كلمة سر

General Notes on Reading and Listening

▸ **safe / save**

* **safe (adj)** آمن

ex.:- SB To stay **safe** online, keep your password secret.

* **save (d) (v)** ينقذ - يوفر / يدخر

ex.:- The man **saved** the child from drowning (الغرق).
- He **saves** a lot of money to buy a bike. *Reading on lesson 6 SB page 42*

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

put in the correct order	ضع في الترتيب الصحيح	give instructions	يعطي تعليمات
make a cup of tea	يُعد كوب من الشاي	tap the send icon	ينقر على أيقونة الإرسال
think about	يفكر في (موضوع)	say hello!	يقول مرحبًا !
the rest of	الباقي من	agree with	يتفق مع
stay safe	يبقى آمنًا	make friends with	يكوّن صداقات مع
keep ... password secret	يحافظ على سرية كلمة السر	go onto a website	يدخل على موقع الكتروني
		go online	يتصل بالإنترنت
look interesting	يبدو رائع / شيق	worried about	قلق بشأن
ask for help	يطلب مساعدة	easy to read	سهل القراءة
answer a phone call from	يرد على مكالمة تليفونية من	take out	يخرج
		make a poster	يصمم ملصقًا

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz | تدرب على ٣٧ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع



Reading

• on Lesson 5 SB page 41

1. How to send a text message[1] :

First, tap[2] the messages icon. Tap the name of the person[3]. Write your text message. Then tap the SEND icon[4]

a. 4



b. 2



c. 1



d. 3



Check Vocabulary

(1) رسالة نصية | (2) ينقر | (3) شخص | (4) أيقونة إرسال



2. How to make a video call :

• Turn your tablet on[5].
• Tap the name of the person.
• Say Hello!

3. How to make a cup of tea :

• First, put some water in a kettle[6]. Boil[7] the water. Put the hot water in a cup with a tea bag. Take out the tea bag. Then, drink the tea.



Check Vocabulary

(5) يشغل جهاز | (6) غلاية كهربية | (7) يغلي

• on Lesson 6 SB page 42

Stay safe when you use technology

• Keep your password[1] secret[2].
• Don't make friends with people you don't know online[3].
• Don't tell people your personal information[4] (e.g. telephone number).
• Don't send photos to people you don't know.
• Ask for help from a parent[5] or teacher.
• Don't answer a phone call or video call[6] from someone you don't know.
• Tell a parent or teacher if you are worried about[7] something.

Do (✓)	Don't (✗)
• Keep your password secret.	• Don't make friends with people you don't know online.

Check Vocabulary

(1) كلمة السر
(2) سر
(3) متصل بالإنترنت
(4) معلومات شخصية
(5) أحد الوالدين
(6) مكالمة فيديو
(7) قلق بشأن

Answer the following questions :

- Giving the main idea إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

Learn 1. What's the main idea of the passage ?
- How to stay safe when you use technology.

- Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص

Practise 2. The opposite of the word "safe" is ....
a. false b. unsafe
c. different d. personal

→ on Lesson 5 WB page 99

Mum : Come here, please Ali.
Ali : Yes, Mum. What is it ?
Mum : Stop playing on your phone and listen to me. I need you to do something.
Ali : Yes, OK. What do you want me to do ?
Mum : Please go to the shop, buy some sugar, take it to your grandmother's house, help her make a cake and then send me a text message when you want to come home.



Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. Good students shouldn't ...... litter in the school playground.
   a. stir b. drop c. let d. answer
2. Football is the most ...... sport in Egypt.
   a. popular b. strange c. colourful d. slow
3. I used the electric ...... to make a cup of tea.
   a. cattle b. kettle c. battle d. beetle
4. It's important to keep your ...... secret on the internet.
   a. passport b. dress c. password d. school
5. You should follow your teacher's ...... inside the classroom.
   a. rooms b. instructions c. shops d. meals

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

6. (SB) Don't ...... a phone call or video call from someone you don't know. (Harghada Red Sea 2022)
   a. take b. answer c. ask d. write
7. (SB) Tell your parents or a teacher if you are worried ...... something on the internet.
   a. in b. of c. about d. to

8. (SB) Don't tell people you don't know your telephone number or your ...... information.
   a. personal b. sunny c. worried d. colourful
9. (SB) ...... safe online is very important.
   a. Staying b. Doing c. Making d. Saying

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

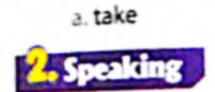
10. Our teacher ...... us instructions on how to use the tablet.
    a. gave b. played c. asked d. followed
11. You shouldn't ...... friends with bad people.
    a. do b. make c. deal d. give

Definitions

12. To ...... means to start a machine.
    a. turn up b. turn off c. turn down d. turn on
13. A/An ...... is something that only you or a few people know.
    a. icon b. secret c. font d. poster

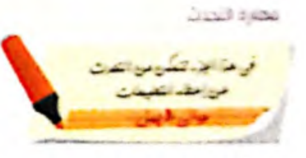
Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. If you have a problem, you can ...... your parents or teachers for help.
    a. ask b. answer c. boil d. read
15. It's dangerous to ...... photos to people you don't know.
    a. search b. make c. send d. draw
16. How can you ...... your poster easy to read ?
    a. take b. make c. break d. give



محارة التحدث

› **Giving instructions** إعطاء التعليمات



يمكن استخدام (imperative) صيغة الأمر المثبت أو المنفي لإعطاء التعليمات.

1. Keep your password secret.
2. Don't make friends with people you don't know online.
3. Study your lessons.
4. Don't make noise.

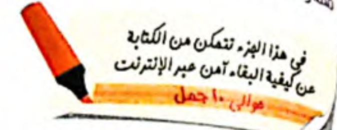
(٢) كيفية إعطاء تعليمات بخطوات عمل كوب من الشاي :

1. Put some water in a kettle.	ضع بعضًا من الماء فى الغلاية.
2. Boil the water well.	اغلى الماء جيدًا.
3. Add some sugar and tea.	أضف بعضًا من السكر والشاى.
4. Stir the cup well.	قلب الكوب جيدًا.

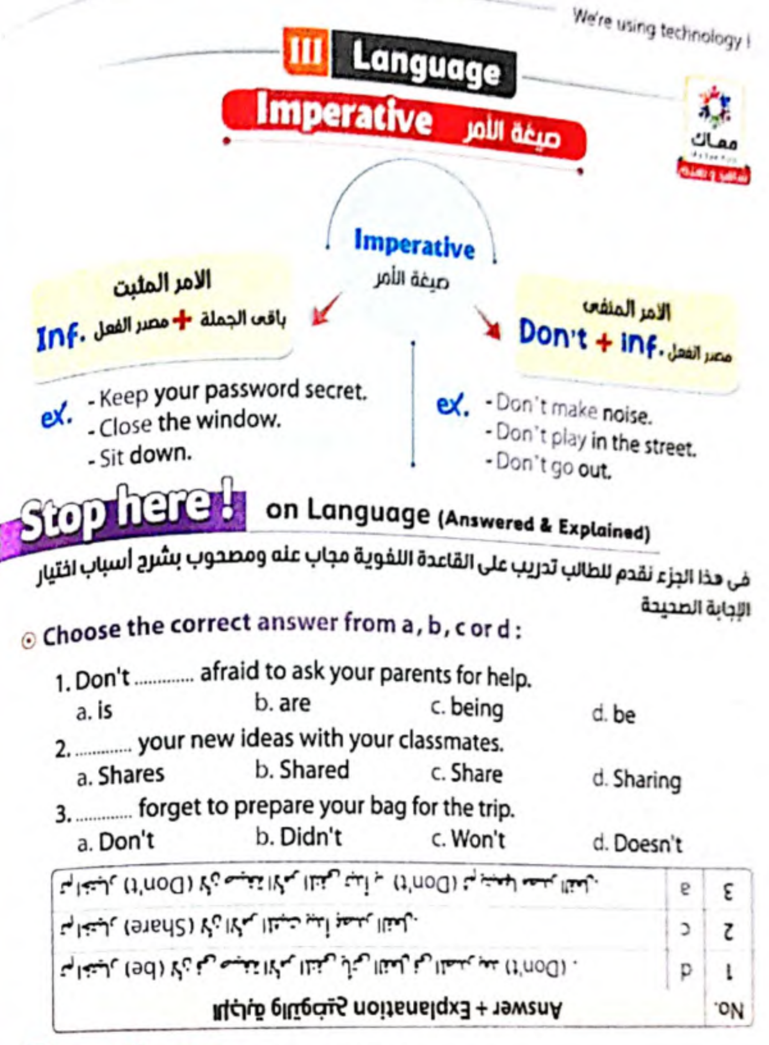


مهارة الكتابة

How you stay safe online
كيف تبقى آمنا عبر الأنترنت



1. Technology became very important in our daily life.
أصبحت التكنولوجيا مهمة جدًا فى حياتنا اليومية.
2. We all need technology.
نحتاج جميعًا إلى التكنولوجيا.
3. We need to stay safe when we use technology.
نحتاج إلى أن نبقى بأمان عندما نستخدم التكنولوجيا.
4. You should keep your password secret.
يجب أن تحافظ على سرية كلمة المرور الخاصة بك.
5. You shouldn't make friends with people you don't know online.
لا يجب أن تكون صداقات عبر الإنترنت مع أشخاص لا تعرفهم.
6. You shouldn't tell people you don't know your personal information.
لا يجب أن تخبر الأشخاص الذين لا تعرفهم عن معلوماتك الشخصية.
7. You shouldn't send photos to people you don't know.
لا ينبغى إرسال صور للأشخاص الذين لا تعرفهم.
8. You shouldn't answer a phone calls or video calls from anyone you don't know.
لا تقوم بالرد على المكالمات الهاتفية أو الفيديو من أى شخص لا تعرفه.
9. Tell a parent or teacher if you feel worried about something.
أخبر أحد والديك أو المعلم إذا شعرت بالقلق حيال أمر ما.
10. Use strong password.
استخدم كلمة مرور قوية.



III Language

Imperative صيغة الأمر

ex. - Keep your password secret.
- Close the window.
- Sit down.

ex. - Don't make noise.
- Don't play in the street.
- Don't go out.

Stop here ! on Language (Answered & Explained)

فى هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عليه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Don't .... afraid to ask your parents for help.
a. is b. are c. being d. be
2. .... your new ideas with your classmates.
a. Shares b. Shared c. Share d. Sharing
3. .... forget to prepare your bag for the trip.
a. Don't b. Didn't c. Won't d. Doesn't

No.		Answer + Explanation الإجابة والتفسير
1	d	[illegible]
2	c	[illegible]
3	a	[illegible]

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

➲ SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. .... make noise in the library. (Bulrushan Giza 2022)
a. Didn't b. Aren't c. Haven't d. Don't

2. [SB] .... for help from a parent or a teacher. (Baltim-Kafr El Sheikh 2020)
a. Asking b. Asked c. Ask d. Asks

3. [SB] Don't .... photos to people you don't know.
a. sent b. sending c. send d. sends

4. [SB] To make a video call, ... on your tablet. (Multidisciplinary - Beheira 2021)
a. tap b. taps c. tapping d. tapped

5. [SB] .... make friends with people you don't know online.
a. Didn't b. Do c. Doesn't d. Don't

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. .... quiet when your father is asleep.
a. Keep b. To keep c. Keeping d. Kept

7. Don't .... the road here. It's dangerous.
a. crosses b. crossing c. cross d. to cross

8. .... your laptop to make a poster.
a. Used b. Use c. Using d. Uses

9. Don't .... food that is unhealthy.
a. eats b. eat c. eating d. ate

10. Don't go out now. .... here.
a. Waiting b. Wait c. Waits d. Waited

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. [WB] Doesn't tell people your personal information. (Nasser-Beni Suef 2020) (........)
2. [SB] Keeps your password secret. (East Tanta - Gharbia 2020) (........)
3. Didn't waste your time playing games. (Rafah - North Sinai 2020) (........)
4. First, putting some water in a kettle. (Ain Shams - Cairo 2020) (........)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. Always sleep late to get up early. (........)
6. Don't forgot your school objects. (........)
7. I found a box. Guessed what was in it. (........)

General Exercises On LESSONS 5 & 6

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Ola is asking Mona about her mobile phone.

Ola : Do you have a mobile phone ?
Mona : Yes, (1) ....
Ola : (2) .... do you charge your mobile ?
Mona : With a (3) ....
Ola : Do you use your mobile to (4) .... selfies ?
Mona : Yes, I always take selfies with my friends.
Ola : Nice. How can you send a text message ?
Mona : I (5) .... on this icon to send messages.
Ola : It seems easy.
Mona : Yes, of course.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The brave man .... the boy from the fire. (Rafah - North Sinai 2022)
a. sent b. saved c. sailed d. said

2. .... on a machine means to start it.
a. Feel b. Turn c. Give d. Fall

3. Famous or known means "........".
a. lazy b. coward c. popular d. dry

4. To make tea, first .... water well.
a. taste b. boil c. give d. dry

5. [WB] First, ... some water in the kettle.
a. putting b. put c. puts d. is putting

6. The heading isn't clear, use a bigger ....
a. feather b. fire c. font d. file

7. [SB] It is important to stay .... online.
a. safe b. save c. weak d. hot

8. [SB] To send a text message, first tap the .... icon.
a. videos b. online c. websites d. messages

9. [SB] .... tell people online your telephone number.
a. Didn't b. Doesn't c. Don't d. Does

10. A password is a word or numbers you .... to go onto a website.
a. uses b. using c. use d. used

3 Read the following, then answer the following :

I love technology. It's very useful for me. Technology helps us to do our work. We use **it** every day. We can send messages, do search and play games. But to stay safe online, you have to follow some important instructions. First, keep your password secret. You shouldn't tell people your personal information (e.g. telephone number). Don't make friends with people you don't know online. Don't send photos to people you don't know. Don't answer a phone call or video call from someone you don't know. If you are worried about something, tell a **parent** or a teacher.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What should you do when you are in trouble ?
....
2. What is the main idea of the passage ?
....
3. Why do you think you have to follow these rules when you are online ?
....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. You should keep your .... secret.
   a. text   b. email   c. postcard   d. password
5. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ....
   a. telephone   b. information   c. call   d. technology
6. The underlined word "**parent**" means ....
   a. mum or dad   b. uncle   c. teacher   d. mum's sister

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Didn't be rude with new students. (..........)
2. Helping your parents with housework. (..........)
3. SB Turns your tablet on. (..........)
4. Don't wastes your time. (..........)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) on : إجابة في نهاية الكتاب

"Your favourite place"

....
....
....

Review on unit 4

SB page 43   WB page 101

Speaking

1. Giving instructions :
إعطاء التعليمات :

- تستخدم صيغة الأمر «imperative» لإعطاء التعليمات.

١. صيغة الأمر المثبت : المصدر Inf.
- **Keep** your password secret.

٢. صيغة الأمر المنفى : Don't + Inf. المصدر
- **Don't** make noise.

2. A description of technology in a classroom :
وصف التكنولوجيا الموجودة فى حجرة الدراسة:

- What's in your classroom ?
- ما الموجود داخل فصلك الدراسى ؟
- There are some laptops and a whiteboard.
- يوجد بعض أجهزة الكمبيوتر المحمولة وسبورة بيضاء.
- There aren't any tablets.
- لا يوجد أى أجهزة لوحية.

Language

1. There is / There are

There is + اسم مفرد / (اسم غير معدود).	يوجد
There are + اسم جمع.	يوجد

- There is a book on the table.
- There isn't any sugar.
- There are some pens.
- There aren't any books.

2. The present continuous tense
زمن المضارع المستمر

I / He / She / It اسم مفرد / We / You / They اسم جمع + am / is / are + Inf. المصدر + ing

- I'm playing football now.
- She isn't sitting next to her friend.
- Is Hala making a video call ?
- Yes, she is.   - No, she isn't.

Vocabulary

laptop	كمبيوتر محمول
mobile phone	تليفون محمول
mouse	فأرة
MP3 player	مشغل ملفات صوتية
phone charger	شاحن تليفون
printer	طابعة
tablet	كمبيوتر لوحى
icon	أيقونة
website	موقع على الإنترنت
text message	رسالة نصية
selfie	صورة بالكاميرا الأمامية (سيلفى)
information	معلومات
video call	مكالمة فيديو
tap	ينقر (بطرف الإصبع)
online	على الإنترنت

Skills

1 Speaking مهارة التحدث

تعتمد مهارة التحدث مع الاخرين بشكل أساسي على تكوين أسئلة ومعرفة كيفية الرد عليها.

Question السؤال	Answer الإجابة	Usage الاستخدام
What is in your classroom?	*There are two laptop computers in our classroom.*	وصف التكنولوجيا فى حجرة الدراسة
Do you use tablets at school?	*Yes, we often use them.*	
What are you doing now?	*I'm using my mobile phone.*	
Why are you using your mobile phone?	*To send an email.*	
Can you take a selfie?	*Yes. I'll send you one of my photos.*	
Is Hala making a video call?	*Yes, she is.*	السؤال عما يفعله شخص الآن
Is he waving?	*No, he isn't.*	
Are you sitting next to your best friend?	*No, I am not.*	
Are you wearing a school uniform?	*Yes, I am.*	
Are you using a dictionary?	*Yes, I am.*	

2 Writing Skill مهارة الكتابة

عناصر تساعدك على تنظيم أفكارك للتعامل مع مهارة الكتابة متبوعة بلموذج.

We are using technology

Classroom	Items
My classroom is .... There is a / an .... There are .... We use .... to	mp3 / printer / laptop /

Technology	Nature
I love technology. I play .... I play on .... I look at websites to	I love nature / trees / fresh air / flowers

Likes	Dislikes
I like nature because .... I like technology because	I do not like technology because ....

Sample

I am Hadeer and I am 13 years old. I like my school. We have a big classroom. There is a whiteboard. There are a lot of examples of technology. There is a 3D printer. We use it to print our homework. There are tablets which we use in our classroom. There is a laptop and it has a mouse. I have a mobile phone but I do not use it at the classroom. Technology makes our life easy. I sometimes play video games. I look at websites to get information, but I love nature more. I like being in the garden. I like walking and watching trees, animals and flowers. I use my mobile to take photos of nature and share it with my friends.

UNIT 4

"Your classroom"

I'm Mona and I'm 13 years . I'm in prep 1 . I like my school . We have a big classroom . There are enough desks for us . There is a whiteboard . There are two laptops . There isn't an Mp3 player . There is a printer . It is on the table . We have got a printer . We use it to print our homework .

This is my classroom . It is a nice place to learn . There are tablets in the classroom . We often use them at school . There is one laptop . It has a mouse . I have a mobile phone but I don't use it at the classroom . There aren't any printers in my classroom .

"Nature or technology"

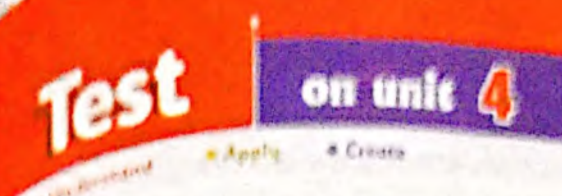
I love nature . I like being in the garden . I don't like being in a building . I like walking and watching the trees, animals, flowers . I like looking at the sky . It is very beautiful . At school, I always go outside at break . Sometimes I don't go outside when it is too hot or cold . I use my mobile to take photos of nature . I enjoy my time when I am at a park or garden .

I love technology very much . My favourite hobby is playing video games . It is an exciting hobby . I spend most of time playing them[34] .

I play them on my mobile phone . At break time at school, I stay in the classroom and I look at websites for new games[36] .

How to stay safe online

Using the internet is very useful . We can use it to do many things . It sometimes has some problems . It is important to stay safe online . There are many tips we should follow to be safe[41] . keep your password secret . Don't make friends with people you don't know[43] . Never tell your personal information to others . Don't send your photos to people you don't know . If you have a problem online, you should tell a parent or teacher . Tell a parent or teacher if you are worried about something .



• Understand • Apply • Create

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Soha loves ....
   a. video games b. break c. nature d. phone
2. She likes .... the trees and animals.
   a. looking b. watching c. walking d. being
3. She .... being in the garden.
   a. likes b. plays c. doesn't like d. works
4. She likes looking at the ....
   a. garden b. house c. sky d. zoo

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Eyad is asking Emad about technology in his classroom.

Eyad : What is in your classroom ?
Emad : There (1) .... two laptops in our classroom.
Eyad : Do you use tablets in your classroom ?
Emad : Yes, we often (2) .... them.
Eyad : What are you (3) .... now ?
Emad : I'm (4) .... for information on the internet.
Eyad : About what ?
Emad : About 3D printers.
Eyad : Can you use (5) .... in your classroom ?
Emad : No, mobiles are not allowed in class.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

My family members love technology. My brother Youssef is playing chess online. He is winning at the moment. I am doing my computer

studies homework. I'm looking at websites for information about 3D printers. My mum and sister, Sama are taking selfies. **They**'re sending one of their photos to my grandmother on her mobile phone. My dad is **sending** an email to my uncle in the USA. My uncle lives in New York. He is an electrical engineer in a company. He has got two daughters and a son called Tamer. Tamer is a student in the Faculty of Medicine.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What does the passage talk about ?

2. Is Youssef a winner or a loser ?

3. Do you think the internet is useful for the writer ? Why ?

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The opposite of the underlined word "**sending**" is ....
   a. going b. receiving c. making d. doing
5. My uncle lives in the ....
   a. UAE b. ARE c. USA d. KSA
6. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to ....
   a. Youssef and Sama b. Sama and her mum
   c. Tamer and Youssef d. Tamer and Sama

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... to the front, please Dina.
   a. Coming b. Comes c. Came d. Come
2. He is good at .... friends with others easily.
   a. making b. giving c. doing d. having
3. I knew that he is in the same school from his school ....
   a. objects b. rules c. uniform d. gate
4. At the moment, Ali .... to music.
   a. listen b. is listening c. listening d. listens

5. .... for help if you are in trouble.
   a. Do b. Ask c. Take d. Make
6. Are you .... a dictionary ?–Yes, of course.
   a. doing b. using c. sitting d. running
7. How can you .... your poster easy to read ?
   a. take b. make c. break d. give
8. When you meet someone, ... "Hello!".
   a. give b. click c. say d. tap
9. Write .... for how to make a cup of tea.
   a. information b. messages c. icons d. instructions
10. .... there any money with you ?
   a. Are b. Is c. Aren't d. Am

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Who **do** Adam sending a message to ? (........)
2. There **is** some books over there. (........)
3. **Doesn't** eat fast food; it is unhealthy. (........)
4. She is **watches** a nice programme now. (........)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"How to keep safe online"

Stop here !

1. Mini-Test on unit 4 for Al-Azhar students اختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues :

A. Ayman : Is there a laptop in your classroom ?
Ashraf : ....

B. Abdo : .... ?
Helmy : I am reading an adventure story.

2 Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences on :

"Using technology at school"

....

....

....

2. Use your brain, think smart طبق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Which sentence is correct ?
   a. Hala printing her homework now. b. Hala is print her homework now.
   c. Hala is printed her homework now. d. Hala is printing her homework now.
2. "Hieroglyphics" .... the oldest writing in the world.
   a. is b. are c. has d. have
3. .... there any milk bottles in the fridge ?
   a. Are b. Is c. Does d. Do
4. Hoda is bad at doing .... She doesn't like riddles.
   a. pudding b. puzzles c. buzzing d. winning
5. "Sit" is to "stand" is as "give" to "...........".
   a. walk b. bring c. receive d. send

Quiz on units 1,2,3&4

أختبار تراكمى على الوحدات (١، ٢، ٣ و ٤)

- يقوم المعلم باختيار اختبار مصغر (واحد) من (B) or (A) لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمعلومات الواردة فى الوحدات

Model A



* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A .... is a photo you take of yourself.
   a. call b. board c. printer d. selfie
2. She .... at the moment.
   a. works b. worked c. is working d. work
3. How .... does he play football ? - Always.
   a. many b. often c. long d. much
4. You shouldn't tell people about your ....
   a. books b. houses c. subjects d. secrets
5. She's wearing a red .... around her neck.
   a. sock b. ring c. scarf d. jacket

Model B

Marks

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. He .... score a lot of goals. He is very smart.
   a. can b. mustn't c. has d. able to
2. Physics .... a difficult subject.
   a. has b. is c. were d. are
3. A baby bird is very .... It can't fly for a long time.
   a. strong b. ugly c. fast d. weak
4. The school .... should be followed in all schools.
   a. roles b. rulers c. rules d. rows
5. A/An .... is the top room in a house.
   a. office b. attic c. shop d. kitchen

UNIT 5

Holidays

SB pages 44 : 53 WB pages 102:108

Objectives

- **Reading :**
  A description of a holiday; an advertisement for learning English
- **Writing :**
  An advertisement for a holiday; an email about a holiday
- **Listening :**
  A conversation about a holiday; a discussion about a day out
- **Speaking :**
  Describing a place; talking about a holiday; responding to news
- **Language :**
  The past simple
- **Values :**
  Respect
- **Issues :**
  Environmental awareness

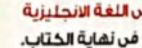
مسابقة

المعاصر في اللغة الانجليزية في نهاية الكتاب.

لإتقان الوحدة

- للمتابعة اليومية والشهرية ملحق Master your term.
- تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر ملحق الأزهر الشريف.
- للمهارات اللغوية ملحق Master your term.
- قاموس المعاصر اللغوى.
- Dictation لاختبار الإملاء في ملحق Master your term.





أسئلة كل وحدة تشمل

- العلامة تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب.
- العلامة تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات.

LESSONS **1 & 2**

SB pages 44 : 47 WB pages 102 & 103

1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

jungle (n)	أدغال / غابة كثيفة	beach (n)	شاطئ
desert (n)	صحراء	sand (n)	رمل
activity (n)	نشاط	river (n)	نهر
tent (n)	خيمة	rock (n)	صخرة
cave (n)	كهف	sandcastle (n)	قلعة من الرمال
forest (n)	غابة	waterfall (n)	شلال

تنويه
- Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- قاموس المعاصر اللغوى لاتقان المفردات اللغوية.
- استعد لاختبار الاملاء Dictation ملحق Master your term.



Pop Quiz تدريب يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Step 1 Read key Vocabulary — الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ المفردات اللغوية المدورة.

Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary — الخطوة الثانية : تدرب على المفردات اللغوية

• يقوم الطالب بأداء تدريب تلقائى على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها.

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

sandcastles - desert - cave - activity - waterfalls

1. You can find a lot of camels in the ....
2. A large hole inside a mountain is called a ....
3. Collecting stamps is my favourite .... on weekends.
4. Children like to build .... on the beach.

Lesson 1 SB pages 44 & 45 WB page 102

number (ed) (v), (n)	يرقم - رقم	lake (n)	بحيرة
map (n)	خريطة	turn (ed) (v), (n)	يدور - دور

Lesson 2 SB pages 46 & 47 WB page 103

frightened (adj)	خائف / مرعوب	picnic (n)	نزهة خلوية
weather (n)	طقس	fantastic (adj)	رائع
hotel (n)	فندق	warm (adj)	دافئ

Famous places أماكن مشهورة

Sahara Desert	صحراء صحارى (الصحراء الكبرى)	Al Azhar Park	حديقة الأزهر
Djara cave	كهف الجارة	Marrakesh (n)	مراكش (مدينة فى دولة المغرب)
Siwa	واحة سيوة		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
ride يركب	rode	ridden

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
regular	منتظم	irregular	غير منتظم
near	قريب	far	بعيد
go into	يدخل	go out	يخرج
delicious	لذيذ	terrible	مفزع

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات فى نهاية التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

beach	the area of sand or small stones in front of the sea	شاطئ
bike	a bicycle	دراجة
camel	a desert animal of Africa and Asia with a long neck	جمل
delicious	tasting very nice	لذيذ

desert	a very dry place where it does not often rain	صحراء
forest	a large area with lots of trees close together	غابة
game	an activity or competition that you play with one or more people	لعبة
lake	a large natural area of water, with land all around	بحيرة
mountain	a high area of land, higher than the land around it	جبل
jungle	a tropical forest with lots of plants and trees	أدغال
waterfall	the part of a river where the water falls down from a high place	شلال
cave	an opening in a large rock or mountain	كهف
picnic	a lunch that you prepare yourself to take on a trip and eat outside	نزهة (خلوية)
river	water that flows naturally from the mountains to the sea	نهر
sand	very small pieces of rock that you find next to a river or the sea	رمال
sandcastle	a building made of sand	قلعة من الرمال
sea	the salt water that covers a large part of the Earth	بحر
tent	something that you can sleep in when you go camping	خيمة

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 beach - coast

- beach — شاطىء / بلاج (يصلح للمصيف والسباحة وقضاء أوقات ممتعة)
  ex.: - Hurghada has beautiful beaches. *Listening on lesson 1 SB page 45*
- coast — ساحل بجوار البحر (قد يكون غير مؤهل للسباحة)
  ex.: - Alexandria lies on the north coast of Egypt.

2 journey - trip - picnic

- journey — رحلة طويلة
  ex.: - The journey from Cairo to Aswan takes a long time.
- trip — رحلة قصيرة
  ex.: - I went on a trip to Alexandria for two days.
- picnic — نزهة خلوية فى الهواء الطلق
  ex.: - I had a picnic in Al-Azhar Park. *Reading on lesson 2 SB page 46*

3 'd like to + inf. = would like to + inf. — يريد أن
ex.: - I'd like to go to the beach.
- Where would you like to go ?

SB page 45

4 desert / dessert

- desert — صحراء
  ex.: - There are a lot of camels in the desert. *Listening on lesson 1 SB page 45*
- dessert — الحلو (بعد الوجبات)
  ex.: - I like having ice cream for the dessert.

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

swim in a lake	يسبح فى بحيرة	sleep in a tent	ينام فى خيمة
ride on a camel	يركب على جمل	make a sandcastle	يبنى قلعة من الرمال
go into a cave	يدخل كهف	climb a mountain	يتسلق جبل
have a picnic	يقوم بنزهة فى الهواء الطلق	frightened of	خائف من

II Skills



تدرب على ٣٧ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع — Pop Quiz



on Lesson 1 SB page 45



Taha : Guess[1] where I am, Sara. I'm in a place where there are a lot of trees.
Sara : Are there monkeys in the trees ?
Taha : No. It's very dark[2] and quiet.
Sara : Are you in a forest[3] ?
Taha : Yes, I am!
Sara : My turn! I'm in a place with a lot of sand[4].

Check Vocabulary

(1) يخمن / يتوقع | (2) مظلم | (3) غابة | (4) رمال

Taha : I know! You're in the desert[5].
Sara : No, I'm not. There isn't any water in the desert. There's a lot of water in my place.
Taha : You're on the beach[6]!
Sara : That's right[7]!
Taha : Now, I'm in a dark place. When I speak, I can hear my words again and again. Listen. (calls out with echo صدى الصوت) Hello! (echo comes twice).
Sara : That's easy. You're in a cave! Can you see any bats[8]?
Taha : No, I can't. It's very dark in here!

(5) صحراء
(6) شاطئ
(7) هذا صحيح
(8) خفافيش

Listening skill

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Sara is on the ....

a. forest b. cave c. boat d. beach



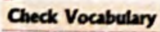
on Lesson 2 SB page 46

My holiday photos





1. Last summer[1], when the weather[2] was hot, we went to the beach near my home in Hurghada. Mariam made this sandcastle[3]. There was a cave[4] in the rocks. But Mariam didn't want to go into the cave because she was frightened[5]!



(1) فصل الصيف (2) الطقس (3) قلعة من الرمال (4) كهف (5) خائف

2. In October, we visited my uncle, aunt and cousins in Cairo. We had a picnic in Al Azhar Park. We ate delicious[6] food. Then we played games and Ali rode his bike.
3. When I was eight, we went to Siwa. We swam in the lake[7], and climbed the mountain[8]. We saw camels and slept in a tent in the desert. It was my favourite holiday[9]!

(6) لذيذ
(7) بحيرة
(8) جبل
(9) إجازة مفضلة

Answer the following questions :

- Extracting information استخراج المعلومات

Learn 1. What did Ali do?
He rode his bike.

Practise 2. Why didn't Mariam go into the cave?
- ....

on Lesson 2 WB page 103



Hi Eman,

Last summer, my family had a fantastic holiday in Morocco. We visited a big beach and then we slept in a nice hotel. We didn't swim in the sea. It wasn't very warm! But I rode on a camel. That was fun. We visited a city called Marrakesh, too and we went to a museum. We also ate some delicious food.

Write soon.

Hana

Exercise on Vocabulary

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. When the weather was hot, we went to the ....
   a. peach b. leach c. leash d. beach
2. A .... is a tropical forest with lots of plants and trees.
   a. waterfall b. jungle c. cave d. castle
3. A .... is a very dry place where it does not often rain.
   a. dessert b. sea c. river d. desert
4. When the water of the river falls from a high place, it's called ....
   a. waterwheel b. waterfall c. lake d. sea

SB , WB and Previous Exams أسئلة من كتابي الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

5. My family and I went to the beach and I .... a sandcastle.
   a. made b. had c. climbed d. camped
6. .... are very strong animals as they can carry 200 kilos of bags.
   a. Camels b. Giraffes c. Birds d. Crocodiles
7. "........" are large areas with a lot of trees and bushes.
   a. Deserts b. Rivers c. Waterfalls d. Forests
8. Sayed swam in the .... at Siwa.
   a. river b. lake c. mountain d. cave

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. The .... Nile is the longest one in the world.
   a. River b. Lake c. Beach d. Sea
10. Egypt is the most important .... in Africa.
    a. city b. country c. town d. continent
11. In a cave, we can see ....
    a. bats b. seats c. sweets d. mountains

Definitions

12. A .... is a large natural area of water, with land all around.
    a. island b. lake c. pond d. forest
    (Port Fuad, Port Said 2021)

13. .... is very small pieces of rock that you find next to a river or the sea.
    a. Sand b. Snow c. Water d. Dust

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. The train .... from Luxor to Cairo was tiring.
    a. journey b. picnic c. tour d. flight
15. We had a .... in Al-Azhar Park in Cairo.
    a. desert b. tent c. picnic d. bike
16. I always feel frightened .... dangerous animals.
    a. for b. on c. of d. off

2. Speaking

- **Describing a place you would like to go to** وصف مكان تود الذهاب إليه

Speaker A	Speaker B
• Guess where I am. خمن أين أنا أكون	- Okay. I'll try. حسنًا سوف أحاول
• I'm in a place where there are a lot of trees. أنا في مكان حيث يوجد كثير من الأشجار	- Are there any monkeys? هل هناك أي قرود؟
• No, there aren't. لا، لا يوجد	- Are you in a forest? هل أنت في غابة؟
• Yes, I am. نعم أنا هناك	- My turn! دوري!

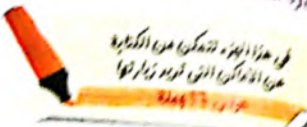
يمكنك القيام بوصف مكان باستخدام الجمل التالية :

1. I'm in a place where there are a lot of trees. أنا في مكان حيث هناك الكثير من الأشجار
2. It is very dark in there. إن المكان مظلم جدًا هناك
3. I'm in a place with a lot of sand. أنا في مكان به الكثير من الرمال
4. There is a lot of water in my place. يوجد الكثير من المياه في مكاني
5. When I speak, I can hear my words again and again. عندما أتحدث أستطيع سماع كلماتي مرة تلو الأخرى
6. It's a very exciting place. إنه مكان مثير جدًا

7. There are many beautiful animals and birds there.
8. You can see interesting shows in that place.
9. You can play many games there.
10. You can have a picnic there.
11. You can have delicious food there.
12. You can camp there.
13. There are a lot of fish.



What places would you like to visit ?
ما الأماكن التي تريد أن تزورها ؟

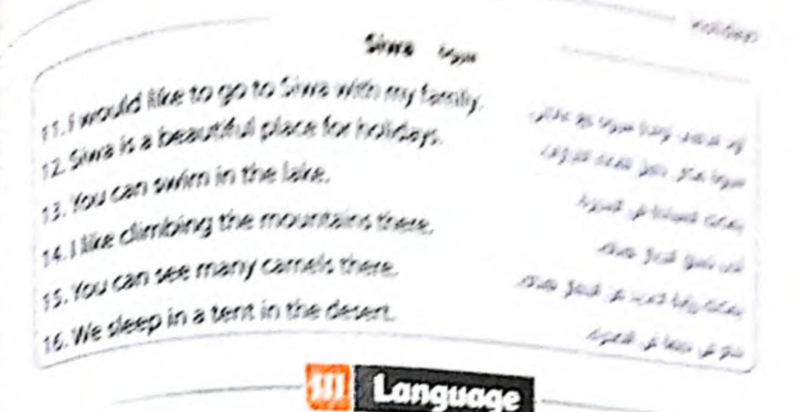


The beach الشاطئ

1. I would like to go to the beach. أود الذهاب إلى الشاطئ.
2. I want to swim in the sea. أود السباحة في البحر.
3. I can build sandcastles on the beach. أستطيع بناء قلاع من الرمال على الشاطئ.
4. I like going diving. أحب ممارسة رياضة الغطس.
5. My brother doesn't like surfing as he is frightened of it. أخي لا يحب رياضة ركوب الأمواج لأنه يخاف من ذلك.

The forest الغابة

6. I would like to go to the forest. أود الذهاب إلى الغابة.
7. There are many trees there. يوجد العديد من الأشجار هناك.
8. You can see a lot of beautiful birds there. يمكنك رؤية الكثير من الطيور الجميلة هناك.
9. You can see a lot of animals, too. يمكنك رؤية الكثير من الحيوانات أيضًا.
10. There is a cave in the forest. يوجد كهف في الغابة.



Siwa سيوة

11. I would like to go to Siwa with my family.
12. Siwa is a beautiful place for holidays.
13. You can swim in the lake.
14. I like climbing the mountains there.
15. You can see many camels there.
16. We sleep in a tent in the desert.

III Language

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

(a) Regular verbs : (أ) الأفعال المنتظمة :

Subject الفاعل + التصريف الثاني للفعل

لاحظ قواعد إضافة d/ed/ied للفعل في زمن الماضي البسيط.

الفعل المنتهي بـ	يضاف له	Example مثال
e (بعض الأفعال)	+ d	invite → invited
y + (حرف ساكن)	+ ied	carry → carried
y + (حرف متحرك)	+ ed	stay → stayed
(حرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك)	يضاعف الحرف الأخير + ed	stop → stopped
بعض الأفعال لا يضاعف الحرف الأخير بها	+ ed	visit → visited

(b) Irregular verbs : (ب) الأفعال غير المنتظمة :

هناك أفعال غير منتظمة لا تتبع هذه القاعدة مثل :

الفعل	الماضي	الفعل	الماضي
cut	cut	put	put
eat	ate	drink	drank
swim	swam	go	went
sleep	slept	ride	rode

لاحظ أن :

يتم استخدام (verb to be) فى زمن الماضي كالآتى :

I / He / She / It → (فاعل مفرد) was / wasn't

We / They / You → (فاعل جمع) were / weren't

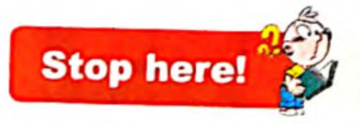
ex. - Mariam was frightened of the cave.
- There were not (weren't) any cars on the beach.

② Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

فى حالة النفى نستخدم الصيغة الآتية :

Subject فاعل **+ didn't + inf.** المصدر

ex. - Rana didn't study her lessons yesterday.
- I didn't send an email to my friend last week.
- She didn't go to the beach.



- اختبار مصغر للأزهر الشريف.
- طبق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

③ Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

(a) Yes/No questions : (أ) السؤال بـ "هل" :

فى حالة الإستفهام باستخدام «هل» :

Did + subject الفاعل **+ inf.** المصدر **.... ?**

ex. - Did you clean the car ?
- Yes, I did. -No, I didn't.

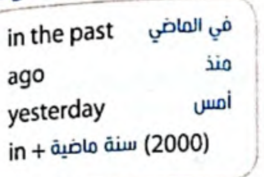
(b) Wh-questions : (ب) السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام :

اما فى حالة الإستفهام باستخدام كلمة استفهام نستخدم الصيغة الآتية :

Question word كلمة الاستفهام **+ did + subject** الفاعل **+ inf.** المصدر **.... ?**

ex. - What did you study ?
- Where did she go ?

Key words كلمات دالة





Usage الاستخدام

يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن فعل حدث وانتهى فى زمن الماضي.

ex.: - Maha helped her mother with her work last night.
- She went to school two hours ago.

Stop here! on Language (Answered & Explained)

فى هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. I .... to the park after school yesterday.
a. go b. went c. going d. to go

2. .... Mike visit his grandma last weekend ?
   a. Does b. Is c. Has d. Did
3. Alice did not .... to the party.
   a. came b. comes c. come d. coming
4. What .... they use the horse for in the past ?
   a. do b. doing c. does d. did

No.		Answer + Explanation الإجابة والتوضيح
1	b	تم اختيار (went) لأن كلمة (yesterday) تدل على زمن الماضي البسيط.
2	d	تم اختيار (Did) لأن كلمة (last) تدل على زمن الماضي البسيط.
3	c	تم اختيار (come) لأن الفعل يأتي في المصدر بعد النفي بـ (didn't).
4	d	تم اختيار (did) لأن (in the past) تدل على زمن الماضي البسيط.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. I .... the new film two days ago.
   a. watches b. watching c. watched d. watch
2. SB When I .... eight, we went to Siwa. *(October – Giza 2022)*
   a. am b. were c. is d. was
3. WB Where .... you go on holiday last year ? *(Multidisciplinary – Beni Suef 2021)*
   a. do b. did c. does d. done
4. Last summer, my family .... a nice holiday in Morocco. *(Ain Shams-Cairo 2020)*
   a. have b. having c. has d. had
5. SB What did you .... for dinner last night ?
   a. eat b. ate c. eats d. eating
6. When I went to school, I .... good at English. *(El Saf-Giza 2020)*
   a. didn't b. don't c. can't d. wasn't
7. SB Sayed and Mariam .... into the cave yesterday.
   a. go b. goes c. going d. went

8. Adam .... a new villa in Alexandria last year. *(El-Salloum - Matrouh 2022)*
   a. buy b. buys c. bought d. to buy
9. .... you have a good weekend last week ? *(Sherbin-Dakahlia 2021)*
   a. Does b. Do c. Did d. Done

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

10. Who did you .... after school last Thursday ?
    a. see b. sees c. saw d. seeing
11. Yesterday, we didn't .... our lessons.
    a. studied b. study c. studying d. studies
12. Salma worked very hard and .... very well in the exam.
    a. do b. does c. doing d. did
13. Last October, we .... my uncle and cousins in Cairo.
    a. visit b. visits c. visited d. visiting
14. Mona .... a beautiful dress yesterday.
    a. wear b. wore c. wears d. wearing
15. Mazen .... play well yesterday.
    a. didn't b. don't c. doesn't d. isn't
16. .... your friends ready for the exam last week ?
    a. Was b. Do c. Were d. Did

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. Where did you <u>spent</u> your holiday ? *(Benha – Qalyoubia 2022)* (........)
2. She didn't <u>found</u> her missing ring. *(Helwan – Cairo 2022)* (........)
3. SB They didn't travel by car. They <u>walk</u>. (........)
4. Yara <u>play</u> tennis a week ago. *(West Cairo 2020)* (........)
5. WB There <u>wasn't</u> any cars on the beach. (........)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. My sister <u>has</u> a baby girl called Sara yesterday. (........)
7. Yesterday, I <u>gives</u> Ibrahim a present. (........)
8. Did you <u>bought</u> a new jacket ? (........)

General Exercises  LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. We had a picnic at .... last week.
   a. the cinema   b. Al Azhar Park   c. the sea   d. the jungle
2. We ate .... food.
   a. delicious   b. terrible   c. warm   d. hot
3. Ali rode on a ....
   a. camel   b. bike   c. bus   d. train
4. We played ....
   a. tennis   b. football   c. games   d. handball

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed is asking Hassan about his holiday.

Ahmed : Where did you go on holiday ?
Hassan : I went to the (1) ....
Ahmed : What (2) .... you do on the beach ?
Hassan : I (3) .... in the sea and made a sandcastle.
Ahmed : When did you (4) .... back ?
Hassan : I came back on Friday.
Ahmed : Did you take any photos ?
Hassan : Yes. I (5) .... many photos.
Ahmed : Can I come with you the next time ?
Hassan : Certainly.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Last summer, when the weather was hot, we went to the beach in Hurghada. Many tourists come to Hurghada as it has a lot of exciting places. It is a beach resort منتجع town. <u>It</u> has many tourist attractions. Its beaches are beautiful and wonderful. Speedboats قوارب سريعة give you the chance to enjoy the <u>sea</u> and to go fishing. The hotels are comfortable. On the beach, my sister, Mariam made a sandcastle, but I played football.

My mum made sandwiches for us. My dad read the newspaper under the umbrella. There was a cave in the rocks. But Mariam didn't want to go into the cave because she was frightened. It was really an unusual adventure in the cave. We enjoyed our stay in Hurghada very much.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.
   ....
2. Why didn't Mariam want to go into the cave ?
   ....
3. What do you think of Hurghada as a tourist city ?
   ....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun "**<u>It</u>**" refers to ....
   a. beach   b. sandcastle   c. Hurghada   d. weather
5. The underlined word "**<u>sea</u>**" means ....
   a. fresh water   b. sweet water   c. dirty water   d. salt water
6. My mum made .... for us.
   a. juice   b. sandwiches   c. sandcastles   d. tea

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. There .... an exciting film on TV yesterday.
   a. were   b. is   c. be   d. was
2. They use a .... to reach the far island. (El Hamool – Kafr El-Sheikh 2022)
   a. tent   b. map   c. camera   d. cave
3. You should .... your answers in each question in the exam.
   a. make   b. check   c. do   d. go
   (El Maragha-Sohag 2020)
4. Where did you .... yesterday ?
   a. go   b. went   c. goes   d. going
5. SB We swam in the lake and .... the mountain.
   a. climbed   b. went   c. rode   d. made

6. SB There were camels in the ....
a. desert b. sea c. river d. lake

7. There are a lot of trees in the .... (South Sinai 2020)
a. jug b. jungle c. lake d. cave

8. When I go to Alexandria, I enjoy sitting on the .... (Zefta-Gharbia 2020)
a. beach b. cave c. field d. mountain

9. She .... make noise as she was in the library. (Abou Homous - Beheira 2020)
a. do b. does c. didn't d. isn't

10. It's dangerous to .... in a lake alone.
a. drive b. swim c. ride d. eat

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. What did you <u>ate</u> for dinner last night ? (East Cairo 2020) (............)
2. <u>Was</u> your friends at the park yesterday ? (............)
3. They <u>doesn't</u> go to the museum last weekend. (Tahta-Sohage 2022) (............)
4. SB I <u>go</u> into the cave last week. (............)

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"A picnic at Al Azhar Park"

....

....

....

....

LESSONS 3 & 4

SB pages 48 : 50 WB pages 104 & 105



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

view (n)	منظر طبيعي	course (n)	دورة تدريبية
reorder (ed) (v)	يعيد ترتيب	castle (n)	قلعة
camp (ed) (v), (n)	يعسكر / معسكر	students (n)	طلاب
souvenir (n)	هدية تذكارية	advertisement (n)	إعلان
market (n)	سوق تجاري		

تنويه
- Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- قاموس المعاصر اللغوي لإتقان المفردات اللغوية.
- Dictation استعد للاختبار الاملاء ملحق Master your term.

5 min Pop Quiz تدريب يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Step 1 Read key Vocabulary — الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ المفردات اللغوية المحورية.

Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary — الخطوة الثانية : تدرب على المفردات اللغوية.

* يقوم الطالب بأداء تدريب تلقائي على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها.

⊙ Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

advertisement - view - castle - camp

1. To .... is to sleep in a tent in the desert.
2. There's a beautiful .... by the lake.
3. I saw a / an .... for a job in a company.

Lesson 3 SB pages 48 & 49 WB page 104

friendly (adj) ودود	sea animals (n) الحيوانات البحرية	holiday flat (n) شقة لقضاء الإجازة

Lesson 4 SB page 50 WB page 105

wonderful (adj)	رائع	language school (n)	مدرسة لغات
exciting (adj)	مثير	safari rides (n)	رحلات سفاري
activity (n)	نشاط	really (adv)	حقاً
London Eye (n)	لعبة فى الملاهى (بلندن)	Germany (n)	ألمانيا

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
come	يأتى	came	come
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
here	هنا	there	هناك
beautiful	جميل	ugly	قبيح
interesting	شيق	boring	ممل


تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

camp	sleep outside in a tent	يعسكر
castle	a large, old building with towers	قلعة
dolphin	a grey sea animal that is very clever and can jump high	دولفين
flag	the colours of a country on a piece of material	علم
hotel	a building where you can pay for a room to sleep in for a night or longer	فندق
queen	a woman who rules a country	ملكة
tower	a tall, narrow part of a building	برج
souvenir	something that you buy to remember a place or an event you went to	هدية تذكارية
view	the things you can see from a certain place	منظر طبيعى
holiday flat	an apartment you can stay in for a holiday, usually near the sea	شقة لقضاء الإجازة

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 Arab - Arabic

- Arab — عربى الجنسية / شخص عربى
  - ex.: - Arab countries should help each other.
- Arabic — لغة عربية
  - ex.: - People in Egypt speak Arabic.

Reading on lesson 1 WB page 103

2 remember - remind

- remember — يتذكر من تلقاء نفسه
  - ex.: - Do you remember yesterday's homework?

WB page 104

- remind — يذكر شخص آخر بشئ
  - ex.: - Salma reminded me of her birthday.

3 in + لغة

ex.: - I can talk to my friends in Arabic.
- Tourists usually speak to sellers in English. Reading on lesson 4 WB page 105

4 for + مدة زمنية

ex.: - I was at a language school for four years. Reading on lesson 4 SB page 50

5 souvenirs / presents

- souvenirs — هدايا تذكارية (تذكر بمكان الزيارة)
  - ex.: - I bought souvenirs for my family from Paris.

Listening on lesson 3 WB page 45

- presents — هدايا (تقدم فى المناسبات)
  - ex.: - On my birthday, I got a lot of presents.

6 enjoy + (inf. + ing)

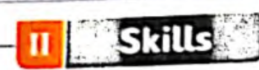
ex.: - I enjoyed speaking English. — لاحظ عدم استخدام حرف جر بعد enjoy

Reading on lesson 4 SB page 50

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

have + (وجبة)	يتناول (وجبة)	by the lake = next to the lake	بجوار البحيرة
do a project	ينفذ مشروع	make an advertisement for	يصنع إعلانا لـ
go on a holiday	يذهب فى أجازة	find out	يكتشف
get to school	يصل للمدرسة	stay at	يقيم فى

from the top	من على القمة	walk to school	يمشي للمدرسة
have a great holiday	يقضي أجازة رائعة	come from + (بلد)	يأتي من (بلد)
have a wonderful time	يقضي وقتاً ممتعاً	from all around the world	
at the same time	في نفس الوقت	= from all over the world	من جميع أنحاء العالم
at the market	في السوق	make a list	يعد قائمة
go with	يذهب مع	the view of	منظر لـ



II Skills



1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz تدرب على ٣٧ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع



Listening

on Lesson 3 SB page 48

Hatem : Hi, Yunis! How was your holiday ?

Yunis : Hi, Hatem! It was great, thanks !

Hatem : Where did you go ?

Yunis : I went to Jordan[1] by plane.

Hatem : Wow! Did you visit your family there ?

Yunis : No, we stayed in a holiday flat[2] by the beach. We had a wonderful view[3] from the windows. Every morning, I saw dolphins in the sea.

Hatem : Did you swim in the sea ?

Yunis : Yes, we did. We swam every day ! We used a map[4] and read a book about Jordan, and we visited a lot of famous places. We went to this old castle. Look, here's a picture of it on my phone.

Hatem : How did you get to the castle[5] ?

Yunis : We climbed up the mountain!

Hatem : Did you buy any souvenirs ?

Yunis : Yes, I did. I bought this small souvenir for you.

Hatem : Oh, how interesting. Egypt's flag is also red, white and black. Jordan's flag has another colour – green, too. Thanks, Yunis !

Check Vocabulary

(1) دولة الأردن
(2) شقة لقضاء الإجازة
(3) منظر طبيعي
(4) خريطة
(5) قلعة

Listening skill

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- They climbed the mountain to get to the ....

a. flat b. map c. castle d. tower

Reading

on Lesson 4 SB page 50

Learn English in London !

Our students come from all around the world to study and learn in this exciting city.

Holiday courses[1] are for one, two or three weeks.

I had a wonderful time[2] at the language school! I was there for two weeks. It was nice to meet students from different countries. My favourite place was Windsor Castle[3]. We went there by train. We walked all around the castle, but we did not see the Queen !

Mona, Egypt



I learnt English and had a really great holiday at the same time ! London's shops are fantastic. I bought a lot of souvenirs[4]. My favourite activity[5] was a ride on the London Eye[6], because there was a beautiful view of the city from the top.

Laura, France

When I first came to the language school, I was not very good at English. But the teachers helped me a lot. The lessons were fun[7], and for homework we did interesting projects[8]. I enjoyed speaking English !

Jurgen, Germany

Check Vocabulary

(1) دورات تدريبية
(2) يقضي وقت رائع
(3) قلعة ويندسور في إنجلترا
(4) هدايا تذكارية
(5) نشاط
(6) عجلة لندن
(7) ممتع
(8) مشروعات

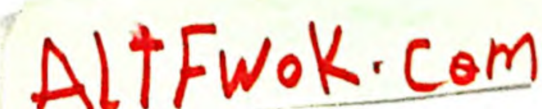
Answer the following questions :

- Giving the main idea إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

Learn 1. What's the main idea of the passage ?
Learning English in London.

- Extracting information إستخراج المعلومات

Practise 2. How long are the holiday courses in London ?
....



Videoscript Lesson 3 SB page 48

Narrator : Almost[1] 15 million people come to Egypt every year. It's a very popular[2] place for a holiday.

When people come to Egypt, they can visit exciting cities like Alexandria , ... beaches, ... caves, ... and the beautiful desert. They also come to see the many important places from history[3]. This is the Khan family. They're from Jordan[4]. Last year they visited Egypt on holiday. They visited Giza to see the Pyramids[5] and the Sphinx[6]. And they rode on a camel. They visited the beautiful city of Luxor. Then, they went to the Valley of the Kings[7] ... where they visited the Karnak Temple[8]. They also spent some days in Cairo.

They went shopping in the Khan el-Khalili market[9]. Here, they bought souvenirs for their friends back at home. Finally, they went to Hurghada and they swam in the Red Sea.

Egypt is a wonderful place for a holiday.

Where do you want to go ?

Check Vocabulary

(1) تقريبا	(2) محبوب / مشهور	(3) تاريخ	(4) دولة الأردن	(5) الأهرامات
(6) أبو الهول	(7) وادى الملوك	(8) معبد الكرنك	(9) سوق خان الخليلى	



Listening

• on Lesson 3 WB page 104

Narrator 1

Man 1 : Where did you go on holiday last year ?

Narrator 2

Man 1 : Where did you stay ?

Narrator 3

Man 1 : How did you travel there ?

Narrator 4

Man 1 : Did you climb a mountain ?

Narrator 5

Man 1 : What did you eat ?

Reading

• on Lesson 4 WB page 105

Hi Ali

Last summer, I travelled to Egypt because I wanted to learn Arabic. I went to a language school in Cairo. I had a wonderful time.

I was there for two weeks. The people in Cairo were very friendly. Now I have many new friends.

When I first went to the language school, I wasn't very good at Arabic. But the teachers helped me, and the lessons were fun. Now I can talk to my new friends in Arabic!

Cairo's shops are fantastic. I bought lots of souvenirs. My favourite place was the Cairo Tower. I enjoyed the view of the city from the top.

What did you do last summer ?

Write soon and tell me.

Andy, England.

Answer the following questions :

- Critical thinking skill مهارة التفكير النقدى

Learn 1. Why do you think Andy liked the Cairo Tower best ?

Because he enjoyed the view of the city from the top of the Cairo Tower.

Practice 2. Do you think Andy enjoyed his holiday in Egypt ? How ?

....

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. Large companies make .... to make people buy their products.
   a. flags b. towers c. advertisements d. souvenirs
2. Every country has a different ....
   a. culture b. door c. hotel d. key
3. He is bad at English, so he's going to have a/an .... next summer.
   a. culture b. advertisement c. course d. hotel

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

4. WB Which holiday .... can people do in Egypt ?
   a. weeks b. views c. activities d. souvenirs
   (Multidisciplinary - Beni Suef 20..)
5. .... are very friendly sea animals. (South Giza 20..)
   a. Sharks b. Dolphins c. Snakes d. Whales
6. WB On the London Eye, there was a beautiful .... from the top. (South Giza - Giza 20..)
   a. project b. activity c. souvenir d. view
7. WB " .... " is to sleep for a time in a tent. (Al-Azhar - Alex 20..)
   a. Camp b. Leave c. Swim d. Climb

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

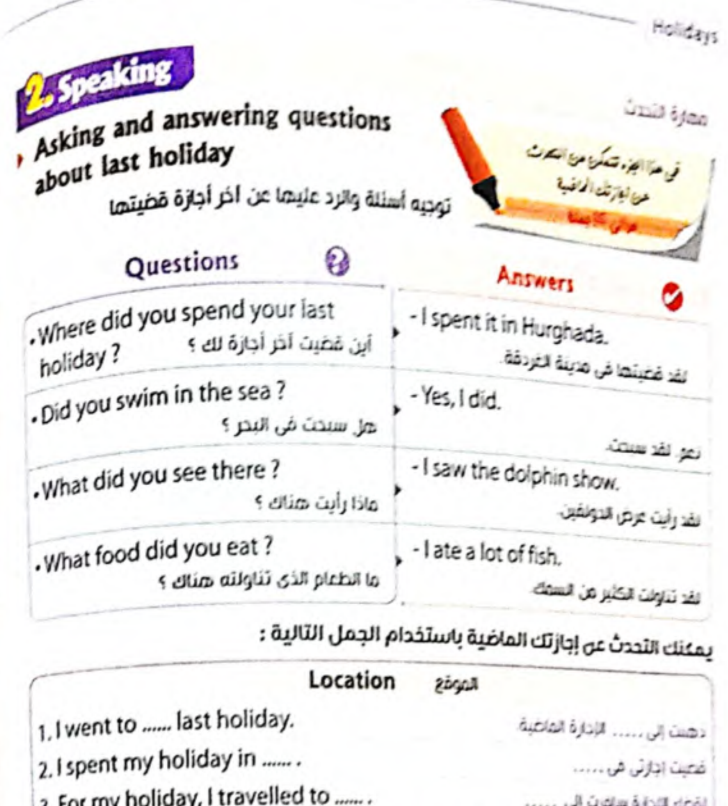
8. The clever engineer .... very beautiful buildings.
   a. hits b. adds c. cooks d. designs
9. Some people like to send their children to .... schools to learn foreign languages لغات أجنبية.
   a. sports b. language c. art d. religious

Definitions

10. A .... is something you buy to remember a holiday.
    a. view b. project c. souvenir d. hotel
11. A .... is a tall, narrow part of a building. (Shubra - Cairo 20..)
    a. flat b. tower c. castle d. camp
12. A .... is a building where you can pay for a room to sleep in for a night or longer.
    a. castle b. camp c. tower d. hotel
13. A .... is a large, old building with towers.
    a. castle b. skyscraper c. hotel d. house

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. Can you talk to your friends .... English ?
    a. on b. up c. in d. into
15. When you go shopping, you should .... a list first.
    a. give b. make c. do d. go
16. Many students come from all .... the world to study here.
    a. round b. above c. around d. opposite



2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

- **Asking and answering questions about last holiday**

توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن آخر أجازة قضيتها

Questions	Answers
• Where did you spend your last holiday ? أين قضيت آخر أجازة لك ؟	- I spent it in Hurghada. لقد قضيتها فى مدينة الغردقة
• Did you swim in the sea ? هل سبحت فى البحر ؟	- Yes, I did. نعم، لقد سبحت
• What did you see there ? ماذا رأيت هناك ؟	- I saw the dolphin show. لقد رأيت عرض الدولفين
• What food did you eat ? ما الطعام الذى تناولته هناك ؟	- I ate a lot of fish. لقد تناولت الكثير من السمك

يمكنك التحدث عن إجازتك الماضية باستخدام الجمل التالية :

Location الموقع

1. I went to ...... last holiday. ذهبت إلى ...... الإجازة الماضية
2. I spent my holiday in .... قضيت إجازتى فى ......
3. For my holiday, I travelled to .... لقضاء الإجازة سافرت إلى ......

Activities الأنشطة

climb a mountain – ride a bike – swim in a lake – visit a friend – play games – learn new things – have delicious food – have a picnic – buy souvenirs – see a show – camp – go shopping.

4. I climbed a mountain to see the sunrise. تسلقت الجبل لرؤية شروق الشمس
5. I saw an interesting show. شاهدت عرض شيق
6. I visited my family in .... قمت بزيارة عائلتى فى (مدينة) ......
7. I learnt how to swim. تعلمت كيفية السباحة

Time الوقت

8. I spent two weeks in .... قضيت أسبوعين فى ......
9. I went camping for .... ذهبت لإقامة معسكر لمدة ......

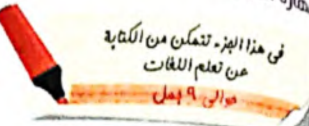
Food الطعام

10. I had ...... for breakfast / lunch / dinner. تناولت ..... على وجبة الفطار / الغداء / العشاء.
11. We went to a restaurant to have .... ذهبنا إلى المطعم لتناول (وجبة) .....
12. We ate new foods like .... تناولنا أطعمة جديدة مثل .....



مهارة الكتابة

Learning languages تعلم اللغات



1. I like learning languages. أحب تعلم اللغات.
2. I think learning languages is an important skill. أعتقد تعلم اللغات مهارة مهمة.
3. Last year, I travelled to London to learn English. سافرت إلى مدينة لندن العام الماضي لتعلم اللغة الإنجليزية.
4. London is a beautiful and interesting city. لندن مدينة جميلة وشيقة.
5. I went to a language school. ذهبت إلى مدرسة لغات.
6. There were students from all over the world. كان هناك تلاميذ من جميع أنحاء العالم.
7. My favourite place was Windsor Castle. مكاني المفضل كان قلعة وندسور.
8. I went to a shopping area to buy many souvenirs. ذهبت إلى منطقة التسوق لشراء العديد من الهدايا التذكارية.
9. I hope to visit many new places and learn more languages. أتمنى زيارة العديد من الأماكن الجديدة وتعلم لغات أكثر.

III Language

تم شرح زمن الماضي البسيط في الدرس الأول والثاني من الوحدة

- I played tennis last week.
- Did you play tennis last week ?
- When did you play tennis ?

General Exercises



LESSONS 3 & 4

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Nour is telling Hana about her holiday.

Hana : Hi, Nour, How was your holiday ?
Nour : Hi, Hana. (1) ....
Hana : (2) .... ?
Nour : I went to France.
Hana : Did you visit the Eiffel Tower ?
Nour : (3) ....
Hana : (4) .... ?
Nour : Yes, I enjoyed my time there.
Hana : When did you come home ?
Nour : (5) ....

(East Tanta - Gharbia 2020)

2 Read the following, then answer the questions : (Mashtoul - Sharkia 2020)

My name is Mona. I live in Cairo. I work hard at school to be a doctor. My favourite subjects are science and computer studies. I also want to speak English well to other children in different places. My teacher is very good, but I also like to use technology. I use a tablet to practise my English. Sometimes I use my phone, too ! Last year, I learnt English in London with my family. It was **fantastic** ! I cycled to summer school every day and I met students from different countries. Now, I have a friend from Uganda ! My favourite place was a river in Cambridge. It was very beautiful, but I didn't swim in **it** !

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the main idea of the passage ?
....
2. Who did Mona go to London with ?
....
3. Do you think that Mona enjoyed her visit to London ? Why ?
....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. What did not Mona use to learn English ?
a. Her teacher b. Her phone c. A laptop d. A tablet

5. The underlined word "**fantastic**" means ....
a. ugly b. very good c. very large d. very bad

6. The underlined word "**it**" refers to the ....
a. school b. river c. sea d. computer

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Come on. It's not a .... film, it's very interesting. (Al Fashn – Beni Suef 2022)
a. beautiful b. boring c. friendly d. exciting

2. We stayed in a holiday .... by the beach.
a. flag b. flea c. fly d. flat

3. Dina's best .... was Windsor Castle.
a. time b. distance c. place d. cinema

4. WB Last summer, my family .... a fantastic holiday.
a. has b. had c. have d. hasn't

5. In Sharm El Sheikh, there is a "........ show" in the pool.
a. camel b. shark c. dolphin d. rabbit

6. WB Where did Andy .... last summer ?
a. went b. go c. goes d. going

7. People do courses to study and ....
a. earn b. learn c. steal d. lose

8. In a/an .... school, children can learn many languages.
a. ordinary b. public c. language d. Arabic

9. In the area of the Pyramids, you can .... horses.
a. drive b. give c. eat d. ride

10. At school, we .... a lot of exciting projects last year.
a. do b. doing c. did d. to do

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. There did a beautiful view from the high mountain. (Qaha – Qalyoubia 2022) (........)
2. SB What did Yunis see and did there ? (........)
3. I have a wonderful time at the hotel last summer. (........)
4. When we went to Wadi El Ryan, we camp by the lake. (........)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

جواب تجده في نهاية الكتاب

"A day on the beach"

....

LESSONS 5 & 6

SB pages 51 & 52 WB pages 106 & 107

1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

postcard (n)	كارت بريدي	theatre (n)	مسرح
snail (n)	حيوان القوقع	the Eiffel Tower (n)	برج إيفل
sign (n)	علامة / لافتة	response (n)	رد
rule (n)	قاعدة	signature (n)	توقيع

تنويه
- Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- قاموس المعاصر اللغوي لإتقان المفردات اللغوية.
- Dictation استعد لاختبار الإملاء ملحق Master your term.



Step 1 Read key Vocabulary — الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ المفردات اللغوية المحورية

Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary — الخطوة الثانية : تدرب على المفردات اللغوية

* يقوم الطالب بأداء تدريب تلقائي على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها.

◉ Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

signature - snails - sign - light - response

1. In Paris, I ate many new things like ....
2. What was your .... when your mobile fell in the sea ?
3. Write your .... at the end of the email.
4. The .... says "Turn left".

Lesson 5

SB page 51 WB page 106

emotion (n)	عاطفة / شعور	windy (adj)	عاصف
repeat (ed) (v)	يردد / يكرر	boat trip (n)	رحلة بالقارب

tourist (n)	سائح	sandals (n)	صندل (حذاء مفتوح)
sentence (n)	جملة	play (n)	مسرحية
happen (ed) (v)	يحدث	pity (n)	عطف / شفقة
expression (n)	تعبير		

Lesson 6

SB page 52 WB page 107

closed (adj)	مغلق	Ramses Station (n)	محطة رمسيس
greeting (n)	تحية	tickets (n)	تذاكر
art (n)	الفن / الأعمال الفنية	café (n)	كافتيريا
header (n)	رأس الصفحة	closing (n)	خاتمة
pass (ed) (v)	يمر على	sender (n)	الراسل
continue (d) (v)	يستمر	Australia (n)	دولة استراليا

Famous places أماكن مشهورة

The Science Museum	متحف العلوم	The Louvre	متحف اللوفر
The River Seine	نهر السين	The Valley of the Kings	وادي الملوك
Luxembourg Gardens	حدائق لوكسمبورج	the Nile	نهر النيل

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
fall	يقع / يسقط	fell	fallen

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
past	(وفى الساعات)	to	إلا (فى الساعات)
many	عديد / كثير	few	قليل (للعدد)
win	يفوز	lose	يخسر

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

snail	a small, slow animal with a shell on its back	حيوان القوقع

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 back

* back (n) ظهر

ex.: My back hurts me.

* (be) back (v) (adj) يعود / عائد

ex.: I'm back from my holiday in Paris. *Reading on lesson 6 SB page 52*

2 get on / get into / get out of / get off

* get on يركب مواصلة (يدخلها واقفًا)

ex.: - I got on the bus / the train ... etc.

* get into يركب مواصلة (صغيرة)

ex.: - I get into the car / the taxi.

* get out of ينزل من مواصلة (صغيرة)

ex.: - I got out of the taxi quickly.

* get off ينزل من مواصلة

ex.: - She got off the bus and went home. *Reading on lesson 6 WB page 107*

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

have a view of the city	يطل على المدينة	give examples	يعطى أمثلة
on the river	فى النهر	bath time	وقت الاستحمام
walk on the grass	يسير على الحشائش	in bed	فى الفراش (السرير)
go on a boat	يذهب فى رحلة بالقارب	travel from ...... to	يسافر من ... (مكان) ... إلى ... (مكان) ....
see you soon	أراك قريبًا		
for example	على سبيل المثال	for a holiday	لقضاء أجازة

II Skills

Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz | تدرب على ٣٧ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع



Listening

• on Lesson 5 SB page 51



Man : What did you do yesterday, Mazin ?

Mazin : I went to the zoo.

Man : Oh, that's interesting! Did you enjoy the day ?

Mazin : No, I didn't.

Man : Oh, dear[1] ! Why not ?

Mazin : Well, first, we went to see the monkeys. But they were all very tired. I think they were in bed[2].

Man : What a pity[3] ! So you didn't see them ?



Mazin : No, we didn't. Then we went into a cave to see the bats. But it was dark, and I didn't see anything.

Man : What did you do next ?



Mazin : Then, we bought an ice cream and went to see the elephants. It was bath time for[4] them.

Man : Wow ! How exciting[5] !



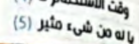
Mazin : Yes, I enjoyed that. But then something bad happened.

Man : Oh, no! What happened ?

Mazin : An elephant ate my ice cream!

Important Expressions and Prepositions

(1) يا للهول
(2) فى السرير (نائم)
(3) يا للحسرة
(4) وقت الاستحمام لـ
(5) يا له من شىء مثير



Listening skill

⊙ Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

• .... ate Mazin's ice cream.

a. Hany   b. Monkeys   c. An elephant   d. Marwan

Reading

• on Lesson 6 SB page 52

New message
From : Fatma   To : Azza
Subject : My holiday

Hi, Azza !

I am back from my holiday[1] in Paris. I had a wonderful[2] time! Paris is a great city for a holiday because there is so much to see and do. The food is delicious[3]. I ate a lot of new things, for example, snails![4].

One day we climbed the Eiffel Tower, and from the top we had a view[5] of the city. We visited museums and had a picnic[6] in the Luxembourg Gardens.

We also went on a boat on the River Seine. What a pity we did not have time to go to the Science Museum[7]. I also wanted to see the art at the Louvre[8], but it was closed.

Near our hotel there was a busy market. I bought a T-shirt and some postcards. I also bought you a souvenir[9]. It is a very small Eiffel Tower!

You can put it next to your bed. It has got a light on the top.

See you soon!

Fatma

Check Vocabulary

(1) إجازة
(2) رائع
(3) لذيذ
(4) قواقع
(5) منظر طبيعي
(6) نزهة في الهواء الطلق
(7) متحف العلوم
(8) متحف اللوفر
(9) هدية تذكارية

Answer the following questions :

- Giving the main idea — إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

Learn 1. What's the best title for the passage ?
- *"Fatma's holiday in Paris".*

- Extracting information — استخراج المعلومات

Practise 2. Why is Paris a great city for a holiday ?

....

on Lesson 5 WB page 106

Hanan : I went to the beach last weekend.
Lina : Really ?
Hanan : When we arrived, it was very windy.
Lina : Oh dear!
Hanan : We didn't want to swim in the sea.
Lina : What a pity!
Hanan : Then the wind stopped and we went on a boat trip.
Lina : How exciting !
Hanan : We saw six big dolphins !
Lina : Wow!
Hanan : Then my brother's phone fell in the water.
Lina : Oh no!
Hanan : The phone was OK. Some new phones can go in water !
Lina : That's interesting!

on Lesson 6 WB page 107

Hi Fady,



1. Last week, I travelled from Cairo to Aswan. My father bought our tickets at Ramses Station, then we got on the train(1). There were people from many countries on the train, for example(2), England and Australia.
2. The train left Cairo at 8 o'clock, and soon we passed(3) Giza. I enjoyed the view from the window and I saw the Nile. There were lots of boats. It was beautiful.
3. We arrived at Luxor at a quarter past six(4). Many tourists left the train here. They wanted to see the Valley of the Kings(5) !

Important Expressions & Prepositions

(1) يركب القطار | (2) على سبيل المثال | (3) مر على | (4) فى الساعة السادسة وربع | (5) وادى الملوك

4. The train continued to(6) Aswan. We arrived there at ten o'clock. My uncle was there to meet us ! It was a wonderful journey.

See you soon(7) !

Mazin

(6) يستمر إلى
(7) أراك قريبًا

Answer the following questions :

- Giving the main idea — إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

Learn 1. Give a suitable title to the passage

A wonderful journey to Aswan.

- Understanding reference — فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

Practise 2. What does the pronoun "I" in the first paragraph refer to ?

....

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. I told my parents about the school trip and waited for their ....
   a. sentence b. response c. closing d. signature
2. You should follow the school ....
   a. objects b. students c. rules d. art
3. My grandpa sent me a/an .... on my birthday.
   a. shop b. ticket c. rule d. postcard
4. What does this .... mean ? - It means "No smoking".
   a. song b. sign c. email d. snail

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

5. A place where we can watch plays is a .... (West Tanta – Gharbia 2022)
   a. zoo b. theatre c. cinema d. circus
6. WB My father bought our .... at Ramsis Station.
   a. trains b. tickets c. presents d. sports
   (Multidisciplinary - North Sinai 2021)
7. WB The people in Egypt are very ....
   a. friends b. friend c. friendly d. friendly way
8. WB Hamdi went to buy rice, but the shop was ....
   a. open b. closed c. clean d. favourite

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. The Eiffel .... is a famous place in Paris.
   a. River b. Museum c. Tower d. Garden
10. I prefer wearing .... in summer. They are comfortable open shoes.
   a. dress b. shoes c. sandals d. socks

Definitions

11. A .... is a place where we keep historical objects.
   a. museum b. library c. bookshop d. tower
12. A/An .... is a small, slow animal with a shell on its back.
   a. octopus b. crocodile c. shell d. snail

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. I saw many things from the .... of the tower.
   a. high b. above c. top d. long
14. The students took .... to sing the song.
   a. turns b. repeats c. habits d. covers
15. Where did you go .... holiday ?
   a. at b. of c. on d. off

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

Responding to news الاستجابة للأخبار

Situation الموقف	Response الرد
1. I have tickets to see the new play at the theatre.	- How interesting / exciting ! يا له من شئ رائع / مثير !
2. Hamdi went to the shops to buy rice, but the shop was closed.	- Oh dear ! يا للهول !
3. There is a good film on TV this evening.	- Really ? حقاً ؟
4. My favourite football team won 5-0 !	- Wow ! يا للروعة !
5. My favourite football team lost 0-5 !	- Oh no ! What a pity! يا للحسرة!

General Exercises On LESSONS 5 & 6

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Last ...., Andy travelled to Egypt.
   a. winter b. summer c. spring d. autumn
2. Andy wanted to learn ....
   a. English b. maths c. science d. Arabic
3. Andy went to a .... in Cairo.
   a. language school b. zoo c. park d. museum
4. Andy had a .... time in Egypt.
   a. sad b. long c. short d. wonderful

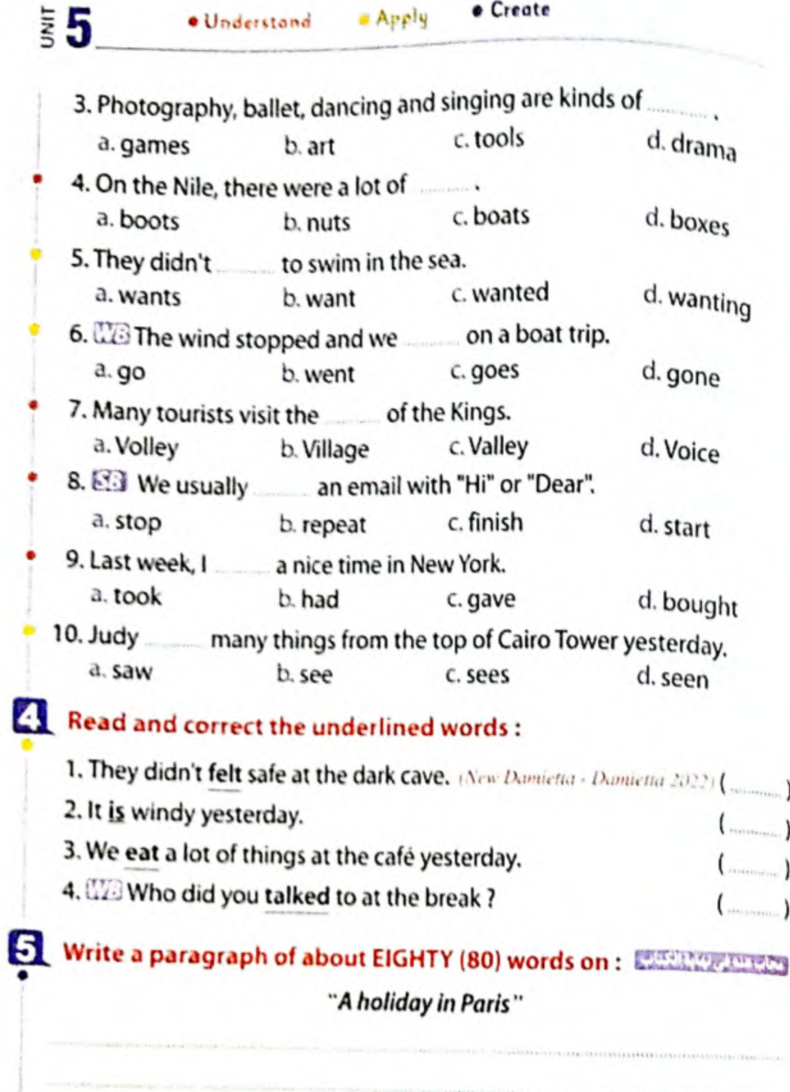
2 Complete the following dialogue :

Tamer is telling Nader about his holiday in Alexandria.

Nader : Where did you go on holiday last year ?
Tamer : I (1) .... to Alexandria.
Nader : Where did you stay ?
Tamer : I stayed in my uncle's flat.
Nader : (2) .... did you travel there ?
Tamer : I travelled (3) .... train.
Nader : Did you (4) .... in the sea ?
Tamer : Yes, I did.
Nader : What did you eat there ?
Tamer : I (5) .... delicious fish. (El Agamy - Alex. 2020)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **A :** I lost my new ring. **B :** What a .... !
   a. mess b. poor c. pity d. exciting
2. The sun gives us heat and .... (Qalyub - Qalyubia 2022)
   a. colour b. subject c. money d. light



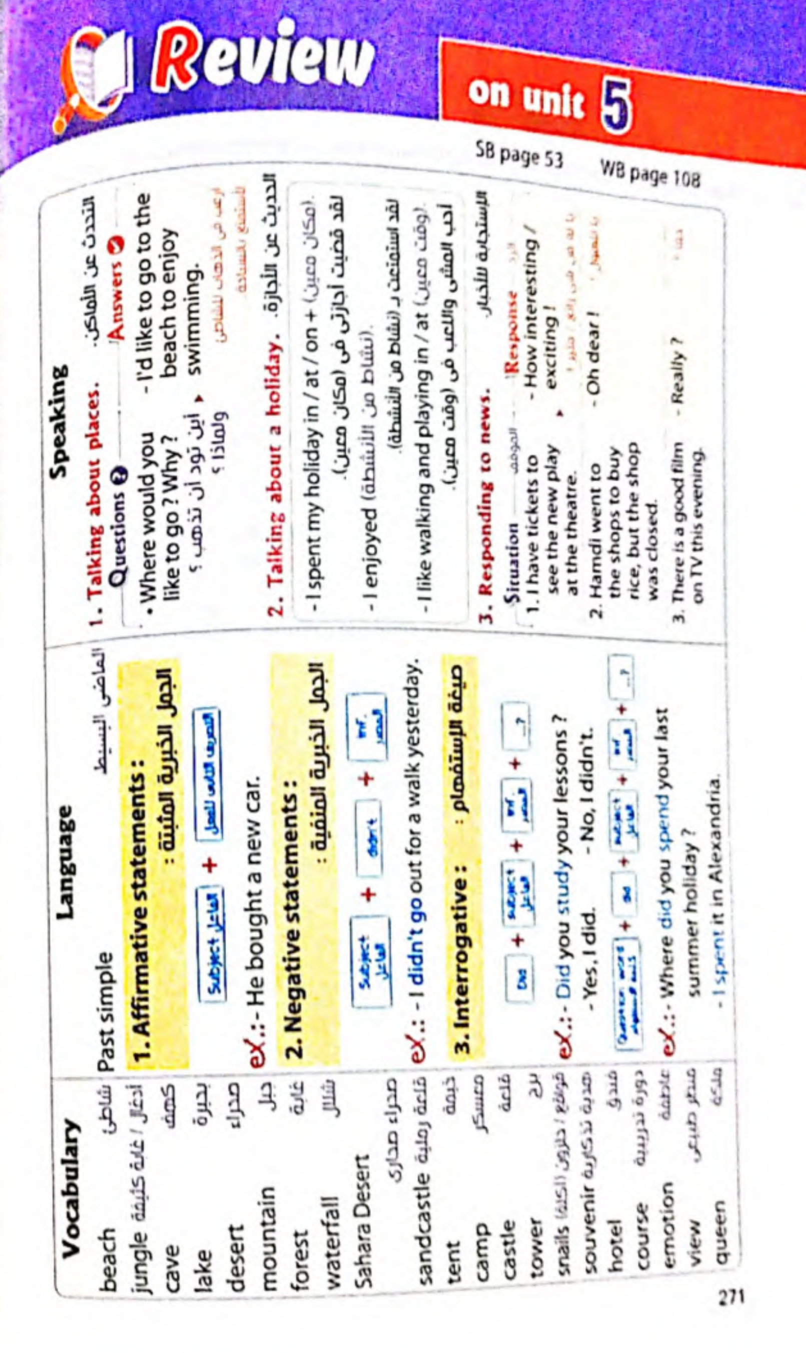
3. Photography, ballet, dancing and singing are kinds of ....
   a. games b. art c. tools d. drama
4. On the Nile, there were a lot of ....
   a. boots b. nuts c. boats d. boxes
5. They didn't .... to swim in the sea.
   a. wants b. want c. wanted d. wanting
6. WB The wind stopped and we .... on a boat trip.
   a. go b. went c. goes d. gone
7. Many tourists visit the .... of the Kings.
   a. Volley b. Village c. Valley d. Voice
8. SB We usually .... an email with "Hi" or "Dear".
   a. stop b. repeat c. finish d. start
9. Last week, I .... a nice time in New York.
   a. took b. had c. gave d. bought
10. Judy .... many things from the top of Cairo Tower yesterday.
   a. saw b. see c. sees d. seen

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. They didn't **felt** safe at the dark cave. (New Damietta - Damietta 2022) (........)
2. It **is** windy yesterday. (........)
3. We **eat** a lot of things at the café yesterday. (........)
4. WB Who did you **talked** to at the break ? (........)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A holiday in Paris"



Review on unit 5

SB page 53 WB page 108

Vocabulary

beach	شاطئ
jungle	أدغال / غابة كثيفة
cave	كهف
lake	بحيرة
desert	صحراء
mountain	جبل
forest	غابة
waterfall	شلال
Sahara Desert	صحراء صحارى
sandcastle	قلعة رملية
tent	خيمة
camp	معسكر
castle	قلعة
tower	برج
snails	قواقع / حلزون (أكلة)
souvenir	هدية تذكارية
hotel	فندق
course	دورة تدريبية
emotion	عاطفة
view	منظر طبيعى
queen	ملكة

Language

Past simple الماضى البسيط

1. Affirmative statements : الجمل الخبرية المثبتة :

Subject الفاعل + التصريف الثانى للفعل

ex.: - He bought a new car.

2. Negative statements : الجمل الخبرية المنفية :

Subject الفاعل + didn't + inf. المصدر

ex.: - I didn't go out for a walk yesterday.

3. Interrogative : صيغة الإستفهام :

Did + Subject الفاعل + inf. المصدر + ...?

ex.: - Did you study your lessons ?
- Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.

Question word كلمة الإستفهام + did + Subject الفاعل + inf. المصدر + ...?

ex.: - Where did you spend your last summer holiday ?
- I spent it in Alexandria.

Speaking

1. Talking about places. التحدث عن الأماكن.

Questions	Answers
• Where would you like to go ? Why ? أين تود أن تذهب ؟ ولماذا ؟	- I'd like to go to the beach to enjoy swimming. أرغب فى الذهاب للشاطئ لأستمتع بالسباحة.

2. Talking about a holiday. الحديث عن الأجازة.

- I spent my holiday in / at / on + (مكان معين).
لقد قضيت أجازتى فى (مكان معين).
- I enjoyed (نشاط من الأنشطة).
لقد استمتعت بـ (نشاط من الأنشطة).
- I like walking and playing in / at (وقت معين).
أحب المشى واللعب فى (وقت معين).

3. Responding to news. الإستجابة للأخبار.

Situation الموقف	Response الرد
1. I have tickets to see the new play at the theatre.	- How interesting / exciting !
2. Hamdi went to the shops to buy rice, but the shop was closed.	- Oh dear !
3. There is a good film on TV this evening.	- Really ?

Skills

1 Speaking مهارة التحدث

. تعتمد مهارة التحدث مع الاخرين بشكل أساسي على تكوين أسئلة ومعرفة كيفية الرد عليها.

Question السؤال	Answer الإجابة	Usage الاستخدام
Where would you like to go ? Why ?	*I would like to go to the beach to enjoy swimming.*	وصف المكان
What can you see or do there ?	*I can see a lot of fish and swim in the sea.*	
What holiday activities do you like doing ?	*I like climbing mountains.*	
Where did you go on holiday ?	*I went to Siwa.*	
What did you do there ?	*I swam in the lake.*	
Did you go into the cave ? Why / Why not ?	*No. Because I was frightened.*	التحدث عن الإجازة
Where did you stay ?	*We stayed in a hotel.*	
What food did you eat ?	*We ate a lot of fish.*	
What place did you enjoy visiting ?	*My favourite place was the Cairo Tower.*	

2 Writing Skill مهارة الكتابة

- عناصر تساعدك على تنظيم أفكارك للتعامل مع مهارة الكتابة متبوعة بنموذج.

Holidays

When / Where	How / With whom
Last summer / winter ... etc. I went to	I went there by .... I went with ....

Stay	sightseeing
We stayed in .... holiday flat - hotel - tent	We saw .... I enjoyed the view of ....

Activities	Opinion
We go .... / We play .... We climb a .... and ride	In my opinion, we enjoyed ....

Sample

Last summer, I went to Alexandria. I went there with my family. We went by train. It took three hours to get there. I enjoyed the view from the window. My uncle was waiting for us at the station. We had breakfast in a traditional restaurant. Then we went to the beach. We swam all day. After that, we went to a holiday flat. It was great one. We ate fish for lunch. I played games with my cousins. They were very friendly. We enjoyed our holiday there so much.

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة، قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على حل سؤال الفقرة الإنشائية في الورقة الامتحانية (٣٣ جملة)

1 A place you would like to visit

I like visiting new places[1]. I would like to visit Siwa[2]. Siwa is an oasis in Egypt[3]. It is a nice place to visit[4].Many tourists visit it every year.[5] You can do many activities there[6]. You can swim in the lake[7]. You can climb the mountain[8]. You can ride a camel in the desert, too[9]. People camp in the desert there[10]. They sleep in a tent[11]. I'm excited to visit Siwa one day[12].

2 Learning languages

Learning language is very interesting[13]. I like learning new languages[14]. Last summer, I went to language centre to learn French[15]. At first, I wasn't good at French[16]. But the teachers helped me a lot[17]. Lessons were fun[18]. Now I can talk French well[19]. I met nice students there[20]. We became friends[21]. We help each other to practise French[22]. French is a nice language[23].

3 "Your holiday"

Last winter, my family travelled to Luxor on a train[24]. We bought the train ticket from the station ticket office[25]. Then we got on the train[26]. The train wasn't busy[27]. It took 18 hours to get there[28]. We passed many cities[29]. I enjoyed the view of the green fields from the window[30]. We had a nice holiday there[31]. Luxor is a very interesting place to visit[32]. Last month, when the weather was hot, my father suggested visiting it.[33]

Test on unit 5

• Understand • Apply • Create

تنويه: يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونيا وتصويبه

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).



1. Where did they go ?
   a. To Cairo   b. To Siwa   c. To Alexandria   d. To Luxor
2. They .... in the lake.
   a. sailed   b. fished   c. swam   d. ate
3. They saw .... and slept in a tent.
   a. cats   b. dogs   c. cows   d. camels
4. It was his .... holiday.
   a. favourite   b. bad   c. happy   d. sad

(El Fashn - Beni Suef 2020)

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Sara is talking to a tourist from London.

Ann : Hi, where are you from ?
Sara : I'm from Egypt. And you ?
Ann : I'm (1) .... London.
Sara : Oh. How did you (2) .... to Egypt ?
Ann : By plane. I am here with my family.
Sara : What's your father's job ?
Ann : He is a (3) .... He takes care of people's teeth.
Sara : What's your mother's (4) .... ?
Ann : She is a (5) ....
Sara : Like my mother, she is a teacher, too.

(Hehia - Sharkia 2020)

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

I will never forget this year's holiday. At first, I thought this holiday would be boring because I was going to the sea with my family for the first time.

The beginning was quite **boring** but I went with my family to the sea. We stayed for 3 weeks there ! We stayed at a nice hotel but **it** was quite expensive hotel. The hotel was near the sea. It was really comfortable. During the holiday, I met a lot of kind and interesting people. They became my friends. We built sandcastles, swam and visited many places. The weather was great. I enjoyed my holiday.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

....

2. Why did the writer think the holiday was boring ?

....

3. What does the underlined pronoun **"it"** refer to ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The opposite of the underlined word **"boring"** is ....
   a. careful b. interested c. interesting d. bad
5. The hotel wasn't .... the sea.
   a. far from b. near c. behind d. next to
6. The writer stayed for .... days in the hotel.
   a. 21 b. 3 c. 14 d. 31

(Abou Hamad - Sharkia 2020)

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My little sister likes .... sand castles from sand.
   a. baking b. taking c. making d. boiling
2. She .... visit the museum yesterday. She went to the beach.
   a. doesn't b. don't c. didn't d. wasn't
3. How .... your trip to Luxor ? *(Ezbet El Borg - Damietta 2022)*
   a. was b. be c. were d. are

4. In Paris, we enjoyed going on a .... trip on the River Seine.
   a. shop b. boat c. bike d. raft
5. I'd like to go to the .... as I like swimming.
   a. mountain b. rock c. sand d. beach
6. SB My favourite .... was Al-Azhar Park.
   a. time b. place c. team d. food
7. WB We slept in a .... in the desert.
   a. bed b. hat c. box d. tent
8. What did Mona .... in her office yesterday ?
   a. found b. find c. finds d. finding
9. SB The .... says "Don't walk on the grass".
   a. signal b. list c. song d. sign
10. He didn't go into the cave because he was ....
   a. frightened b. kind c. short d. brave

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. How do you get to the cinema yesterday ? (..........)
2. Marwa bought her car three weeks last. (..........)
3. He didn't happy at the park yesterday. (..........)
4. WB When we arrived, it is very windy. (..........)

E. Writing

6 WB Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A trip you made"

....

....

....

Stop here !

1. Mini-Test on unit 5 for Al-Azhar students اختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues :

A. Nada : Where would you like to go ?
Huda : ....

B. Fathi : .... ?
Soha : It was a great holiday.

2 Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences on :

"Learning English"

....
....
....

2. Use your brain, think smart طبق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. "Tarek lives next to a mosque". This means he lives .... a mosque.
   a. by b. far c. inside d. outside
2. .... are usually active in the dark.
   a. Eagles b. Bats c. Snakes d. Snails
3. "............" is usually said when something sad happens.
   a. Congratulations! b. Fantastic! c. Well done! d. Oh dear!
4. Which question is correct?
   a. Where did you spend your last weekend?
   b. Where do you spend your last weekend?
   c. Where did you spent your last weekend?
   d. Where were you spend your last weekend?
5. Which sentence is correct ?
   a. Hani doesn't have dinner yesterday.
   b. Hani didn't has dinner yesterday.
   c. Hani didn't have dinner now.
   d. Hani didn't have dinner yesterday.

Quiz on units 1,2,3,4&5

اختبار تراكمي على الوحدات (١، ٢، ٣، ٤ و ٥)

- يقوم المعلم باختيار اختبار مصغر (واحد) من (B) or (A) لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمعلومات الواردة في الوحدات



Model A

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Marks

1. .... she got any brothers ?
   a. Do b. Have c. Can d. Has
2. Last week, we .... our uncle's farm.
   a. visiting b. visited c. visit d. will visit
3. A .... is a group of people who play music together.
   a. parent b. chorus c. band d. party
4. You shouldn't .... litter in the park.
   a. drop b. fall c. follow d. ride
5. At break, I play games with my best friend in the ....
   a. library b. classroom c. laboratory d. playground

Model B



* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Mahdy .... like swimming.
   a. don't b. isn't c. hasn't d. doesn't
2. My family often .... shopping at the weekend.
   a. go b. make c. give d. have
3. A .... is something you buy to remember a holiday.
   a. souvenir b. view c. castle d. culture
4. We all like .... teacher.
   a. them b. our c. theirs d. mine
5. You can use the mouse to .... on different icons on the computer.
   a. tap b. click c. design d. make

UNIT 6

Let's eat !

SB pages 54 : 63 WB pages 109 : 115

Objectives

- **Reading :**
  A recipe; reviews of a dish; a text about healthy snacks; a text about food in Africa
- **Writing :**
  A paragraph describing a picture; an online review of a café
- **Listening :**
  A conversation about what food there is; an interview about healthy drinks; a conversation in a café
- **Speaking :**
  Asking and answering about food in a picture; giving advice; ordering food in a café
- **Language :**
  Countable and uncountable nouns; should and shouldn't for advice
- **Life Skills :**
  Decision making; problem solving
- **Issues :**
  Preventative health



مسابقة
المعاصر في اللغة الانجليزية في نهاية الكتاب.

لإتقان الوحدة

- للمتابعة اليومية والشهرية ملحق Master your term.
- تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر ملحق الأزهر الشريف.
- للمهارات اللغوية ملحق Master your term.
- قاموس المعاصر اللغوي.
- Dictation لاختبار الإملاء في ملحق Master your term.

أسئلة كل وحدة تشمل

- العلامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب.
- العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات.

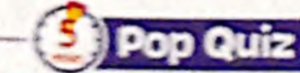


1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

olives (n)	زيتون	saucepan (n)	طاسة
ingredients (n)	مكونات	hummus (n)	حمص (طحينة)
biscuits (n)	بسكويت	coconut (n)	جوز الهند
fridge (n)	ثلاجة	crisps (n)	مقرمشات
rice pudding (n)	أرز بلبن	teaspoon (n)	ملعقة شاي
cinnamon (n)	قرفة	raisins (n)	زبيب

تنويه
- Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها
- قاموس المعاجم اللغوي لإتقان المفردات اللغوية
- Dictation استعد للاختبار الطلاب ملحق Master your term



Pop Quiz تدريب يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Step 1 Read key Vocabulary — الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ المفردات اللغوية المحورية

Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary — الخطوة الثانية : تدرب على المفردات اللغوية

• يقوم الطالب بأداء تدريب تلقائي على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها

■ Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

crisps - fridge - Olive - ingredients - Raisins

1. .... oil is healthy for all people.
2. We keep our food cold in a ....
3. .... are dried grapes.
4. Add the .... and stir again before drinking the tea.

Lesson 1

SB pages 54 & 55 WB page 109

nuts (n)	مكسرات	peppers (n)	فلفل
salt (n)	ملح	figs (n)	تين

Lesson 2

SB pages 56 & 57 WB page 110

recipe (n)	وصفة (طعام)	bowl (n)	سلطانية / وعاء
slowly (adv)	ببطء	equipment (n)	معدات
stir (red) (v)	يقلب	prefer (red) (v)	يفضل
perfect (n)	تام / ممتاز	amount (n)	مقدار
share (d) (v)	يتقاسم / يشارك	cooking (n)	طهي
ready (adj)	جاهز / مستعد	decide (d) (v)	يقرر
quarter (n)	ربع	plate (n)	طبق (صحن)

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
sit down يجلس	sat down	sat down

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
popular	شعبي / محبوب	unpopular	غير محبوب
quick	سريع	slow	بطيء
sweet	حلو	salty	مالح

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) في نهاية كتاب التدريبات

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

add	put something together with another thing	يضيف
biscuit	a sweet snack baked in the oven, usually small, flat and round	بسكويت
cheese	a yellow, white or orange food that is made from milk	جبن
cinnamon	a sweet spice used in cooking	قرفة
crisps	hard, dry potato pieces that you eat as a snack	مقرمشات
cup	something you can drink from, about 250 ml	فنجان
equipment	the things you need to do an activity	معدات

fig	a sweet fruit with a purple skin that is very soft inside	تين
fridge	a machine that keeps food and drinks cold	ثلاجة
hummus	a soft food made from chickpeas	حمص (طحينة)
ingredient	something you use to make food	مكون / مقدار
nut	a small, dry fruit with a hard shell	بندق
olive	a small, green or black fruit that you eat, or use to make oil	زيتون
pepper	a green, red or yellow vegetable that you cook or eat in a salad	فلفل
raisin	a small, dry grape	زبيب
recipe	instructions on how to make a meal	وصفة طهى
salad	cold, fresh vegetables (not cooked) together in a bowl	سلطة
saucepan	a round container used to cook things	طاسة
stir	move around ingredients, sugar, etc. with a spoon	يقلب
teaspoon	a small spoon of about 5 ml	ملعقة شاى

General Notes on Reading and Listening

1 Let's + inf. هيا بنا (تستخدم للاقتراح)

ex.: - Let's go swimming.

Let (مفعول + inf.) تستخدم للاستئذان

- Let us play in the garden, dad, please. *Listening on lesson 1 SB page 55*

2 What kind of .... ? ما نوع

ex.: - What kind of food do you like ? *Listening on lesson 1 SB page 54*

3 sweet (n) (adj) حلوى - حلو المذاق

ex.: - Children like eating sweets. (حلوى)

- There are a lot of sweet things in the fridge. حلو المذاق

Reading on lesson 2 SB page 57

4 recipe / ingredients

• recipe وصفة أو التعليمات الخاصة بطبخ معين من الطعام

ex.: - What is the recipe for rice pudding ?

• ingredients مكونات ومقادير نوع طبق معين من الطعام

ex.: - Rice, pasta and onions are the main ingredients of koshari.

Reading on lesson 2 SB page 57

5 prefer + (v + ing) / noun يفضل

ex.: - I prefer watching TV.

- I prefer rice pudding with coconut. *Reading on lesson 2 SB page 57*

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

end in ..	ينتهى بـ ..	decide to + (inf.)	يقرر أن
make (food) for ...	يعد الطعام	It's quick to cook.	إنها سريعة الطبخ
in bold	بخط غامق	a teaspoon of cinnamon	ملعقة صغيرة من القرفة
on top	على القمة	for 20 minutes	لمدة عشرون دقيقة
It's (easy) to (make).	سهلة التحضير	put ... into bowls	يضع ... فى أوعية
for the whole family	للأسرة بأكملها		

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

تدرب على ٣٧ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع Pop Quiz



• on Lesson 1 SB page 55

Nadia : Let's make lunch[1]. I think we've got all the food.

Omar : There's some salad[2]. Is there any hummus[3] ?

Nadia : No, there isn't. But there are some olives[4].

Omar : There are some peppers[5], too.

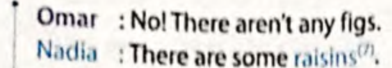
Nadia : Good! Is there any cheese ?

Omar : Yes, there is. I've got it.

Nadia : What about figs[6] ? Are there any figs ?

Check Vocabulary

(1) يعد وجبة الغداء (2) سلطة (3) حمص (طحينة) (4) زيتون (5) فلفل (6) تين



Omar : No! There aren't any figs.
Nadia : There are some raisins[7].
Omar : That's good.

(7) زبيب

Listening skill

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- They are making ....
  a. dinner b. breakfast c. lunch d. snack

Reading

• on Lesson 2 SB pages 56 & 57

Roz Bel Laban : Egyptian Rice Pudding[1]

Ingredients[2] :

- 1 cup of rice
- 2 cups of water
- 3 cups of milk
- 1 cup of sugar
- $\frac{1}{4}$ a cup of raisins[3]
- $\frac{1}{4}$ a cup of nuts
- $\frac{1}{4}$ a teaspoon[4] of cinnamon[5]

Instructions :

1. Put the rice and water in a saucepan[6].
2. Boil[7] the rice and water for 20 minutes.
3. Add[8] the milk slowly as you stir[9].
4. Add the sugar and stir again.
5. Put the rice pudding into bowls.
6. Put the raisins, cinnamon and nuts on top.
7. Put the rice pudding in the fridge[10].

Reviews of the recipe

Really easy! *****

This is a great recipe[11]. It's really easy to make. There aren't a lot of ingredients and it's very quick to cook.
Fawzi

OK, but a bit boring[12] ***

I liked this rice pudding, but it isn't my favourite. I think there are too many raisins. I don't like them. I prefer rice pudding with coconut[13].
Hana

Perfect! *****

There are a lot of rice pudding recipes online, but this is my favourite. It's easy to make and there's enough rice pudding for the whole family[14]. There's a lot of sugar in the recipe, but I like sweet food.
Nabila

Not like my mum's rice pudding! **

My mum's rice pudding is delicious, but this rice pudding isn't very good. There's too much sugar and there aren't enough other ingredients.
Salem

Check Vocabulary

(1) أرز بلبن	(2) مكونات	(3) زبيب	(4) ملعقة شاي	(5) قرفة	(6) طاسة
(7) يغلي	(8) يضيف	(9) يقلب	(10) ثلاجة	(11) وصفة	

(12) ممل قليلاً
(13) جوز هند
(14) الأسرة بأكملها

Answer the following questions :

- Giving the main idea إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

Learn 1. What is the main idea of the passage ?
The Egyptian rice pudding.

- Extracting information استخراج المعلومات

Practise 2. Hana likes rice pudding but it isn't her favourite because there are too many ....
a. raisins b. apples c. coconuts d. seeds

• on Lesson 2 WB page 110

Mrs Amal has a lot of friends. Today, she is cooking for ten people. She has enough plates for people to eat on, but she does not have enough chairs, so her friend brings some. Now all the food is ready, but there is fish and rice for fifteen people, not ten! She has too much fish and rice. She decides to ask five more people but they can't all sit down. There are too many people and not enough chairs!

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. Rice, milk and sugar are the main .... of rice pudding.
   a. marks b. instructions c. minutes d. ingredients
2. Put a .... of salt in the pot. That's enough.
   a. cup b. saucepan c. cattle d. teaspoon
3. .... are dried grapes used for some sweet foods like rice pudding.
   a. Nuts b. Biscuits c. Figs d. Raisins
4. .... have a lot of fat and salt.
   a. Olives b. Crisps c. Fruits d. Sweets

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

5. Which of the following is not a cooking verb ? *(El Saf - Giza 2020)*
   a. Pudding b. Boil c. Stir d. Add
6. SB Put rice and water in a .... before cooking rice pudding.
   a. bag b. teaspoon
   c. saucepan d. cup *(El Ayyat - Giza 2022)*
7. .... is not an ingredient. *(West Mahalla - Gharbia 2020)*
   a. Rice b. Nut c. Stir d. Raisin
8. WB There isn't enough .... to make hot chocolate.
   a. tea b. milk c. coffee d. juice

(Multidisciplinary - Sharkia 2021)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. My mum's rice pudding is .... We like it so much.
   a. terrible b. bad c. salty d. delicious
10. Mum .... the rice and water for 20 minutes on the cooker.
   a. washed b. boiled c. drank d. ate
11. It's delicious to put a teaspoon of .... on the food.
   a. water b. tea c. rice d. cinnamon

Definitions

12. .... is a yellow, white or orange food that is made from milk.
   a. Crisps b. Fig c. Pepper d. Cheese
13. .... is a small dry fruit with a hard shell.
   a. Fig b. Nut c. Olive d. Plum

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. After my mother cooks the rice pudding, she puts it .... bowls.
   a. on b. into c. from d. at
15. I prefer .... rice pudding with coconut.
   a. eat b. eats c. eating d. ate
16. She decided .... a flower for her teacher every day.
   a. buy b. buys c. to buy d. bought

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

1. Asking and answering about foods توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن الأطعمة

Questions	Answers
• Is there any + (اسم مفرد) ?	- Yes, there is. - No, there isn't.
• Is there any cheese ? هل يوجد أى جبن ؟	- Yes, there is. نعم، يوجد.
• Are there any + (اسم جمع) ?	- Yes, there are. - No, there aren't.
• Are there any olives ? هل يوجد أى زيتون ؟	- No, there aren't. لا، لا يوجد.

2. What food (do / don't) you like ? ما الطعام الذى (تحبه / لا تحبه) ؟

Questions	Answers
• What food do you like ? ما الطعام الذى تحبه ؟	- I like nuts. أحب المكسرات.
• What food don't you like ? ما الطعام الذى لا تحبه ؟	I don't like olives. لا أحب الزيتون.

3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة

في هذا الجزء، تتمكن من الكتابة عن الأطعمة الموجودة في المطبخ الخاص بك

"What food do you have in your kitchen ?"
ما الطعام الموجود في المطبخ الخاص بك ؟

1. There is some cheese. يوجد بعض من الجبنة.
2. There aren't any olives. لا يوجد أى زيتون.
3. There is enough milk in the fridge. يوجد قدر كافى من اللبن فى الثلاجة.
4. There are too many tomatoes. يوجد عدد أكثر من اللازم من الطماطم.
5. There isn't any rice. لا يوجد أى أرز.
6. There is too much juice. يوجد كمية أكثر من اللازم من العصير.
7. There are some carrots and crisps. يوجد بعض من الجزر والمقرمشات.
8. We have enough raisins for the recipe. لدينا زبيب كافى للوصفة.

III Language



1 Countable and uncountable nouns
الأسماء التي تُعد والتى لا تُعد

Countable nouns
- الأسماء التى (تعد) لها (مفرد وجمع).
- الاسم المفرد الذى (يُعد) يسبق بأداة نكرة (a/an).

Uncountable nouns
- الأسماء التى لا تعد (ليس لها جمع) وتعامل معاملة المفرد.
- الاسم المفرد الذى (لا يُعد) لا يُسبق بأداة نكرة (a/an).

Countable (singular)		Countable (plural)	Uncountable		Uncountable	
an apple	تفاحة	apples	hummus	حمص (طحينة)	water	ماء
a potato	ثمرة بطاطس	potatoes	furniture	أثاث	money	نقود
a man	رجل	men	salt	ملح	sugar	سكر
an ox	ثور	oxen	advice	نصيحة	news	أخبار
a loaf	رغيف خبز	loaves	cheese	جبن	milk	لبن

ex. - Apples contain vitamins. (countable noun اسم يُعد)
- Milk is very useful. (uncountable noun اسم لا يُعد)

2 some - any

(a) some

تستخدم (some) بمعنى (بعض) فى الحالات الآتية :

1. Countable nouns : ١. مع الأسماء التى تعد فى صيغة الجمع :

some books — some chairs — some eggs

ex. - I have some books.

2. Uncountable nouns : ٢. مع الأسماء التى لا تعد لتشير إلى كمية غير محددة :

some water — some sugar — some salad

ex. - She has some juice.

تستخدم (some) فى السؤال فى حالة العرض والطلب :

ex. - Would you like some tea ? (عرض)
- Can I have some water, please ? (طلب)

(b) any

تستخدم (any) بمعنى (أى) فى الحالات الآتية :

Negative statements : • فى الجمل الخبرية المنفية :
(مع الأسماء الجمع التى تعد والأسماء التى لا تعد) :

ex. - There aren't any vegetables in the fridge.
- There isn't any meat in the dish.

Interrogative : • فى صيغة الاستفهام :

ex. - Do you have any tomatoes ? (countable noun اسم يعد)
- Is there any salad in the dish ? (uncountable noun اسم لا يعد)

Stop here ! on Language (Answered & Explained)

فى هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عنه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. There are four .... on their farm.
   a. ox   b. oxen   c. goat   d. horse
2. Do you have .... brothers ?
   a. some   b. a   c. any   d. an

3. Would you like .... water, Maher ?
   a. some   b. any   c. an   d. a few
4. I haven't got .... time for hobbies.
   a. a   b. any   c. many   d. some

No.	Answer + Explanation الإجابة والتوضيح
1	b — (ox) [illegible] (oxen) [illegible] (oxen) [illegible]
2	c — [illegible] (any) [illegible]
3	a — [illegible] (some) [illegible]
4	b — [illegible] (any) [illegible]

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. Can you give me .... information about the new machine, please ?
   a. any   b. an   c. some   d. many
2. Our new furniture .... wonderful.
   a. are   b. were   c. have   d. is
   (Belbeis - Sharkia 2022 - Meet Ghamr - Dakahlia 2022)
3. We don't have .... money. *(El Zeitoun - Cairo 2020)*
   a. many   b. some   c. any   d. lots
4. SB There are .... peppers, too. *(Multidisciplinary - Gharbia 2021)*
   a. some   b. any   c. an   d. much
5. SB Is there .... cheese in the dish ?
   a. no   b. any   c. some   d. many
6. WB There is some salt, but there .... any crisps.
   a. is   b. are *(Shibin Al Qanater - Qalyubia 2022)*
   c. aren't   d. isn't

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. Can I have .... orange juice, please ?
   a. any   b. some   c. many   d. a lot
8. Meat .... my favourite food.
   a. are   b. am   c. is   d. aren't

9. There aren't .... tomatoes in the fridge.
   a. some   b. any   c. much   d. no

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. Do you like to have <u>any</u> fresh fruits ? *(Bolak Al Dakrour - Giza 2022)* (.........)
2. WB There <u>aren't</u> any milk to make hot chocolate. (.........)
3. We haven't got <u>some</u> computers in this room. *(Wasat Alex. 2020)* (.........)
4. There isn't <u>some</u> sugar on the table. *(East Zagazig - Sharkia 2020)* (.........)
5. SB There's some cheese. There <u>isn't</u> any olives. (.........)
6. SB <u>Is</u> there any figs in the fridge ? (.........)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. Can I have <u>any</u> water ? (.........)
8. There <u>isn't</u> any canals near our village. (.........)
9. <u>Are</u> there any sugar ? (.........)

a lot of, enough, too much, too many

We can use these words with countable and uncountable nouns.
يمكن استخدام هذه الكلمات مع الأسماء التى تُعد والأسماء التى لا تُعد.

1 a lot of كثير من
- + countable noun اسم يعد — ex. - There are a lot of books.
- + uncountable noun اسم لا يعد — ex. - There is a lot of sugar.

2 enough كاف
- + countable noun اسم يعد — ex. - Salma has enough pens.
- + uncountable noun اسم لا يعد — ex. - Sama has enough milk.

3

too many عدد أكثر من اللازم	+	countable noun اسم يعد جمع	ex. - There are too many boys.
too much كمية أكثر من اللازم	+	uncountable noun اسم لا يعد	ex. - There is too much sugar.

Stop here! on Language (Answered & Explained)

في هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عليه ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. There are .... new shirts in the clothes shop.
   a. too much b. much c. a little d. too many
2. Do you have .... money to buy this expensive car ?
   a. many b. too many c. enough d. lot of
3. He has .... of sweets for all the children.
   a. many b. a lot c. much d. enough
4. .... salt isn't healthy for your body.
   a. Too much b. Too many c. Enough d. A few

No.	Answer + Explanation الإجابة والتفسير
1	d [illegible] (shirts) [illegible] (too many) [illegible]
2	c [illegible] (money) [illegible] (enough) [illegible]
3	b [illegible] (of) [illegible] (a lot) [illegible]
4	a [illegible] (salt) [illegible] (Too much) [illegible]

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. There is too much .... on the floor. Watch out ! (Abu Qir - Alexandria 2022)
   a. colours b. water c. toys d. people

2. Don't put .... butter in the pan. (Nasser - Beni Suef 2020)
   a. enough b. too much c. many d. some
3. WB There are too many people and not .... chairs. (Bab El Sharia - Cairo 2022)
   a. much b. any c. enough d. some
4. SB Fruit juice has got a lot of sugar, so we shouldn't drink .... of it. (Multidisciplinary - Gharbia 2021)
   a. too much b. too many c. many d. enough
5. There's .... rice for you all. (El Agami - Alex. 2020)
   a. many b. any c. lot d. enough
6. WB I don't like this tea. There is too .... sugar in it.
   a. a lot b. many c. much d. some

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. We have got .... potatoes in our farm.
   a. too much b. much c. too many d. a lot
8. There is .... milk in the bottle.
   a. many b. too many c. enough d. a lot
9. We'd like to have .... hummus with kofta.
   a. many b. too many c. a lot d. a lot of

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. SB There is a lot sugar. (Basyoun - Gharbia 2022) (........)
2. Mum makes many ice cream for all of us. (Al Nubaria - El Beheira 2022) (........)
3. There are enough people on this beach. Let's go to a different one. (West Tanta - Gharbia 2020) (........)
4. SB There isn't too many milk. (........)
5. WB Mrs Amal has too much friends. (........)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. There isn't too many tomatoes. (........)
7. There are too much apples. (........)

General Exercises  LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. There are a lot of rice pudding .... online.
   a. recipes b. books c. ingredients d. instructions
2. There is enough rice pudding for the whole ....
   a. girls b. family c. boys d. teachers
3. There is a lot of .... in the recipe.
   a. cinnamon b. nuts c. milk d. sugar
4. I like sweet ....
   a. raisins b. cinnamon c. food d. milk

(West Tanta - Gharbia 2020)

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Mona and Hend are making lunch.

Mona : I'm hungry. Let's make lunch.

Hend : (1) .... There is some salad. (2) .... ?

Mona : No, there isn't any hummus, but there are some olives.

Hend : There are some peppers, too.

Mona : Good. Is there any cheese ?

Hend : (3) ....

Mona : What about figs ? Are there any figs ?

Hend : (4) ....

Mona : (5) .... ?

Hend : Yes, there are a lot of raisins.

(Beni Mazar-Menia 2020)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The ship sank as there were .... people on it. *(North Giza-Giza 2022)*
   a. enough b. much c. a lot d. too many
2. "Slow" is the opposite of " .... ".
   a. flat b. modern c. quick d. terrible

3. WB To .... is to move around ingredients, sugar, etc. with a spoon.
   a. add b. cook c. stir d. bring
4. Put the food in the .... to be cool.
   a. fridge b. heater c. cooker d. oven
5. WB There .... any olives at the market today.
   a. isn't b. aren't c. is d. are
6. WB We don't need to share because there is .... rice for everyone.
   a. enough b. too many c. many d. a lot
7. You can have .... after your meal as a dessert.
   a. cinnamon b. rice pudding c. olives d. beans
8. You can put the raisins, ... and nuts on top of rice pudding.
   a. olives b. saucepan c. cinnamon d. salad
9. The main .... of salad are tomatoes, cucumbers and onions.
   a. kinds b. types c. ingredients d. colours
10. A .... means a set of instructions for cooking food.
    a. bill b. ball c. hill d. recipe

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB Are there any biscuits ? - No, there <u>isn't</u>. (..........)
2. There is <u>many</u> water in the jug. (..........)
3. <u>Are</u> there any cinnamon in this recipe ? (..........)
4. SB No, there aren't <u>some</u> figs. (..........)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Rice pudding"

....

....

....

....

....

....

LESSONS **3 & 4**

SB pages 58 - 60 WB pages 111 & 112



1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

fizzy drinks (n)	مشروبات غازية	snack (n)	وجبة خفيفة
taste (d) (v) (n)	يتذوق / طعم	cooking pot (n)	وعاء الطبخ
teeth (n)	أسنان	dinner time (n)	وقت العشاء
meal (n)	وجبة	tagine (n)	طاجن (أكلة فى دولة المغرب)
onions (n)	بصل	pasta (n)	مكرونة
chocolate (n)	شيكولاتة	vegetables (n)	خضروات

تنويه
- **Key Vocabulary** هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- قاموس المعاصر اللغوى لاتقان المفردات اللغوية.
- استعد للاختبار الاملاء **Dictation** ملحق **Master your term**.

5 min Pop Quiz تدريب يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Step 1 Read key Vocabulary — الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ المفردات اللغوية المدورية

Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary — الخطوة الثانية : تدرب على المفردات اللغوية

* يقوم الطالب باداء تدريب تلقائى على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها.

⊙ Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

meals - fizzy drinks - snacks - tagine - pasta

1. Drinking fruit juice is more healthy than drinking ....
2. People like to eat .... when they go to the cinema.
3. Koshari includes rice and ....
4. We have three .... a day : breakfast, lunch and dinner.

Lesson 3
SB pages 58 & 59 WB page 111

fat (n)	دهون	type (n)	نوع
weight (n)	وزن	illness (n)	مرض
diagram (n)	رسم توضيحى		

Lesson 4
SB page 60 WB page 112

traditional (adj)	تقليدى	amazing (adj)	رائع / مذهل
nyama na irio	(نياما نايرو) طبق لحم مع بطاطس مطهى على نار هادئة	shepherd's pie	فطيرة الراعى لحم بالخضار والبطاطس (إنجلترا)
kapenta	(كابنتا) طبق أسماك مشهور فى زيمبابوى	dry (ied) (v)	يجفف
		Zimbabwe (n)	دولة زيمبابوى
stew (n)	الطهى على نار هادئة / طاجن لحم مع خضار	spices (n)	توابل

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
bad for	ضار لـ	good for	مفيد لـ
careful	حريص	careless	مهمل
hungry	جائع	full up	شبعان

تنويه هذه التعريفات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات وقاموس التعريفات (glossary) فى نهاية كتاب التدريبات.

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

bean	a long, narrow green vegetable that you usually eat cooked	فول
cake	a sweet food that you bake in the oven	كعك (كيك)
carrot	a long, narrow, orange vegetable that grows in the ground	جزر
chocolate	a sweet food that is made from cocoa beans	شيكولاتة
fat	natural oil in food	دهون
fizzy drinks	a drink that has bubbles فقاعات and a lot of sugar	مشروبات غازية
fruit juice	the liquid from a fruit that you can drink	عصير فاكهة
salt	a natural, white ingredient that can come from the sea, it makes food taste better	ملح
snack	a small amount of food that you eat between meals	وجبة خفيفة
spices	parts of a plant that you can put in food to give it a special taste	توابل
stew	a meal made with meat and vegetables in one pot	طاجن لحم مع خضار
vegetable	a plant you can eat e.g. a carrot	خضار

General Notes on Reading and Listening

1 everyone + فعل مفرد

ex.: - Everyone loves snacks. They love eating the snacks between meals.

ولكن لاحظ عند التعويض عليها بضمير نستخدم ضمير الجمع (they) وفعل جمع وفعل مفرد (He or She).

Reading on lesson 3 SB page 58

2 enjoy / like / love + (inf. + ing) / noun

يتبع هذه الافعال (inf + ing) أو اسم

ex.: - I enjoy eating healthy snacks.
- I love snacks.

Reading on lesson 4 SB page 60

3 a piece of / pieces of + uncountable noun

ex.: - I want a piece of bread.
- I eat four pieces of fruit a day.

Reading on lesson 3 SB page 58

4 fruit + فعل مفرد

ex.: SB Fruit is a great snack.

Reading on lesson 3 SB page 58

5 stew (n/v)

- stew (n) طعام مطهو على نار هادئة/طاجن لحم بالخضار

ex.: Tagine is a stew with meat, vegetables and spices.

- stew (v) يطهو على نار هادئة

ex.: I left the meat to stew.

Reading on lesson 4 SB page 60

6 need to = should يجب

ex.: SB You need to have healthy foods that help your body to grow.

Reading on lesson 3 SB page 59

7 catch معاني مختلفة للفعل

catch fish يصطاد سمك
catch a ball يمسك كرة
catch a thief يقبض على لص
catch a bus يلحق بالاتوبيس

Reading on lesson 4 SB page 60

8 taste

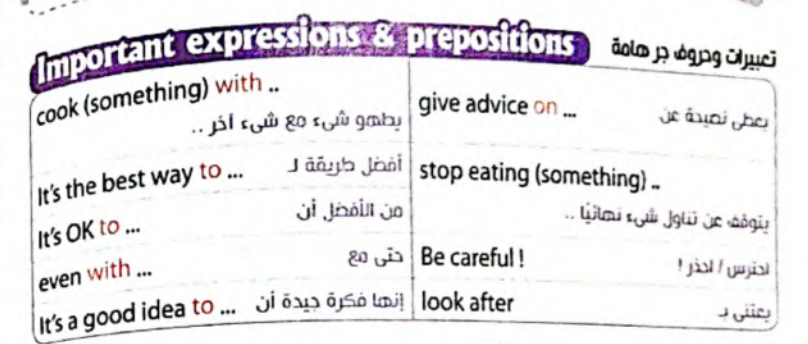
- taste (v) (n) يتذوق / مذاق

ex.: - I taste with my tongue.
- The taste of koshari is amazing.

- taste + (adj) طعمه / مذاقه

ex.: Koshari tastes delicious.

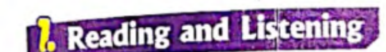
SB page 58 & 60



Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

cook (something) with ..	يطهو شيء مع شيء آخر ..	give advice on ...	يعطي نصيحة عن
It's the best way to ...	أفضل طريقة لـ	stop eating (something) ..	يتوقف عن تناول شيء نهائيًا ..
It's OK to ...	من الأفضل أن		
even with ...	حتى مع	Be careful!	احترس / احذر!
It's a good idea to ...	إنها فكرة جيدة أن	look after	يعتني بـ

II Skills



1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz تدرب على ٣٧ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع



Listening

on Lesson 4 WB page 112

Boy 1 : In England, people often have a traditional meal called shepherd's pie. You make it with meat, carrots and other vegetables with potatoes on top. It is wonderful. My favourite meal is shepherd's pie, and then chocolate ice cream!

• on Lesson 3 SB page 59



Presenter : It's important to eat the right[1] things, but we shouldn't forget[2] about what we drink. Dr Randa Zaki is here to tell us more. Dr Randa, what should we drink ?

Dr Randa : Well, we should drink a lot of water. Water is great[3] because it hasn't got any fat[4] or sugar.

Presenter : OK, so we should drink more water. And which drinks are bad for us ?

Dr Randa : Some drinks have a lot of sugar. We shouldn't drink these because they are bad for our bodies and they are bad for our teeth.

Presenter : So we shouldn't have drinks with a lot of sugar. Some fizzy drinks[5] don't have any sugar. Are they OK ?

Dr Randa : No, fizzy drinks are always bad for our teeth, even when they don't have sugar.

Presenter : So we shouldn't have fizzy drinks. Are there any drinks good for our teeth ?

Dr Randa : Yes, milk is good for our teeth. We should try[6] to drink a glass of milk every day.

Check Vocabulary

(1) صحيح / مناسب
(2) ينسى
(3) رائع / عظيم
(4) دهن
(5) مشروبات غازية
(6) يحاول

Listening skill

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

• .... hasn't got any fat or sugar.

a. Fizzy drink b. Milk c. Water d. Juice



• on Lesson 3 SB page 58

Healthy Snacks[1]

Everyone loves snacks! But some snacks are bad for[2] us. What is the best way[3] to enjoy healthy snacks ?

Crisps and cakes



It is OK to eat crisps and cakes sometimes, but you should not eat too many of them.

Important Expressions & Prepositions

(1) وجبات خفيفة صحية | (2) ضار لـ | (3) أفضل طريقة

Crisps have a lot of fat and salt. Cakes, chocolate and biscuits have a lot of fat and sugar. Too much of this type of[4] food is bad for our bodies.

Fantastic fruit

Fruit is a great snack! It is very good for[5] us and most people like the sweet taste. You should eat between two and four pieces of[6] fruit a day[7].

Beans and vegetables

Beans and vegetables do not have much sugar or fat. They are very good for us, so we should eat a lot of them. Snacks like[8] hummus with carrot and pepper are delicious.

Be careful!

We should be careful[9], even with healthy foods. Fruit juice has got a lot of sugar so we should not drink too much of it. Olives, meat and fish sometimes have a lot of salt.

Important Expressions & prepositions

(4) نوع من | (5) مفيد لـ | (6) قطع من | (7) في اليوم الواحد | (8) مثل | (9) كن حذرًا

• on Lesson 4 SB page 60

Food in Africa

Egypt has a lot of interesting food, but my favourite meal is koshari. It is a delicious meal with rice, pasta and tomatoes. It is very popular. Many people like it.

Marwa

I live in Morocco[1]. Tagine[2] is a traditional meal from my country. It is a stew with meat, vegetables, fruit and spices. The taste is amazing! The name tagine comes from the cooking pot for this food.

Hamza



In Kenya, people often make nyama na irio for dinner. It is a stew with meat and potatoes[3]. It is wonderful! I love eating it after school when I am very hungry!

Makena

Check Vocabulary

(1) دولة المغرب | (2) طاجن | (3) طاجن من البطاطس واللحم يطهى على نار هادئة

Kapenta[4] is a popular[5] type of fish in Zimbabwe. We catch the fish from the lake and dry it in the sun. Kapenta is very good for you, so you can eat it every day. We often cook it with tomatoes and onions[6]. It is great!

Bradley





(4) كابينتا اكلة سمك في زيمبابوى
(5) شعبى / محبوب
(6) بصل

Answer the following questions :

- Giving the main idea إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

Learn 1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

"Food in Africa"

- Extracting information إستخراج المعلومات

Practise 2. What is the traditional meal in Morocco ?

....

Videoscript Lesson 3 SB page 58

Narrator : What did you eat for lunch today ? Did you eat some falafel[1] or a chicken salad[2] ?

Or perhaps you enjoyed some delicious[3] meat and rice.

And what did you drink ? Maybe you had some water, a cup of tea or some nice orange juice.

The food that we eat today is similar to[4] the food that the ancient Egyptians[5] ate a long time ago. The ancient Egyptians ate a lot of bread. In fact, people believe[6] that the ancient Egyptians made the first bread in the world.

The ancient Egyptians used the land[7] near the River Nile[8] to grow[9] a lot of different fruit and vegetables.

They also grew enough wheat[10] to make bread. Bread was a very important food in ancient Egypt.

Check Vocabulary

(1) طعمية	(2) سلطة دجاج	(3) لذيذ	(4) مشابه لـ	(5) قدماء المصريين
(6) يعتقد	(7) أرض	(8) نهر النيل	(9) يزرع	(10) قمح

Scientists found some bread in the tomb[11] of Mentuhotep the Second in Luxor. It was 4,000 years old !

Pharaohs[12] and other important people ate bread with a lot of fruit, such as figs and dates[13]. They also had it with honey[14]. Bread is still important today. From this bread in Egypt today to bagels[15] in the USA and baguettes[16] in France, people all around the world love it at all times of the day.

Check Vocabulary

(11) مقبرة	(12) الفراعنة	(13) بلح	(14) عسل	(15) نوع من الخبز على شكل دوائر	(16) خبز فرنساوى

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. The chef should .... the food before serving it to the customers.
   a. weigh b. advise c. taste d. stick
2. She went to the dentist to check her ....
   a. fingers b. teeth c. bones d. senses
3. .... is a type of vegetables that has a strong smell.
   a. Potato b. Carrot c. Bean d. Onion
4. Tagine is the name of a .... and a cooking pot in Morocco.
   a. mile b. dress c. drink d. meal

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

5. People .... dates to keep it for a long time.
   a. taste b. dry c. bake d. fire
6. We should be careful, even with .... foods.
   a. healthy b. unhealthy c. fast d. bad
7. .... give food a delicious taste.
   a. Cultures b. Spices c. Reviews d. Spaces
8. SB Kapenta is a .... of fish in Zimbabwe.
   a. colour b. tape c. type d. size

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. Tagine includes meat in it. It's a .... meal in Morocco.
   a. modern b. traditional c. careful d. interesting
10. Koshari doesn't contain ...., but it's a very delicious meal.
   a. pasta b. tomatoes c. meat d. rice
11. Our science teacher drew a .... on the board to show the experiment.
   a. sheep b. dog c. diagram d. river

Definitions

12. .... is a sweet food that is made from cocoa beans.
   a. Cake b. Juice c. Jam d. Chocolate
13. .... is a natural, white ingredient that can come from the sea.
   a. Sugar b. Pepper c. Salt d. Spices

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. Eating healthy food is the best .... to be fit.
   a. road b. form c. way d. shape
15. You should .... after your teeth and don't eat much chocolate.
   a. make b. take c. look d. give
16. You should .... eating fast food.
   a. stop b. drop c. fall d. drive

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

1. Asking and answering about good and bad snacks

توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن الوجبات الخفيفة الجيدة والضارة

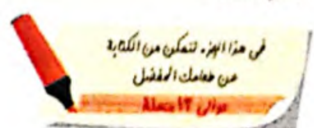
Questions 	Answers 
• Which snacks do you eat ? - ما الوجبات الخفيفة التى تتناولها ؟	- I eat biscuits and crisps. اتناول البسكويت والمقرمشات.
• Which snacks are good for you ? - أى من الوجبات الخفيفة مفيدة لك ؟	- Fruits are good for me. الفواكه مفيدة لى.
• Which snacks are bad for you ? - أى من الوجبات الخفيفة ضارة بك ؟	- Chocolate and biscuits are bad for me. الشيكولاتة والبسكويت أطعمة ضارة بى.

2. A discussion about your favourite food مناقشة عن طعامك المفضل

Questions 	Answers 
• What is your favourite food ? - ما هو طعامك المفضل ؟	- My favourite food is Koshari. طعامى المفضل هو أكلة الكشرى.
• What is in it ? - ماذا يوجد فى هذه الأكلة ؟	- There is rice, pasta, lentils and tomatoes. يوجد بها أرز ومكرونة وعدس وطماطم.
• How can you describe it ? - كيف يمكنك وصفها ؟	- It is a delicious meal and it is very popular in Egypt. انها وجبة لذيذة ومشهورة جدًا فى مصر.

3. Writing مهارة الكتابة

"Your favourite food"
طعامك المفضل



1. My favourite food is .... . — طعامى المفضل هو ....
2. It is a delicious meal with ... and ... . — انها وجبة لذيذة بها ... و ....
3. It is from ... . — انها ترجع إلى بلد ...
4. Its ingredients are ... and ... . — مكوناتها هى ...
5. It is a type of ... . — انها نوع من ... من أنواع الطعام.
6. It doesn't have ... in it. — لا يوجد بها ...
7. Many people like it in ... . — الكثير من الأشخاص يحبون تناولها فى ....
8. I often eat it with ... and ... . — غالبا ما اتناولها مع ... و ...
9. It is very popular in ... . — انها وجبة مشهورة جدًا فى (بلد) ...
10. It is very good for you, so you can eat it every day. — انها مفيدة جدا لك. لذا يمكنك تناولها كل يوم.
11. We often cook it with ... and ... . — نقوم بطهيها غالبا مع ... و ...

12. It is a healthy meal. إنها وجبة صحية
13. Its taste is amazing. مذاقها رائع

III Language

Giving advice using "should & shouldn't"

إعطاء النصيحة باستخدام (should & shouldn't) بمعنى ينبغى أن / لا ينبغى أن
تستخدم الصيغ التالية لإعطاء النصيحة.

should → Subject (الفاعل) + should + inf. ..... (المصدر)

ينبغى أن «تستخدم للنصح بفعل شىء جيد أو مفيد»

ex. You should eat a lot of fruit and vegetables.

shouldn't → Subject (الفاعل) + shouldn't + inf. ..... (المصدر)

لا ينبغى أن «تستخدم للنصح بعدم فعل شىء غير جيد أو غير مفيد»

ex. You shouldn't eat too many crisps and cakes.

Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

Yes / No question

Should + subject (الفاعل) + inf. .... ? (المصدر)

ex. Should we eat lots of fish ?
- Yes, you should.
- No, you shouldn't.

Wh-question

Question word + should + subject (الفاعل) + inf. .... ? (المصدر)

ex. What should I eat ?
- You should eat fruits and vegetables.

Stop here ! on Language (Answered & Explained)

فى هذا الجزء نقدم للطالب تدريب على القاعدة اللغوية مجاب عله ومصحوب بشرح أسباب اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. This dress fits you. You .... it.
   a. bought b. shouldn't buy c. should buy d. buying
2. You .... forget your password.
   a. should b. must c. haven't d. shouldn't
3. .... I buy a flower or chocolate for mum ?
   a. Had b. Should c. Have d. Am
4. Where should we .... tomorrow for the training ?
   a. to meet b. met c. meet d. meeting

No.	Answer + Explanation الإجابة والتوضيح	
1	c	الإجابة (should buy) لأن الجملة تعبر عن نصيحة بفعل شئ يستخدم (should + inf)
2	d	الإجابة (shouldn't) لأن الجملة تعبر عن نصيحة بعدم فعل شئ ما.
3	b	الإجابة (Should) لأن السؤال يعبر عن طلب نصيحة والفعل (buy) فى المصدر.
4	c	الإجابة (meet) لأن الفعل (should) يأتى بعده الفعل فى المصدر.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. WB The pan is very hot. You .... touch it. (Shorouk - Cairo 2022)
   a. shouldn't b. can c. haven't d. should

2. You ...... help the poor. (Abou Homos - Beheira 2020)
   a. should b. shouldn't c. couldn't d. shall
3. We ...... have drinks with a lot of sugar. (El Sheikh Zowayed North Sinai 2020)
   a. should b. shouldn't c. must d. have to
4. You should ...... your password secret. (Rasheed - Beheira 2020)
   a. keep b. keeps c. keeping d. kept
5. SB We ...... drink a glass of milk every day. (Multidisciplinary - Sharkia 2021)
   a. shouldn't b. can't c. mustn't d. should
6. You should ...... a lot of fruit and vegetables. (Matai - Menia 2020)
   a. eat b. ate c. to eat d. eating
7. Should I ...... or study first ? (Beni-Mazar - Menia 2022)
   a. trains b. training c. trained d. train
8. You shouldn't ...... much coffee. (Port Said - East 2022)
   a. to drink b. drink to c. drink d. drank

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. What should I ...... to get high marks ?
   a. do b. did c. does d. done
10. When it is windy, you ...... go out.
   a. should b. must c. shouldn't d. might

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. Why should I following the school rules ? (October - Giza 2022) (......)
2. You should to clean your teeth before sleeping. (Port Said 2020) (......)
3. You should eat too much chocolate. (Al Azhar - the East area 2020) (......)
4. WB You shouldn't eating snacks in the class. (......)
5. SB You should have fizzy drinks. (......)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. You shouldn't look after your health. (......)
7. They should were careful when they cross the road. (......)

General Exercises



LESSONS 3 & 4

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Heba and her mother are talking about healthy and unhealthy snacks.

Mother : What are you eating, Heba ?
Heba : I'm eating (1) ....
Mother : But they're not (2) .... for your teeth.
Heba : But I like sweets, mum.
Mother : I know, but you shouldn't eat too many sweets.
Heba : (3) ...., mum ?
Mother : Because they have too much (4) ....
Heba : What (5) .... I eat ?
Mother : You should eat fruits and vegetables.
Heba : OK, I'll have an apple. (West Zagazig Sharkia 2020)

2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

The food that we eat today is **similar** to the food that the ancient Egyptians ate a long time ago. The ancient Egyptians ate a lot of bread. In fact, people believe that the ancient Egyptians made the first bread in the world. The ancient Egyptians used the land near the Nile to grow a lot of different fruits and vegetables. They also grew enough wheat to make bread. Bread was a very important food in ancient Egypt. Scientists found some bread in the tomb of Mentuhotep the Second in Luxor. It was four thousand years old. Pharaohs and other important people ate bread with a lot of fruit such as figs and dates. They also had **it** with honey. Bread is still important today. (El Saf - Giza 2020)

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is this passage about ?
....
2. Who made the first bread in the world ?
....
3. What do you think of the ancient Egyptians ?
....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....
   a. date b. fruit c. bread d. honey
5. The bread in the tomb was ...... years old.
   a. 40000 b. 4000 c. 400 d. 1400

6. The opposite of the underlined word "similar" is ....
 a. different b. small c. difficult d. enough

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Bad food brings terrible ....
 a. happiness b. money c. illness d. joy
2. Vegetables are good .... your health.
 a. for b. at c. of d. in
3. You should be .... about what you drink and eat.
 a. helpful b. careful c. useful d. beautiful
4. WB You should always .... your teeth before you go to bed.
 a. cleans b. cleaned c. clean d. cleaning
5. They often .... kapenta in Zimbabwe with tomatoes and onions.
 a. describe b. taste c. catch d. cook
6. We can .... with our tongues.
 a. smell b. taste c. touch d. look
7. SB We .... eat too much cake. It has too much sugar in it.
 a. should b. shouldn't c. must d. can
8. To .... means to cook something slowly in a liquid.
 a. bake b. throw c. stew d. roast
9. To be ...., what should I do ?
 a. fit b. fat c. thirsty d. hungry
10. Rice, pasta and tomatoes are the main .... of koshari.
 a. recipes b. ingredients c. members d. fans

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. You shouldn't eat healthy snacks. (............)
2. We should have fizzy drinks. (............)
3. You shouldn't plays in busy roads. (............)
4. Hurry up to catching the bus. (............)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : يجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Your favourite dish"

....

....

....

....

LESSONS 5 & 6

SB pages 61 & 62 WB pages 113 & 114

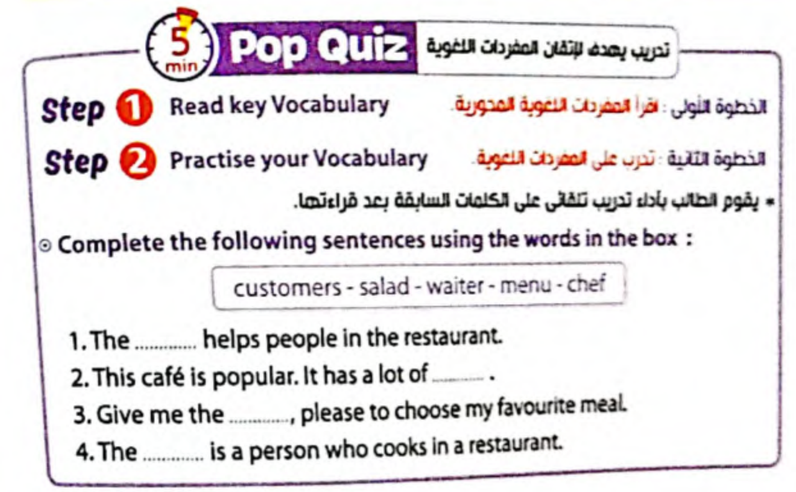


1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

menu (n)	قائمة طعام	customer (n)	زبون
pounds (n)	جنيهات	large salad (n)	سلطة حجم كبير
chef (n)	رئيس طهاة	waiter (n)	جرسون

تنويه
- Key Vocabulary هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- قاموس المعاصر اللغوى لاتقان المفردات اللغوية.
- استعد للاختبار الاملاء ملحق Master your term Dictation.



5 min **Pop Quiz** تدريب يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Step 1 Read key Vocabulary — الخطوة الأولى : اقرأ المفردات اللغوية المحورية

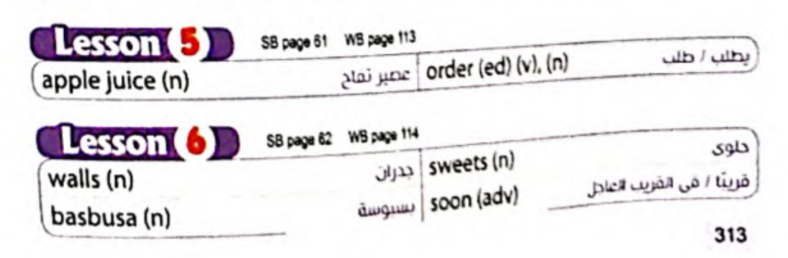
Step 2 Practise your Vocabulary — الخطوة الثانية : تدرب على المفردات اللغوية

- يقوم الطالب بأداء تدريب تلقائى على الكلمات السابقة بعد قراءتها.

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

customers - salad - waiter - menu - chef

1. The .... helps people in the restaurant.
2. This café is popular. It has a lot of ....
3. Give me the ...., please to choose my favourite meal.
4. The .... is a person who cooks in a restaurant.



Lesson 5 SB page 61 WB page 113

apple juice (n)	عصير تفاح	order (ed) (v), (n)	يطلب / طلب

Lesson 6 SB page 62 WB page 114

walls (n)	جدران	sweets (n)	حلوى
basbusa (n)	بسبوسة	soon (adv)	قريبًا / في القريب العاجل

kunafa (n)	كنافة	include (d) (v)	يشمل / يتضمن
weekend (n)	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	details (n)	تفاصيل
fresh (adj)	طازج	support (ed)(v)	يدعم / يساند
hope (d) (v)	يأمل / يتمنى	reasons (n)	أسباب / مبررات

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
cost	يتكلف	cost	cost
grow	ينمو / يكبر	grew	grown
leave	يغادر	left	left

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
much	كثير (للكمية)	little	قليل (للكمية)
many	كثير (للعدد)	few	قليل (للعدد)
real	حقيقى / واقعى	unreal	غير حقيقى / غير واقعى

General Notes on Reading and Listening

1 'd like / 'd love / 'd prefer ⟶ (to + inf.) يود / يرغب فى

ex.: - What would you like to have ?
- I'd prefer to have cheese pizza.

• I'd like some + noun.

ex.: - I'd like some chicken pizza.

Listening on lesson 5 SB page 61

2 meal - snack

• meal (lunch وجبة الغداء dinner وجبة العشاء breakfast وجبة الإفطار) وجبة رئيسية

ex.: I always have a meal with my family in the evening.

• snack وجبة خفيفة (بين الوجبات)

ex.: We can buy a snack from this restaurant.

Reading on lesson 6 WB page 114

3 café / coffee

• café مقهى (المكان)

ex.: - Ayman always sits at this café to have his morning tea.

• coffee القهوة (المشروب)

ex.: Ashraf never drinks coffee. It makes him awake all the time.

Reading on lesson 6 SB page 62

4 menu / list

• menu قائمة الطعام

ex.: The waiter brought us the menu to choose the food we'd like to eat.

• list قائمة أشياء أو أسماء

ex.: Write the things you need in a list before going shopping.

WB page 113 – SB page 63

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

look very nice	تبدو لطيفة جدًا	have fish with rice	يتناول السمك مع الأرز
look out of the window	ينظر من الشباك	come to	يصل إلى
the part we enjoyed most	الجزء الذى استمتعنا به كثيرًا	different than usual	مختلف عن المعتاد
		go back to	يعود إلى
Here you are.	تفضل.	see a doctor	يزور الطبيب
make sure	يتأكد		



1. Reading and Listening

تدرب على ٣٧ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع Pop Quiz



• on Lesson 5 SB page 61

Assistant : Hello. What would you like today ?
Customer : I'd like a cheese and tomato pizza, please.
Assistant : OK. Anything else ?
Customer : Yes, a salad, please.



Assistant : Small or large ?
Customer : Small, please.
Assistant : And would you like any drinks ?
Customer : Have you got any fruit juice ?
Assistant : Yes, we've got apple juice and orange juice.
Customer : I'd like an orange juice, please.
Assistant : Is that everything ?
Customer : Yes, it is.
Assistant : That's 105 pounds, please.
Customer : Thank you, here you are.

Listening skill

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The customer has got .... juice.

a. apple b. pineapple c. strawberry d. orange



on Lesson 5 WB page 113

Waiter : Hello. What would you like today ?
You : Hello. Have you got any pizza ?
Waiter : Yes. Small or large ?
You : Large, please.
Waiter : What would you like to drink ?
You : I'd like some cola, please.
Waiter : Anything else ?
You : No, thank you. How much are these ?
Waiter : That's thirty pounds, please.
You : Thank you, here you are.

on Lesson 6 SB page 62

City Café

Great visit ! ***

Review by : Sara

I visited this café last weekend with my mum, my dad and my brother, Ashraf. We chose this café for lunch[1] because it looked very nice[2]. The walls were green and white and there were big windows. (I love looking out of[3] the window and watching the city).

Ashraf and I both had rice for lunch. I had fish with rice and he had chicken. My dad had fish with rice, too, and mum had a salad. It's very healthy ! We all liked our food.

After lunch, Ashraf and I had desserts. This was the part we enjoyed most! There were a lot of different desserts and they all looked delicious! I chose basbousa and Ashraf had kunafa. They were amazing!!!

I'd like to visit this café again (very soon)!

Important Expressions & Prepositions

(1) على وجبة الغداء | (2) يبدو لطيف جدًا | (3) ينظر من

on Lesson 6 WB page 114



1. I want to write about an amazing meal I remember. I visited my cousins in Damietta last summer with my dad, mother and sister. They took us to a café for lunch. It was near the beach and it had big windows. (It was wonderful watching the boats on the water.)



2. I had my favourite meal, koshari. I love koshari but this was different than usual. It was delicious. My family and cousins all had fish from the sea! We all liked our food.



3. We then all had Egyptian Rice Pudding. There was not a lot of sugar in this recipe and it was not too sweet or unhealthy.
4. It was a wonderful meal and I would like to visit this café again (one day)!

Answer the following questions :

- Giving the main idea إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية
Learn 1. Give a suitable title for this passage.
- An amazing meal in Damietta.
- Critical thinking skill مهارة التفكير النقدي
Practise 2. Do you think they had healthy dessert ? Why / Why not ?
....

on Lesson 6 WB page 114

A meal which I always remember is fish and rice at a great restaurant in Alexandria. I went there with my family. The restaurant was very near the sea so the fish was very fresh. We chose the fish and the chef cooked it for us. My parents ate their favourite fish and my brother enjoyed watching the boats on the sea. I hope we can go back to the restaurant again soon.

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. The currency in Egypt is the ....
a. dollar b. pound c. euro d. dinar
2. The .... is a person who cooks in a restaurant.
a. customer b. assistant c. chef d. waiter
3. There are different dishes on the .... in this restaurant.
a. menu b. list c. recipe d. ingredients
4. Our .... enjoy having our different kinds of pizza every day.
a. waiters b. pupils c. customers d. patients

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

5. They built high .... around the garden to keep plants safe.
a. wars b. weeds c. walls d. ways
(Khanka - Qalyubia 2022)
6. First, look at the .... then choose your dish. (El Riad - Kafr El Sheikh 2020)
a. foot b. menu c. meat d. plate
7. SB We stayed on the .... and enjoyed the sea.
(Multidisciplinary - Cairo 2021)
a. beach b. desert c. moon d. valley
8. WB A .... which I always remember is fish and rice.
a. mail b. mile c. meal d. male
9. I like to drink .... juice. I don't like soda. (Benha - Qalyoubia 2022)
a. large b. quick c. real d. fresh

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

10. You should .... the topic sentence with other sentences in a paragraph.
a. stop b. support c. forget d. hope
11. **A :** Are you ready to .... , sir ? **B :** Yes, I'd like chicken pizza.
a. cook b. order c. cut d. sell
12. I eat a lot of olives because they are .... for me.
a. bad b. unhealthy c. good d. ugly

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. I'd like .... to music and read a book.
a. to listen b. listen c. listening d. listens
14. We had fish .... rice for lunch yesterday.
a. in b. of c. for d. with
15. Children should be careful and not to look .... low windows.
a. of b. out c. out of d. away from
16. The .... we enjoyed most of our picnic is the open air.
a. port b. pound c. part d. party

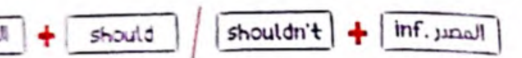


مهارة التحدث

▸ 1. Ordering food in a café — طلب طعام فى كافتيريا

Waiter جرسون	Customer زبون
• What would you like to have ? ماذا تحب أن تتناول ؟	- I'd like to have + (اسم طعام / مشروب) أرغب فى تناول ......
- We've got .... لدينا ...... - Here you are. تفضل	• Have you got any .... ? هل يوجد لديكم أى .... ؟
• Anything else ? هل تريد شيئاً آخر ؟	- Yes, I'd like some meat. نعم أود بعض من اللحم ....
• That's + رقم + pounds. إنها تباع ...... جنيهات	- No, thanks. لا شكراً لك - How much does it cost ? كم الثمن ؟

▸ 2. Giving advice — إعطاء النصيحة

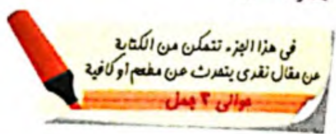


ex.: - You should eat a lot of fruit and vegetables.
- يجب عليك تناول الكثير من الفواكه والخضروات.
- You shouldn't eat too many crisps and cakes.
- لا يجب أن تتناول كميات كبيرة من المقرمشات والكيك.



مهارة الكتابة

"A review of a café"
مقال نقدى عن مطعم



1. I visited a café yesterday. لقد زرت مطعم أمس.
2. I went there with my mum, dad and my brother. ذهبت لهناك مع أمى وأبى وأخى.
3. We chose this café for lunch because it looked nice.
قمنا باختيار هذا المطعم لتناول وجبة الغداء لأنه كان يبدو جميلاً.

General Exercises On LESSONS 5 & 6

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. When did they visit the café ?
   a. Last week b. Last month c. Last year d. Last weekend
2. The writer visited the café with his ....
   a. cousins b. friends c. family d. uncle
3. They had .... in this café.
   a. snack b. lunch c. dinner d. breakfast
4. The .... were green and white.
   a. doors b. windows c. walls d. tables

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed is at a restaurant.

Waiter : Hello. What would you like today ?
Ahmed : Hello. (1) .... you got any pizzas ?
Waiter : Yes, small or large ?
Ahmed : (2) .... , please. I am not very hungry.
Waiter : (3) .... would you like to drink ?
Ahmed : I'd like some orange (4) .... , please.
Waiter : Anything else ?
Ahmed : No, thank you. How much are these ?
Waiter : That's 50 (5) .... , please.
Ahmed : Thank you. Here you are.

(Cairo - Sharkia 2020)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. She'd prefer .... tennis.
   a. playing b. play c. plays d. to play
2. You should .... sure before you tell this information.
   a. take b. have c. make d. look

3. Fruit juice has got .... sugar in it.
   a. many　b. too many　c. a lot　d. too much
4. You .... follow the traffic rules.
   a. shouldn't　b. should　c. mustn't　d. can't
5. What would you like to .... ? - I want fish and rice.
   a. make　b. stick　c. have　d. teach
6. We went to a new .... to have a drink yesterday.
   a. café　b. coffee　c. pool　d. island
7. A .... works in a hotel or a restaurant.
   a. chief　b. chef　c. chair　d. cooker
8. If you are ill, you should .... a doctor.
   a. see　b. go　c. deal　d. drive
9. Children should be .... and don't look out of low windows.
   a. careless　b. careful　c. unhealthy　d. bored
10. The boy .... like his brother. They are twins.
   a. makes　b. bakes　c. looks　d. takes

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. What should she did to keep healthy ? (..........)
2. WB You should to clean your teeth in the morning. (..........)
3. The class has got too much pupils. (..........)
4. We shouldn't eat fruit and vegetables. (..........)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : إجابة مثالية في نهاية الكتاب

"A visit to a café"

....

....

Review on unit 6

SB page 63　WB page 115

Vocabulary

English	Arabic
olives	زيتون
meat	لحم
nuts	بندق / جوز / مكسرات
teaspoon	ملعقة شاي
fridge	ثلاجة
add	يضيف
boil	يغلي
raisins	زبيب
snack	وجبة خفيفة
healthy	صحي
crisps	مقرمشات
fizzy drinks	مشروبات غازية
hummus	حمص (طحينة)
waiter	جرسون
customer	عميل / زبون
pepper	فلفل
amazing	مدهش
pound	جنيه
menu	قائمة طعام
delicious	لذيذ الطعم
stir	يقلب / يحرك

Language

1. Countable Nouns :
١. الأسماء التي تُعد :

- هي الأسماء التي لها مفرد وجمع.

a potato → potatoes
an ox → oxen

2. Uncountable Nouns :
٢. الأسماء التي لا تُعد :

- هي الأسماء التي ليس لها جمع وتعامل معاملة المفرد أي تأخذ فعل في صيغة المفرد بعدها.
- Meat is my favourite food.

3. some : بعض من
- تستخدم مع الجملة الخبرية المثبتة والسؤال في حالة العرض والطلب.
- I have some books.
- Would you like some tea ?

4. any : أي
- تستخدم مع الجملة الخبرية المنفية والاستفهامية.
- There isn't any juice.
- Are there any pens ?

Speaking

1. " Giving advice using (should / shouldn't)".
إعطاء النصيحة باستخدام (should / shouldn't).
في حالة الإثبات :
- You should do sports every day.
في حالة النفي :
- You shouldn't play in the street.

2. Asking and answering about food :
السؤال والإجابة عن الأطعمة :
- Is there any + (اسم مفرد) ?
- Yes, there's.
- No, there isn't.
ex.: - Is there any cheese ?
Yes, there's.
- Are there any + (اسم جمع)?
- Yes, there are.　- No, there aren't.
ex.: - Are there any olives ?
No, there aren't.

Skills

1 Speaking مهارة التحدث

تعلمه مهارة التحدث مع الآخرين بشكل أساسي على تكوين أسئلة ومعرفة كيفية الرد عليها.

Question السؤال	Answer الإجابة	Usage الاستخدام
What would you like to have for lunch ?	*I'd like to have chicken with rice.*	طلب طعام من المطعم
Do you want some salad ?	*Yes, of course.*	
Anything else ?	*Yes, I'd like some water, please.* *No, thanks.*	
Which snacks are good for you ?	*Fruits and vegetables are good for me.*	السؤال والإجابة عن الأطعمة الجيدة والضارة
Which snacks are bad for you ?	*Chocolate and biscuits are bad for me.*	

2 Writing Skill مهارة الكتابة

عناصر تساعدك على تنظيم أفكارك للقيام بمهارة الكتابة متنوعة بالموضوع.

Let's eat !

Foods	Drinks
snacks / crisps / cakes / chocolates / biscuits / fruits / vegetables	fizzy drinks / water

Healthy	Unhealthy
.... have / has a lot of vitamins.	.... has / have a lot of fat and salt.
.... is good for you.	.... has / have a lot of sugar.
	.... is bad for you.

What to eat and drink	What not to eat or drink
You should eat	You should not eat ....
You should drink	You should not drink ....

Sample

It is important to choose what you eat or drink for your health. Everyone loves snacks and fizzy drinks. There are many kinds of snacks. But not all snacks are healthy. for example crisps and cakes are delicious but eating a lot of them is bad for you. Crisps have a lot of fat and salt. Cakes, chocolates, biscuits and fizzy drinks have a lot of sugar. On the other hand, fruits and vegetables are very good for you. They also have vitamins. Water is great. It has not got any fat or sugar. You should drink more of it. Do not forget that what we eat or drink affect our health.

(يعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على حل سؤال الفقرة الإنشائية في الورقة الامتحانية (٣٣ جملة)

1 "A special meal"

I want to write about an amazing meal I remember.[1] I visited my uncle in Alexandria last week.[2] I went with my dad and mum.[3] It took three hours to get there.[4] My uncle took us to a café by the beach.[5]

It looked amazing.[6] The weather was nice.[7] We were watching the sea while we were having lunch there.[8] The windows of the café were big and colourful.[9] I liked this café.[10] I had my favourite meal, fish.[11] Alexandria is famous for delicious, fresh fish.[12] My family had fish also with rice and salad.[13] We all liked our food.[14] Then I and my cousins had dessert.[15] There were many different desserts.[16] I chose basbousa.[17] It was amazing.[18] I can't forget this meal.[19] I would like to visit this café again.[20]

2 "Healthy drinks"

It's important to choose what you drink for your health.[21] There are unhealthy drinks that aren't good for you.[22] Fizzy drinks are bad for you.[23] They have a lot of sugar.[24] You shouldn't drink them.[25] Water is great.[26] It hasn't got any fat or sugar.[27] You should drink more of it.[28] Milk is also healthy drink.[29] It is good for your teeth.[30] You should try to drink a glass of it daily.[31] Don't forget that what we drink affects our health.[32] Choose the right drink then.[33]

Test on unit 6

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Tagine is a traditional meal in ....
   a. Italy b. Morocco c. Egypt d. Athens
2. Mazen likes ....
   a. koshari b. tagine c. meat d. chicken
3. The taste of tagine is .... !
   a. boring b. amazed c. bored d. amazing
4. The name comes from the cooking .... for this food.
   a. pot b. pan c. plate d. dish

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Rana and Maya are talking about their favourite food.

Rana : What is your favourite food ?
Maya : (1) ....
Rana : Koshari ! Fantastic. (2) .... ?
Maya : They are rice, lentils, tomatoes and pasta.
Rana : (3) .... ?
Maya : Yes, it is very delicious.
Rana : What else do you like ?
Maya : (4) .... What about you ?
Rana : (5) ....
Maya : Wonderful !

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Everyone loves snacks! But some snacks are bad for us. What is the best way to enjoy healthy snacks ?

It is OK to eat crisps and cakes sometimes, but you should not eat too many of them. Crisps have a lot of fat and salt. Cakes, chocolate and biscuits have a lot of fat and sugar. Too much of this type of food is bad for our bodies.

Fruit is a great snack! It is very good for us and most people like its sweet taste. You should eat between two and four pieces of fruit a day. Beans and vegetables do not have much sugar or fat. They are very good for us, so we should eat a lot of **them**. Snacks like hummus with carrot and pepper are **delicious**. We should be careful, even with healthy foods. Fruit juice has got a lot of sugar, so we should not drink too much of it. Olives, meat and fish sometimes have a lot of salt.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the main idea of the passage ?

....

2. What do you think about snacks ?

....

3. How much fruit should you have every day ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined word "**delicious**" is the opposite of ....
 a. terrible b. good c. sweet d. healthy

5. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to ....
 a. cakes b. crisps and cakes
 c. snakes d. beans and vegetables

6. Fish sometimes have ....
 a. a lot of sugar b. a lot of salt
 c. a lot of fat d. a lot of food *(Qena-Deshna 2020)*

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Would you like .... coffee with milk, dad ?
 a. some b. any c. much d. few

2. Egypt is famous for many things .... its delicious food.
 a. answering b. including c. calling d. playing

3. Chocolate and biscuits contain a lot of ....
 a. sugar b. salt c. juice d. spices

4. You .... make noise in the school library.
 a. should b. should have c. shouldn't d. shouldn't have

5. There is an Egyptian food on the ....
 a. list b. menu c. form d. book

6. I went to the Pyramids last week. They are .... !
 a. lazy b. amazing c. healthy d. fizzy

7. There are .... classrooms in our school.
 a. much b. too many c. too much d. a lot

8. Crisps have a lot of .... and salt.
 a. fans b. vans c. fat d. fair

9. A .... is a person who brings food and drinks at a restaurant.
 a. waiter b. doctor c. teacher d. carpenter

10. How much is this book ? - Only 30 ....
 a. eggs b. pounds c. litres d. kilos

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. We don't have **some** fruits in the fridge. (..........)
2. There are too **much** books on the shelves. (..........)
3. How much **is** the book cost ? (..........)
4. You **shouldn't** see the doctor when you are sick. (..........)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A traditional meal in Morocco"

....

Stop here !

1. Mini-Test on unit 6 for Al-Azhar students إختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 **Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues :**

A. Heba : Is there any cheese in rice pudding ?
Adel : ....
B. Samir : .... ?
Ayman : I like nuts.

2 **Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences on :**

"Healthy snacks"

....
....
....
....
....

2. Use your brain, think smart طبق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... is a small, dry grape.
   a. Cinnamon b. Raisin c. Hummus d. Olive
2. Koshari recipe is easy to ....
   a. do b. take c. make d. dry
3. Boil and fry are cooking ....
   a. verbs b. adjectives c. nouns d. adverbs
4. How .... sleep do you have every night ?
   a. enough b. much c. many d. lot
5. Students in Egypt had too .... holidays because of Coronavirus.
   a. much b. many c. enough d. some

Review B



SB pages 64 & 65 WB pages 116 & 117



Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 64

Sham El-Nessim

1 What and when is it ?

Sham El-Nessim is my favourite time of the year. We enjoy it at the start of spring[1]. Sham El-Nessim started in 2700 BCE!

2 What people do

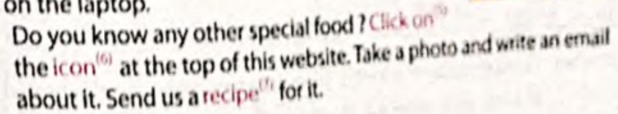
Today, most Egyptians have a picnic in a park or next to the river with their families. Many people also go to the beach, where they make sandcastles and swim in the sea.

3 A recipe

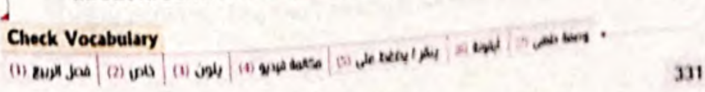
On this day, we eat a lot of special[2] food. Do you want to know how to enjoy feseekh ? Add lemon juice to the fish and have it with salad. It's delicious, but you should buy it from a good shop and you shouldn't eat too much !

4 What I did

Last year at Sham El-Nessim, we went to Alexandria. We visited our family and went to the beach. We rode our bikes and played games. Do you know what we are doing in this photo ? We are painting[3] eggs ! We always do this. We didn't see our cousins last year, but we made a video call[4]. It was fun to talk to them on the laptop.



Do you know any other special food ? Click on[5] the icon[6] at the top of this website. Take a photo and write an email about it. Send us a recipe[7] for it.



Check Vocabulary

(1) فصل الربيع | (2) خاص | (3) يلون | (4) مكالمة فيديو | (5) ينقر / يضغط على | (6) أيقونة | (7) وصفة طهي

- on Lesson 1 WB page 116

Judy's shopping list

Hi Judy,

The family party[1] is on Saturday. There are ten people. Can you help me and buy the shopping ?

Five people like fish. Five people like chicken. The children like fizzy drinks, but they aren't healthy. So, we can have orange juice. Four bottles are enough for the children. We can all drink water, so we need eight bottles. Buy some tea, too, please.

Please go to the shops and then check[2] we have enough chairs.

Many thanks

Mona

Check Vocabulary



- on Lesson 1 WB page 116

Narrator : one

Boy 1 : I have tickets for the new play on Saturday.

Boy 2 : How exciting !

Narrator : two

Man 1 : I'd like a small salad, please.

Man 2 : Is that everything ?

Man 1 : Er, have you got any orange juice ?

Man 2 : Small or large ?

Man 1 : Large, please.

Narrator : three

Woman : First, put water in a kettle. Then, boil the water. Put the hot water in a cup with some hot chocolate. Don't add too much sugar. It isn't healthy.

Narrator : four

Girl : Last summer, we went to the Red Sea. I swam in the sea every day ! It was wonderful.

Narrator : five

Woman : It's very hot today. You should drink a lot of water and you should wear a hat, too !

- on Lesson 2 SB page 65







Narrator : In the UK, many people eat pancakes at the start of spring. How do you make pancakes ?

Put all your ingredients in a bowl, and add two eggs. Stir everything together. Put some butter in a pan. When the butter is hot, you should start cooking your pancakes! Cook each pancake for 2 or 3 minutes on one side. Then cook the other side of the pancake. Eat your pancakes with honey and nuts, or with sugar and lemon juice. Hmm, they are delicious!



GENERAL Revision

Based on Units 4 , 5 & 6

مراجعة عامة على الوحدات (٤ ، ٥ و ٦)

If you got 🔴 , you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد ، قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى فى نهاية كل وحدة.

🔵 ممتاز 🟢 جيد جدا 🟡 جيد 🔴 غير جيد

Mini-Test on Unit 4

1. Complete the following dialogue :

Mohamed and Mona are talking about using technology at school.

Mohammed : Do you use technology at your school ?

Mona : Yes, we do. We use tablets.

Mohammed : Really ? Can you use a tablet ?

Mona : Yes, I (1) ....

Mohammed : Which (2).................... do you use tablets in ?

Mona : All subjects.

Mohammed : Has your class (3).................... a smart board ?

Mona : Yes, it (4).................... .

Mohammed : Do you use mobile phones in class ?

Mona : (5) ...., they aren't allowed.

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. There .... a little water in the bottle.
   a. were b. have c. is d. do
2. .... there any messages ?
   a. Are b. Is c. Have d. Do
3. A .... is smaller than a computer.
   a. club b. sun c. tablet d. desert
4. Computers and mobile phones are examples of ....
   a. technology b. passwords
   c. nature d. video games
5. .... the icon on your mobile phone to open the application.
   a. Clock b. Tap c. Print d. Charge
6. Can you .... me a text message ?
   a. take b. send c. make d. do
7. I'd like to .... a selfie at the top of the Pyramids.
   a. give b. make c. take d. top
8. Ziad has got a new MP3 ....
   a. player b. phone c. tablet d. computer
9. Hany .... his English book now.
   a. reads b. is reading c. reading d. read
10. .... on the icon on your laptop.
    a. Write b. Look c. Click d. Sit

3. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Technology"

....

....

....

If you got 🔴 , you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد ، قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى فى نهاية كل وحدة.

🔵 ممتاز 🟢 جيد جدا 🟡 جيد 🔴 غير جيد

Mini-Test on Unit 5

1. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I .... a wonderful time at the language school.
   a. had b. am c. was d. does
2. We .... in a hotel last weekend.
   a. stay b. stayed c. staying d. stays
3. A .... is something you buy to remember a holiday.
   a. project b. prize c. souvenir d. view
4. I want to go to the .... and swim in the sea.
   a. mountain b. rock c. beach d. cave
5. .... are very friendly sea animals.
   a. Sharks b. Dolphins c. Whales d. Snakes
6. Where did you go .... holiday ?
   a. on b. of c. at d. by
7. The .... is a big strong building from the past.
   a. attic b. sandcastle
   c. mountain d. castle
8. We had a beautiful .... of Cairo from Cairo Tower.
   a. review b. view
   c. interview d. viewer
9. Children enjoy building .... on the beach.
   a. schools b. caves
   c. sandcastles d. mountains
10. There are a lot of trees in the ....
    a. jug b. jungle c. weather d. sky

2. Read and correct the underlined word :

1. I <u>visits</u> my uncle yesterday. (..........)
2. Mona didn't <u>wanted</u> to go to the park. (..........)
3. Yesterday, she had a picnic and <u>rides</u> a horse. (..........)
4. What did you <u>ate</u> for dinner last night ? (..........)

3. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Your favourite place"

....

....

....

....



If you got 🔴 , you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد ، قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى فى نهاية كل وحدة.

Mini-Test on Unit 6

1. Complete the following dialogue :

A customer is ordering food at a café.

Waiter : Good afternoon, what would you like ?
Customer : I would like (1) .... , please.
Waiter : OK. Anything else ?
Customer : Yes, juice please.
Waiter : Small or (2).................................. ?
Customer : (3).................................., please.
Waiter : And would you (4).................................. any desserts ?
Customer : Chocolate cake, please.
Waiter : Here you are.
Customer : (5).................................. .

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A .... is a small amount of food you eat between meals.
   a. stew b. meat c. snack d. spices
2. How .... pieces of fruits should you have daily ?
   a. many b. much c. long d. often
3. There aren't .... printers in our class.
   a. some b. much c. any d. a lot
4. Please, Mum write me the .... to cook pizza well.
   a. recipe b. road
   c. recycling d. equipment
5. .... and cheese are my favourite food.
   a. Equipment b. Petrol
   c. Salad d. Sand
6. It's cold. You .... wear a jacket.
   a. should b. shouldn't c. have d. haven't
7. We should eat .... food every day.
   a. fizzy b. unhealthy
   c. healthy d. bad
8. To .... is to move a liquid around with a spoon or stick.
   a. stick b. lick c. pick d. stir
9. What .... of food do you prefer ?
   a. kind b. old c. heavy d. unkind
10. You can boil water in a ....
    a. saucepan b. teaspoon
    c. bowl d. cup

3. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Your favourite food"

....
....
....
....

Answers of Main Book Paragraphs

إجابات الموضوعات فى كتاب الشرح

Unit 1

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"My family"

My name's Ali. I have a big family. My mum's name is Amira. She is a teacher. My dad's name is Omar. He is a doctor. I have two sisters, Sama and Samira. They are twins. I am in preparatory one. I go to Shoubra Preparatory School for boys. Mum helps us to practise our hobbies. My father also tells us funny stories in his free time, so we enjoy staying with our father in his free time. I like my family so much. It is a great family.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"Voluntary work"

I like voluntary work. My family say it is a great job in our life. My sister and I do voluntary work on Saturdays afternoon. We help in children's hospital. We play games with the children. We read stories to them, too. It's great work ! You can do voluntary work in many places. For example, you can help orphan children. They really need help. Helping poor people is also important. You can give them money.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"The best person in my family"

I love all my family, but my father is the person I like most. He works hard. He buys new clothes for me every month. He gives me money every day to buy what I need. His life is busy, but he spends much time with me studying new lessons. I love him so much. When I find a problem, I discuss it with him. Also, he helps me to practise different hobbies. He encourages me so much. He is my hero.

Test on unit 1

"A famous gymnast"

Habiba Marzouk is a top gymnast in Africa. She lives in Cairo with her family. Habiba has a very busy life. She goes to school and she studies hard. In the evenings, she trains for 5 or 6 hours. She wants to go to the Olympics. Habiba's family always helps her. She eats healthy food. All the Egyptians like Habiba and want her to achieve her goal. Last week, I met her and had a selfie with her.

Unit 2

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"My favourite subject"

My favourite subject is English. I have English every day at school. My English teacher is Mr Ayman. He is very kind. He helps me a lot. I have an English test weekly. I always get the full mark. I like watching English films on TV. I also borrow some English books from the library. That helps me improve my language a lot. I hope to travel to England to speak English well.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"School rules"

School rules are important. We always wear our school uniform. We always help each other. We always listen to the teachers carefully. We always do our homework. We never forget our pencil cases or notebooks. In the classroom, students don't talk to each other. When

I want to ask our teacher. I put my hand up. It's important to come to school on time. Following the school rules is useful for us.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"A day in my life"

I get up at 6 o'clock in the morning every day. I wash my face and have breakfast. I go to school by bus. I have six lessons a day. I come back home at 2:30 p.m. in the afternoon. I do my homework in the evening. I watch TV with my family at weekends. Sometimes, we go to the park and play on Saturdays. I go to bed early. That helps me to get up early.

Test on unit 2

"The jobs I do at home"

I always help my family at home. I get up at seven a.m. I make my bed. I go to school on time. I never get up late. After school, I have my lunch and do my homework. At night, I prepare my bag and go to bed. I don't watch TV the night before school days. At the weekends, I help my mother clean up the house. I also go shopping if my family want something.



General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"My favourite sports star"

Mohamed Salah is my favourite sports star. He is 1.75 meters tall. He is quite short for a footballer. He has got dark, curly hair and a beard. He usually has a big smile. He is a fast runner and he scores a lot of goals. He is very kind. He gives money to build schools and hospitals. He plays for a team in England. It's called Liverpool Football Club. Many Egyptians watch his matches. They feel very happy when Salah scores goals.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"A famous children's story"

My favourite story book is Alice's Adventures in Wonderland. Alice had a lot of adventures in Wonderland. She met a lot of interesting characters in Wonderland. She met the White Rabbit which was always late. She also met the Cheshire Cat which had a big smile. At last, she met the Queen of Hearts. She was always angry and shouted at people. Children like reading stories like this. I sometimes go to the school library to borrow some stories. That's my favourite hobby.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"A review on my favourite book"

I love reading so much. Last week, I read a book about life in the mountains. The book is good, but there was some information I don't believe it. I asked my teacher. He told me it is a children's story! I understood the idea and told the story to all my friends. They were very surprised when I told them. I think reading is very useful for all people. I advise everyone to read a lot.

Test on unit 3

"My best friend"

I have many friends. But Sameh is my best friend. I met him first at school. He is tall and thin. He has a long, curly hair. He is very kind and funny. We walk to school every day together. He is very good at maths. He always helps me at maths. I help him at English. We both like playing football. We go to the club on Fridays to practise football. Sameh is a real friend. I respect him so much.

Unit 4

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"Technology"

I love technology. My favourite hobby is playing video games. I usually play them on my laptop, but sometimes I play them on my mobile phone. I'd like to spend all day playing video games, but I have to go to school. My favourite lesson is computer studies. At break, I look at websites for new video games. Modern technology has changed our lives a lot. Nowadays, most people use it in many ways. Young people use it all the time.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"I like nature more than technology"

I love nature. I like walking and watching trees, animals, flowers and insects all around us. I don't like being in the house; I like being in the garden and looking at the sky. At school, I always go outside at break. I don't go outside when it's very hot or cold! Also, technology is very important for our life. Technology makes our life easier. Both nature and technology are important for our life.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"My favourite place"

Egypt is a beautiful country. There are many interesting places in it. The Pyramids in Giza are my favourite place. I like visiting the Pyramids with my family. My father knows a lot about the Pyramids. He likes reading about the ancient Egyptians. He tells us many interesting information each time when we visit the Pyramids. We always take pictures next to the Pyramids and the Sphinx. I am very proud of my country.

Test on unit 4

"How to keep safe online"

When you are online, you need to follow some rules to stay safe. First, keep your password secret. Don't make friends with people you don't know online. Don't tell people your personal information. Don't send photos to people you don't know. If you are worried about something, tell a parent or a teacher. Don't answer a phone call or a video call from people you don't know. You must be very careful with using modern technology.



General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"A picnic at Al Azhar Park"

In October, we visited my uncle, aunt and cousins in Cairo. We had a picnic at Al Azhar Park. We ate delicious food. Then, we played games. My brother, Ali rode his bike. We enjoyed our time. Al Azhar Park is a beautiful place to go to. You can do many activities there. It's really wonderful. I hope to go there one day with my friends. It will be a very nice trip. But we should keep the park clean.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"A day on the beach"

Last summer, the weather was very hot. We decided to go to the beach in Hurghada. Hurghada is a beautiful city. My sister Mariam made a sandcastle on the beach. I swam in the sea and climbed the mountains. We enjoyed our time a lot. My mother made us a delicious meal. My father told us some funny stories. It was a typical day. In the evening, I enjoyed the beautiful view on the beach. I'm looking forward to visiting Hurghada again next summer.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"A holiday in Paris"

Paris is a great city for a holiday because there is so much to see and do. The food is delicious. I ate a lot of new things, for example, snails! One day we climbed the Eiffel Tower, and from the top we had a view of the city. We visited museums and had a picnic in the Luxembourg Gardens. We also went on a boat on the River Seine. Near our hotel, there was a busy market. I bought a T-shirt and some postcards. People in Paris are so kind. They helped me a lot.

Test on unit 5

"A trip I made"

Last summer, I went on a trip to London with my school. My favourite place was Windsor Castle. We went there by train. We walked around the castle. My favourite activity was a ride on the London Eye, because there was a beautiful view of the city from the top. This trip helped us to improve our English as we spoke English all the time. It was a very nice trip. We stayed there for two weeks.



General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"Rice pudding"

Roz Bel Laban is an Egyptian rice pudding. Its ingredients are rice, water, milk and sugar. Some people like it very tasty so they add much sugar to it. Other people like to add some nuts and raisins on the top. I like to add some cinnamon. You can try to make it by yourself at home; there are many recipes for this dish online. Choose your favourite and you can ask your mum for help.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"My favourite dish"

My favourite dish is koshari. It is a delicious dish with rice, pasta and tomatoes. There isn't any meat in it. It is very popular in Egypt. I love it very much. All my family love it. You can eat this meal in many restaurants. All the Egyptians like this meal. My mother makes it at home once a week. I like it a lot. Also, I have koshari with my friends after playing football on holidays.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"A visit to a café"

I visited a nice café with my family and my friends yesterday. It looks over a beautiful view. My mum had fish . My dad and I had pizza with my brother. We had cakes after lunch. I had basbousa and my brother had kunafa. I prefer the café that looks over the Nile. The view is fantastic. I enjoy fresh air. My friends like taking photos from the windows that overlooks the nice view.

Test on unit 6

"A traditional meal in Morocco"

Tagine is a traditional meal in Morocco. It is a stew with meat, vegetables, fruit and spices. It has an amazing taste. The name tagine comes from the cooking pot for this food. If you want to try this meal, you have to visit Morocco. I went to Morocco last month. When I went to a restaurant to have lunch, I ate tagine. It was really delicious. I hope to have it again.

Listening Texts

نصوص استماع

Audioscript

Girl 1 : Hi, Lama. Is that a new bag ?
Girl 2 : Hi, Injy. No, it's my sister's bag.
Girl 1 : It's big. What's in it ?
Girl 2 : This is my pencil case. It's red.
Girl 1 : Is that your book ?
Girl 2 : Yes. It's very good. It's about animals.
Girl 1 : Is that a ball in your bag ?
Girl 2 : No, it's an orange ! I like oranges.
Girl 1 : I prefer apples. Is that your phone ?
Girl 2 : Yes, it is. Look ! It's ten o'clock. Time for our English class.

Audioscript

Narrator :

1. washed, talked
2. called, waited
3. blue, duck
4. cake, home
5. shop, chick
6. father, brother
7. candy, July
8. tail, gate

Unit 1

1 Lessons 1 & 2

I like sports. I play basketball on Mondays. It is my favourite sport. I play it with my friends. It is an interesting sport.

2 Lessons 5 & 6

Gymnastics is a difficult sport. Gymnasts train for many hours daily. They must balance their hobby, work and study to achieve their dream.

3 Test on unit 1

Habiba Marzouk lives in Cairo. She has a very busy life. She is a top gymnast in Africa. She wants to go to the Olympics.



1 Lessons 3 & 4

My school is far from my house. I cycle to school every morning. It's healthy and it makes me arrive there on time.

2 Lessons 5 & 6

Amira is twelve years old. She is from Hurghada. She is in preparatory one at school. She likes science and maths.

3 Test on unit 2

Akeyo lives in Nairobi. Her school is far away. Her parents drive her there. She goes to the library to read during the break.



1 Lessons 1 & 2

Doaa Elghobashy plays volleyball for Egypt. She's very tall. She's 180 cm tall. She's strong and fast. She always has a big smile.

2 Lessons 5 & 6

My best friend is called Basel. He has got straight hair and brown eyes. He is kind. He likes reading and playing video games.

3 Test on unit 3

Yunis has got short, dark curly hair. He likes history, but he doesn't like art because he is not good at drawing or painting.

Unit 4

1 Lessons 1 & 2

Ziad is in his classroom. There are two laptops in the classroom. There is a printer, too. Omar is printing his homework.

2 Test on unit 4

Soha loves nature. She likes watching the trees, animals, flowers and insects all around us. She likes being in the garden and looking at the sky.

Unit 5

1 Lessons 1 & 2

Last week, we had a picnic at Al Azhar Park in Cairo. We ate delicious food. Then, we played games and Ali rode on his bike.

2 Lessons 5 & 6

Last summer, Andy travelled to Egypt because she wanted to learn Arabic. She went to a language school in Cairo. She had a wonderful time.

3 Test on unit 5

When I was eight, we went to Siwa. We swam in the lake. We saw camels and slept in a tent. It was my favourite holiday.

Unit 6

1 Lessons 1 & 2

There are a lot of rice pudding recipes online. There's enough rice pudding for the whole family. There's a lot of sugar in the recipe but I like sweet food.

2 Lessons 5 & 6

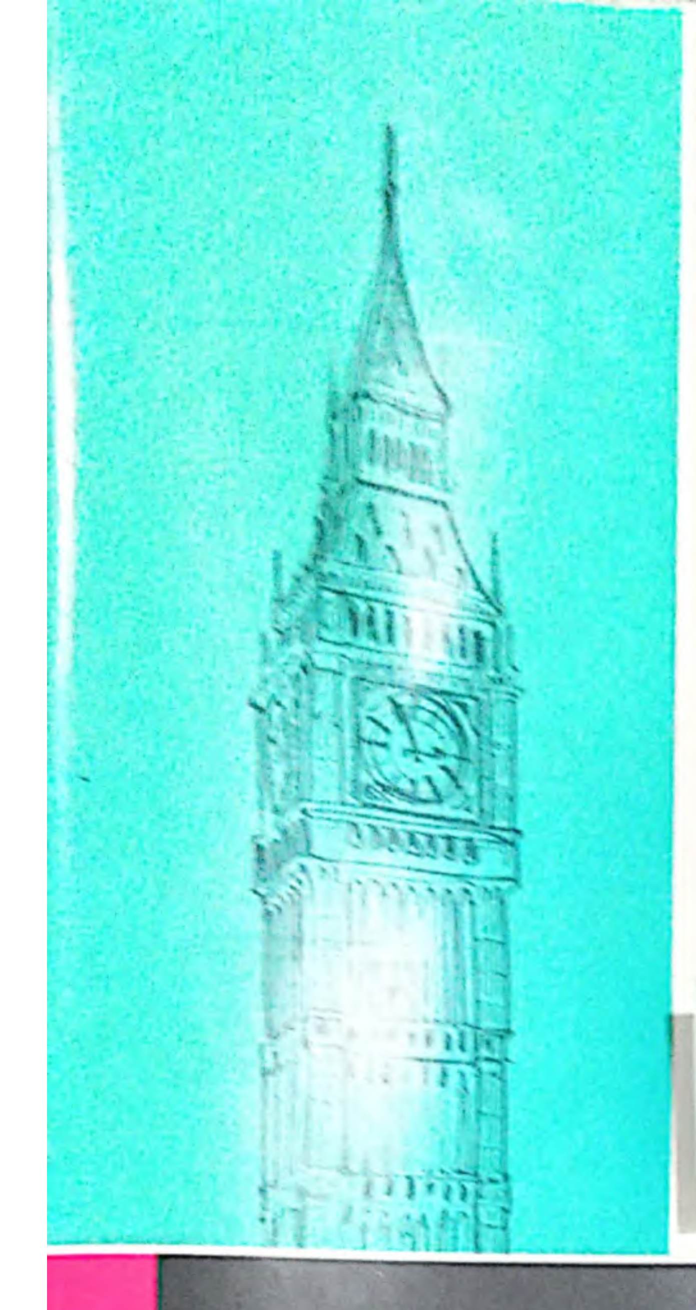
I visited this café last weekend with my family. We chose this café for lunch. Its walls were green and white.

3 Test on unit 6

Mazin likes tagine. In Morocco, tagine is a traditional meal. Its taste is amazing! The name tagine comes from the cooking pot for this food.









GUIDE

New Hello!

ENGLISH

By a group of supervisors

A WEEK IS ENOUGH

كراسة المعاصر
للمراجعة والاختبارات
للصف الأول الإعدادي
الفصل الدراسي الأول

1st Prep.
2023
FIRST TERM

A WEEK IS ENOUGH

(الامتحان بين يديك)

مراجعة على المنهج بالكامل والتمكن منه فى أسبوع واحد فقط

اليوم الأول

Listening, Language Functions and Reading Comprehension



عرض جديد يضمن لك الحصول على أفضل درجة فى سؤال الاستماع فى الامتحان



عرض جديد يضمن لك الحصول على أفضل درجة فى سؤال الوظائف اللغوية و قطع الفهم فى الامتحان

اليوم الثانى والثالث

Vocabulary, Language & Writing



مراجعة على أهم المفردات اللغوية والقواعد اللغوية والفقرات الإنشائية ورسائل البريد الإلكترونى الهامة التى وردت فى المنهج

اليوم الرابع

General Exercises Collected from (SB & WB)



تدريبات عامة مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات على كل أنماط أسئلة الورقة الامتحانية

اليوم الخامس والسادس والسابع

End of term practice and sample tests



• اختبار نهاية الفصل الدراسى من كتاب التدريبات.



• نماذج اختبارات من المحافظات المختلفة طبقًا لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية ٢٠٢٣.

DAY 1

Listening, Language Functions and Reading Comprehension

I Listening ١. نصوص الاستماع

على الطالب أن يستمع إلى نص حوالى ٢٥ كلمة من الموضوعات الهامة فى الكتاب المدرسى التى تساعد فى التعامل مع السؤال الأول وبعد الاستماع إلى النص يجيب الطالب على أربعة أسئلة اختيار من متعدد متنوعة بأربع اختيارات لكل سؤال.

السؤال الأول فى ورقة الامتحان

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

A. 1. What is Habiba Marzouk ? - A ....

a. doctor b. gymnast c. teacher d. farmer

2. Habiba is ....

a. 16 b. 17 c. 19 d. 18

3. How long does Habiba train ?

a. For ten hours. b. For six hours.
c. For seven hours. d. For eight hours.

4. Where does Habiba want to go ?

a. London b. Cairo c. The Olympics d. The school

B. 1. What is Mohamed Salah ? - A ....

a. sports star b. teacher c. doctor d. driver

2. What game does Mohamed Salah play ?

a. Volleyball b. Football c. Tennis d. Basketball

3. Mohamed Salah is very good at .... goals.

a. writing b. scoring c. reading d. watching

4. Mohamed Salah is a .... runner.

a. fast b. slow c. happy d. quiet

II Language Functions ٢. الوظائف اللغوية

(راجع وتدرب فى نفس الوقت) عرض لجميع الوظائف اللغوية بطريقة سهلة متنوعة بتدريبات على كل وحدة على حدة للتمكن من حل السؤال الثانى فى الورقة الامتحانية.

السؤال الثانى فى ورقة الامتحان

Unit 1

1. Talking about your family ١. التحدث عن عائلتك

1. My dad's name is اسم الأب . He is عمره .
2. My mum's name is اسم الأم . She is عمرها .
3. My brother's name is اسم الأخ . He is عمره .
4. My sister's name is اسم الأخت . She is عمرها .
5. My (mother / father) is a / an وظيفة .

2. Asking and answering questions about a friend or a person.

٢. توجيه أسئلة والإجابة عليها عن صديق أو شخص.

Questions	Answers
• What is her / his name ? ما اسمها أو اسمه ؟	- She / He is ... الاسم
• How old is she / he ? ما عمرها أو عمره ؟	- She / He is ... السن أو العمر
• Where does she / he live ? أين هى أو هو يعيش ؟	- She / He lives in ... اسم المكان
• Who is her / his best friend ? من هو أفضل صديق لها أو له ؟	- Her / His best friend is ... . الصديقة المفضلة / الصديق المفضل
• What is her / his favourite .... ? ما هو .... المفضل لها أو له ؟	- Her / His favourite ...... is ... . المفضل لها/له ....
• What are her / his hobbies ? ما هى هواياتها أو هواياته ؟	- Her / His hobbies are ... . هواياتها/هواياته هى

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Riham : What's your name ?
Dalia : My name is Dalia.
Riham : (1) .... do you live with ?
Dalia : I live with my father, mother and two sisters.
Riham : Are you a student ?

Dalia : Yes, (2) ....
Riham : What's your favourite (3) .... ?
Dalia : I like art, (4) .... I am not good at drawing or painting.
Riham : What's your favourite sport ?
Dalia : I like (5) ....

Unit 2

Asking and answering questions about school and timetables.

توجيه أسئلة والإجابة عليها عن المدرسة وجداول المواعيد بها :

Questions	Answers
• When do you go to school ? متى تذهب إلى المدرسة ؟	- I go to school at seven. أذهب إلى المدرسة فى السابعة.
• What subjects have we got today ? ما المواد الدراسية التى لدينا اليوم ؟	- We have got computer studies and science. لدينا مادة الحاسب الآلى والعلوم.
• What is your favourite subject ? ما هى المادة المفضلة بالنسبة لك ؟	- I like science. أحب مادة العلوم.
• Are you good at languages ? هل أنت جيد فى اللغات ؟	- I'm quite good at English, and I'm not bad at French. أنا جيد فى اللغة الإنجليزية إلى حد ما ولست سيئًا فى مادة اللغة الفرنسية.
• Who is our English teacher this year ? من هو مدرسنا لمادة اللغة الإنجليزية هذا العام ؟	- It is Mrs Amal. إنها الأستاذة أمل.
• When have we got English ? متى ندرس مادة اللغة الإنجليزية ؟	- It is after break. إنها بعد فترة الاستراحة.
• What time is the break ? متى تكون فترة الاستراحة ؟	- It is from quarter past ten to half past ten. إنه من الساعة العاشرة والربع حتى الساعة العاشرة والنصف.

Complete the following dialogue :

Soha is asking Rania about her school day.

Soha : How do you go to school ?
Rania : I go to school on foot.
Soha : (1) .... do you walk to school ?
Rania : Because it is (2) .... my house.

Soha : What's your favourite subject ?
Rania : I like (3) ....
Soha : (4) .... do you like it ?
Rania : Because I like maps and it tells me a lot about different countries.
Soha : How often do you study geography at school ?
Rania : Three (5) .... a week.

Unit 3

1. Describing your favourite sports star : ١. وصف نجمك الرياضى المفضل :

• للحديث عن نجمك المفضل نستخدم الجمل والتعبيرات التالية :

- My favourite sports star is اسم نجمك الرياضى .
- He / She plays الرياضة التى يلعبها .
- He / She's quite / very وصفه البدنى .
- He / She can ما يستطيع فعله / عمله .

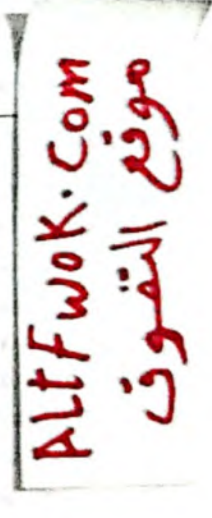
2. Talking about likes and dislikes : ٢. للحديث عن الشىء المحبب وغير المحبب :

- I like apples a lot.
- I don't like eating chicken.
- She loves reading short stories.

Complete the following dialogue :

Ashraf is telling Ayman about his favourite sports star.

Ayman : Who is your favourite sports star ?
Ashraf : He's Mohamed Salah .
Ayman : Why do you like him ?
Ashraf : (1) .... he's a very good football player.
Ayman : (2) .... does he play ?
Ashraf : He plays for Liverpool; in English (3) ....
Ayman : What's he good (4) .... ?
Ashraf : He's good at scoring goals.
Ayman : How does he help people ?
Ashraf : He (5) .... money to build new schools and hospitals in Egypt.



Unit 4

1. Describing the technology in your classroom :

١. وصف التكنولوجيا الموجودة داخل حجرة الفصل الدراسى الخاص بك :

- What's in your classroom ? • ما الأشياء الموجودة داخل حجرة الدراسة الخاصة بك ؟
- There are some laptops and a whiteboard.
• يوجد بعض أجهزة الكمبيوتر المحمولة وسبورة بيضاء.
- What can you see there ? • ما الذى يمكنك أن تراه هناك ؟
- I can see an Mp3 player. • أستطيع أن أرى مشغل ملفات صوتية.

2. Giving instructions :

٢. إعطاء التعليمات :

• تستخدم صيغة الأمر (imperative) لإعطاء التعليمات :

١. صيغة الأمر المثبت

inf. المصدر

- Keep your password secret.
- Study your lessons hard.

٢. صيغة الأمر المنفى

Don't + inf. المصدر

- Don't make noise.
- Don't make friends with people you don't know online.

Complete the following dialogue :

Taha asks Omar about technology in his school.

Taha : Do you use technology at your school ?
Omar : Yes, we do. We use tablets.
Taha : Really ? Can you (1) .... a tablet ?
Omar : Yes, I can.
Taha : Which subjects do you use tablets in ?
Omar : (2) ....
Taha : Has your classroom (3) .... a smart board ?
Omar : Yes, it (4) ....
Taha : Do you use mobile phones at class ?
Omar : (5) ....

Unit 5

1. Asking and answering questions about places :

١. توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن الأماكن :

Questions 	Answers 
• Where would you like to go ? Why ? أين تود أن تذهب ؟ لماذا ؟	- I'd like to go to the beach to enjoy swimming. - أرغب فى الذهاب للشاطئ لأستمتع بالسباحة.

2. Talking about a holiday :

٢. الحديث عن الأجازة :

- I spent my holiday in / at / on + (مكان معين). - لقد قضيت أجازتى فى (مكان معين).
- I enjoyed (نشاط من الأنشطة). - لقد استمتعت بـ (نشاط من الأنشطة).
- I like walking and playing in / at (وقت معين). - أحب المشى واللعب فى (وقت معين).

3. Responding to news.

٣. الاستجابة للأخبار.

News	Response
• I went to the beach last weekend. ذهبت إلى الشاطىء فى نهاية عطلة الأسبوع الماضى.	- Really ! حقًا !
• It was very windy. كان الجو عاصف جدًا.	- Oh dear ! يا للهول !
• I couldn't swim although I like swimming. لم أستطع السباحة على الرغم من أننى أحب السباحة.	- What a pity ! يا للحسرة !
• I saw six big dolphins. رأيت ست دلافين كبيرة الحجم.	- How interesting ! يا له من شئ رائع !

Complete the following dialogue :

Tamer tells Nader about his last holiday.

Nader : Where did you go on holiday last year ?
Tamer : I went to Alexandria.
Nader : Where did you (1) .... ?
Tamer : I stayed in my uncle's flat.
Nader : (2) .... did you travel there ?
Tamer : I travelled (3) .... train.
Nader : Did you swim in the sea ?
Tamer : (4) ....
Nader : What did you eat there ?
Tamer : I usually eat (5) .... when I am there.

Unit 6

Asking and answering questions about food :

توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن الطعام :

Is there any + (اسم مفرد/اسم لا يعد) ?

Yes, there is.	No, there isn't.

ex.: - Is there any cheese ? — هل يوجد أي جبنة ؟
- Yes, there is. — نعم. يوجد.

Are there any + (اسم جمع) ?

Yes, there are.	No, there aren't.

ex.: - Are there any olives ? — هل يوجد أي زيتون ؟
- Yes, there are. — نعم. يوجد.

Questions	Answers
• What food do you like ? - ما الطعام الذي ترغب فيه ؟	- I like nuts. — أحب المكسرات.
• What food don't you like ? - ما الطعام الذي لا ترغب فيه ؟	- I don't like olives. — لا أحب الزيتون.

Complete the following dialogue :

Nadia and Omar are preparing their lunch.

Nadia : Let's make lunch. I think we have all the food.
Omar : There is some salad. Is there any Hummus ?
Nadia : No, there isn't, but there (1) .... some olives.
Omar : There are some peppers and (2) ....
Nadia : Good. Is there (3) .... cheese ?
Omar : Yes, there is. I've got it.
Nadia : What about figs ? Are (4) .... any figs ?
Omar : (5) ...., there aren't any figs.
Nadia : Are there any raisins ?
Omar : Yes.



III Reading Comprehension

٣ قطع الفهم

السؤال الثالث في ورقة الامتحان

وهو عبارة عن قطعة فهم ويجيب الطالب على ثلاثة أسئلة بأداة استفهام وثلاث اختيار من متعدد بها أربع خيارات لكل سؤال.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Alice's Adventures in Wonderland is a famous children's story. Alice's adventure begins when she goes to Wonderland. Alice thinks that Wonderland is interesting, but it is a strange place. She is a sensible girl, but she does not understand Wonderland. Alice is also **brave** and clever. She meets a lot of interesting characters.

Alice often sees the White Rabbit. The White Rabbit is very busy and he is usually very late. He always runs fast.

The Cheshire Cat is a funny animal. He has got a big smile and he is very friendly. He tells Alice about Wonderland and helps her to find different places and characters. The Queen of Hearts is not very nice. She is a scary person. She is always angry and she shouts at people.

Alice is brave, so she is not frightened of **her**.
At the end of the story, all the characters help Alice, so she can go home again.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the best title for the passage ?
....
2. What does the underlined pronoun "**her**" refer to ?
....
3. Why do you think the Cheshire Cat is helpful ?
....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. Going to Wonderland tells us that Alice is ....
a. scary b. clever and brave
c. weak d. frightened
5. The underlined word "**brave**" is the opposite of ....
a. cowardly b. strong c. funny d. angry
6. When someone is funny, he/she ....
a. is always angry b. has a big smile
c. is dangerous d. is a scary person

DAYS 2&3

Vocabulary, Language & Writing

I General Revision on Vocabulary

ا. مراجعة عامة على أهم المفردات اللغوية لكل وحدة وتدريبات عليها.

السؤال الرابع في ورقة الامتحان

Unit 1

Important Vocabulary

great-grandfather	الجد الأكبر	gymnastics	رياضة الجمباز
children's hospital	مستشفى أطفال	adventure	مغامرة
orphan	يتيم	athlete	لاعب رياضي
voluntary work	عمل تطوعي	athletics	ألعاب رياضية
balance	يوازن - توازن	interview	مقابلة شخصية
band	فرقة موسيقية	male	ذكر
twins	توأم	female	أنثى
attic	سقيفة (غرفة في سطح المنزل)	diary	مفكرة يومية
gymnast	لاعب جمباز	quiz	امتحان قصير / موجز

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. She never takes money. She does .... work.
   a. written b. voluntary c. hard d. school
2. He has no parents. He is a/an ....
   a. twin b. adventurous c. athlete d. orphan
3. A .... is a group of people who play music together.
   a. class b. band c. company d. chorus
4. "Male" is the opposite of ....
   a. mall b. meal c. female d. mail
5. Her dream is to go to the Olympics. She is a/an ....
   a. athletics b. partner c. orphan d. gymnast

Unit 2

Important Vocabulary

home economics	مادة الاقتصاد المنزلي	canoe	قارب طويل ضيق
social studies	مادة الدراسات الاجتماعية	snowmobile	دراجة جليدية

drama	مادة الدراما (الفن المسرحي)	computer studies	مادة الحاسب الآلي
typical	نموذجي	separate	يفصل
playground	ملعب	uniform	زي موحد
put on	يرتدي	pencil case	مقلمة
bell	جرس	timetable	جدول حصص / مواعيد
hall	صالة / قاعة	Hurghada	مدينة الغردقة
cycle	يركب دراجة	break	استراحة / فسحة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Some children in Uganda usually cross the river in a ....
   a. train b. taxi c. canoe d. bus
2. Some children in Egypt .... to school.
   a. cycle b. circle c. tricycle d. recycle
3. Look at the .... to know our lessons today.
   a. table b. library c. timetable d. break
4. I have a small pencil .... to keep my pens in.
   a. sharpener b. case c. desk d. board
5. We can use a comma to .... items in a list.
   a. come b. have c. make d. separate

Unit 3

Important Vocabulary

beard	لحية	blond hair	شعر أشقر (أصفر)
moustache	شارب	wheelchair	كرسي متحرك
curly hair	شعر مجعد	fans	مشجعين / معجبين
character	شخصية	sports star	نجم رياضي
feature	سمة / ميزة	boring	ممل
friendly	ودود	brave	شجاع
blog post	منشور مدونة	sensible	عاقل / حكيم
strange	غريب	scary	مخيف
famous	مشهور	clever	ماهر
secret	سر	information	معلومات

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. My hair is .... It is not straight.
   a. blond b. short c. curly d. long
2. I am a .... of Mohammed Salah.
   a. fin b. phone c. fan d. fat
3. Because she cannot walk, she uses a ....
   a. ship b. bicycle c. book d. wheelchair
4. I don't like this film. It's ....
   a. clever b. sensible c. scary d. funny
5. My favourite .... in this story is Alice.
   a. event b. character c. colour d. subject

Unit 4

Important Vocabulary

laptop	كمبيوتر محمول	website	موقع على الإنترنت
mobile phone	تليفون محمول	text message	رسالة نصية
mouse	فأرة	selfie	صورة بالكاميرا الأمامية (سيلفي)
MP3 player	مشغل ملفات صوتية	eagle	نسر
phone charger	شاحن تليفون	video call	مكالمة فيديو
printer	طابعة	tap	ينقر (بطرف الإصبع)
tablet	كمبيوتر لوحي	online	متصل بالإنترنت
icon	أيقونة	blog	مدونة على الإنترنت

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. My friend sent me a .... message yesterday.
   a. toast b. taxi c. text d. test
2. I watch football matches on an internet ....
   a. phone b. printer c. charger d. website
3. Click on the icon on your ....
   a. laptop b. pencil c. pen d. call
4. A/An .... is a photo of yourself, normally on a mobile phone.
   a. tap b. icon c. selfie d. tablet

5. A blog is a/an .... diary.
   a. online b. paper c. false d. worried
6. Soha isn't making a .... , but she is talking to her friend.
   a. photo b. video call c. selfie d. message

Unit 5

Important Vocabulary

beach	شاطئ	camp	معسكر - يعسكر
jungle	أدغال / غابة كثيفة	castle	قلعة
cave	كهف	tower	برج
lake	بحيرة	snails	حلزون (أكلة)
desert	صحراء	souvenir	هدية تذكارية
mountain	جبل	hotel	فندق
forest	غابة	course	دورة تدريبية
waterfall	شلال	emotion	عاطفة
Sahara Desert	الصحراء الكبرى	view	منظر طبيعي
sandcastle	قلعة رملية	queen	ملكة
tent	خيمة	advertisement	إعلان

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Children like to build .... on the beach.
   a. sandcastles b. mountains c. waterfalls d. lakes
2. In the .... , we slept in a tent last summer.
   a. beach b. desert c. tower d. hotel
3. A .... is something you buy to remember a holiday.
   a. camp b. snail c. souvenir d. view
4. In France, eating .... is very popular.
   a. snakes b. nails c. snails d. spaces
5. A .... is a large hole inside a mountain.
   a. lake b. cave c. jungle d. forest

Unit 6

Important Vocabulary

olives	زيتون	fizzy drinks	مشروبات غازية
meat	لحم	hummus	حمص (طحينة)
nuts	بندق / مكسرات	waiter	جرسون
teaspoon	ملعقة شاى	customer	عميل / زبون
fridge	ثلاجة	pepper	فلفل
add	يضيف	amazing	مُدهش / رائع
boil	يغلى	pound	جنيه
raisins	زبيب	menu	قائمة طعام
snack	وجبة خفيفة	delicious	لذيذ الطعم
rice pudding	أرز باللبن	stir	يقلب / يحرك
crisps	مقرمشات	cinnamon	قرفة
ingredients	مكونات / مقادير	spices	توابل

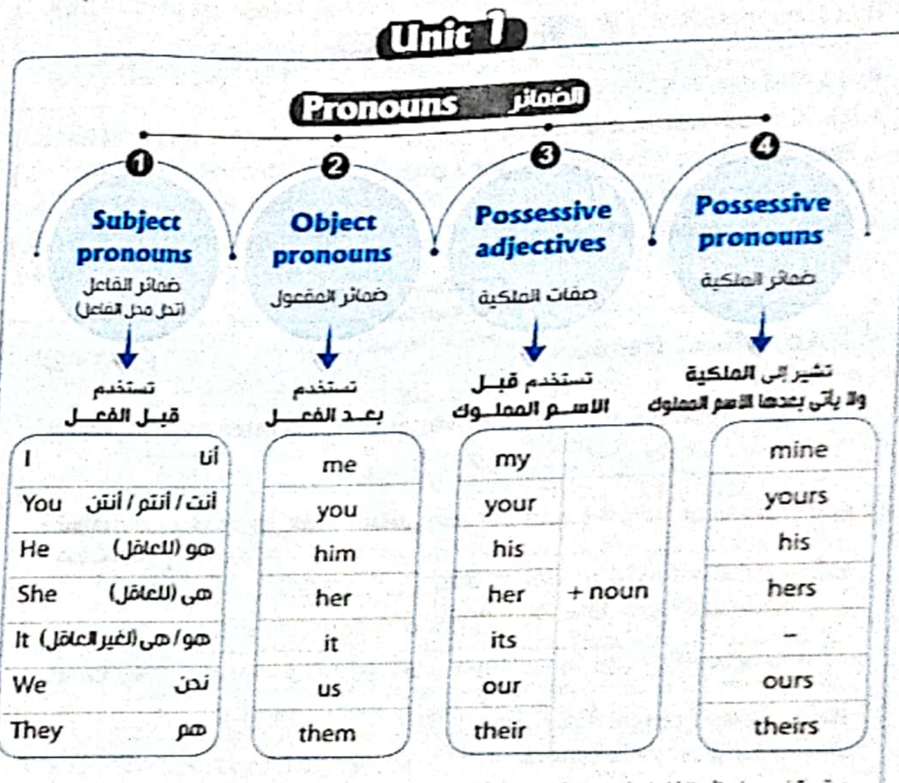
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... aren't healthy because they have fats.
   a. Fruits b. Vegetables c. Crisps d. Hummus
2. It's good to put a .... of cinnamon on food.
   a. meal b. teaspoon c. snack d. menu
3. A .... is a person who serves food and drinks in a restaurant.
   a. waiter b. customer c. carpenter d. doctor
4. Don't .... too much sugar. It isn't healthy.
   a. work b. buy c. add d. bring
5. The main .... of salad are tomatoes, cucumbers and onions.
   a. kinds b. ingredients c. types d. colours

II General Revision on Language

٢ - مراجعة على أهم القواعد اللغوية لكل وحدة وتدريبات عليها.

السؤال الخامس في ورقة الامتحان



- تستخدم ضمائر الفاعل فى بداية الجملة (قبل الفعل).
- تستخدم ضمائر المفعول بعد الفعل ويمكن أن تستخدم بعد حروف الجر.
- تستخدم ضمائر وصفات الملكية للإشارة إلى أن الشيء يخص شخص ما.
- تأتى صفات الملكية قبل اسم الشيء المملوك.

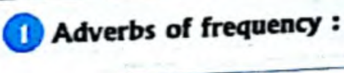
• لا يأتي بعد ضمائر الملكية الاسم المملوك.
• لاحظ أن ضمير الملكية = صفة الملكية + اسم

- We play tennis on Mondays.
- This laptop belongs to me.
- This is my bag. It's mine.
- That is her pen. It isn't yours.

Read and correct the underlined words :

1. It is not your watch. It is <u>me</u>. (..........)
2. They are happy. <u>Theirs</u> child got a prize. (..........)
3. That is <u>hers</u> new room. (..........)
4. Take your mobile. It is <u>you</u>. (..........)

Unit 2



1 Adverbs of frequency : ظروف التكرار :

- always دائمًا	- sometimes أحيانًا	- often غالبًا
- never أبدًا	- usually عادة	

• تستخدم ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسي وبعد (verb to be) وتعبر عن عدد مرات تكرار حدوث الفعل :

ex.: - I always go to school by bus.
- We are never late for school.

How often + (do / does) + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ? كم مرة ...؟

ex.: - How often do you help others ?
• I always help others.

2 Possessive ('s) : الملكية ('s) :

• تستخدم ('s) مع الأسماء المفردة (الأشخاص - الحيوانات) :

ex.: - a girl's name - a cat's tail

• تستخدم (s') مع الأسماء الجمع المنتهية بـ (s) بإضافة الفاصلة العليا فقط :

ex.: - a girls' school - cats' legs

• تستخدم ('s) مع الأسماء الجمع غير المنتظمة وغير المنتهية بـ (s) :

ex.: - men's jackets - women's pens

• تستخدم ('s) مع الوظائف للإشارة لمكان العمل.

ex.: - the butcher's محل جزارة - the chemist's الصيدلية

• لا تستخدم ('s) مع أسماء الجماد.

ex.: - computer screen - exercise book

• يمكن استخدام (belong to) بدلًا من ('s) الملكية للتعبير عن الملكية.

ex.: - This is Samar's laptop. = This laptop belongs to Samar.

Read and correct the underlined words :

1. I <u>eat never</u> unhealthy food. (..........)
2. The <u>boy</u> name is Ziad. (..........)
3. We <u>ever</u> speak English during English lessons. (..........)
4. Whose bag is this ? – It is <u>Nada</u>. (..........)

Unit 3

have got / has got : يملك / لديه :

Affirmative statements : الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع → have got = 've got

ex.: - I have got curly hair.

He / She / It / اسم مفرد → has got = 's got

ex.: - He has got a new mobile phone.

Negative statements : الجمل الخبرية المنفية

Subject → haven't / hasn't got + ...

ex.: - She hasn't got dark hair.

Interrogative : صيغة الاستفهام

Have / Has → subject + got + ... ?

ex.: - Have you got a moustache ?
• Yes, I have. • No, I haven't.

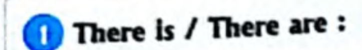
ex.: - Has he got a new flat ?
• Yes, he has. • No, he hasn't.

Read and correct the underlined words :

1. We <u>have</u> got any bread. (..........)
2. Has Helmi got a car ? – No, he <u>isn't</u>. (..........)
3. I have <u>get</u> glasses. (..........)
4. <u>Has</u> you got a villa ? (..........)



Unit 4



1 There is / There are : يوجد ......

There is + اسم مفرد / (اسم غير معدود) ....

ex.: - There is a book on the table.
- There isn't any sugar.

There are + اسم جمع ....

ex.: - There are some pens.
- There aren't any books.

Is there + اسم مفرد / (اسم غير معدود) .... ? هل يوجد (اسم مفرد) .... ؟

ex.: - Is there a pan ?
- Yes, there is.
- No, there isn't.

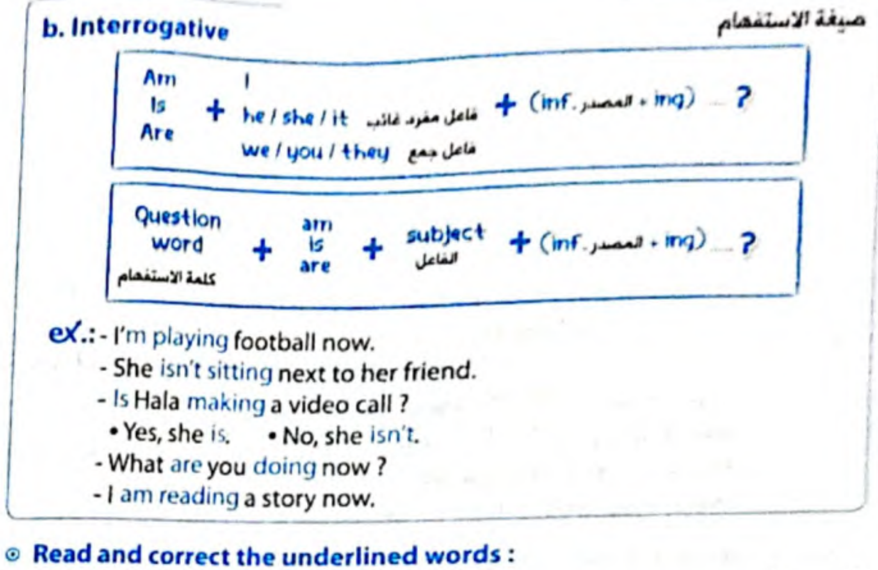
Are there + اسم جمع .... ? هل يوجد (اسم جمع) .... ؟

ex.: - Are there any books ?
- Yes, there are.
- No, there aren't.

2 The present continuous tense : زمن المضارع المستمر:

a. Affirmative & Negative statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة والمنفية

I He / She / It فاعل مفرد غائب We / You / They فاعل جمع	+	am is are	(not) + (inf. المصدر + ing)



b. Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

Am Is Are	+	I he / she / it فاعل مفرد غائب we / you / they فاعل جمع	+ (inf. المصدر + ing) ... ?

Question word كلمة الاستفهام	+	am is are	+	subject الفاعل	+ (inf. المصدر + ing) ... ?

ex.: - I'm playing football now.
- She isn't sitting next to her friend.
- Is Hala making a video call ?
  - Yes, she is. • No, she isn't.
- What are you doing now ?
- I am reading a story now.

Read and correct the underlined words :

1. What <u>have</u> the students doing ? (..........)
2. A : Who is <u>call</u> ? B : Ali. (..........)
3. There <u>are</u> any mobile phones. (..........)
4. Are <u>their</u> any bottles left ? (..........)

Unit 5

Past simple tense : زمن الماضي البسيط:

1. Affirmative statements : الجمل الخبرية المثبتة :

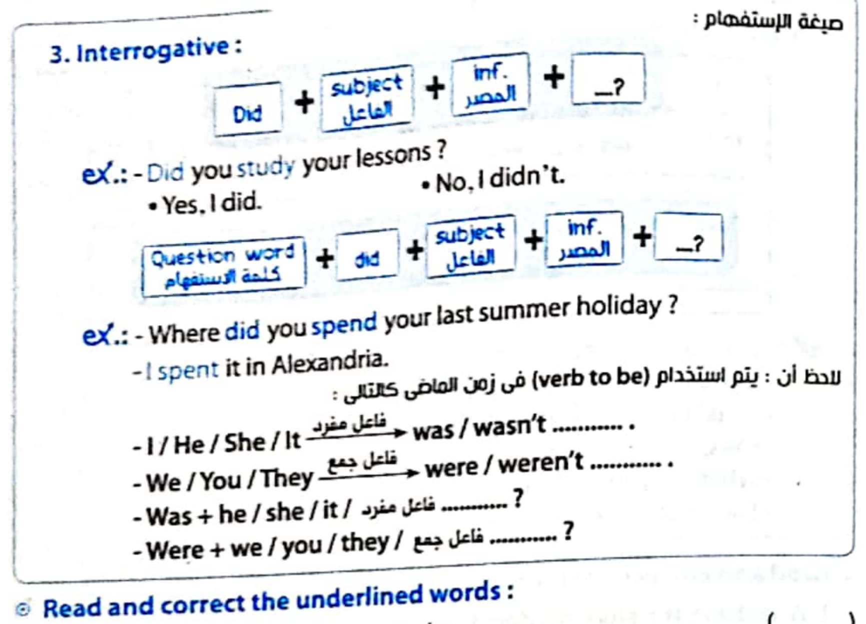
Subject الفاعل	+	التصريف الثاني للفعل

ex.: - We visited our uncle last week. (فعل منتظم)
- He bought a new car last month. (فعل غير منتظم)

2. Negative statements : الجمل الخبرية المنفية :

Subject الفاعل	+	didn't	+	inf. المصدر

ex.: - I didn't go out for a walk yesterday.



صيغة الإستفهام :

3. Interrogative :

Did + subject الفاعل + inf. المصدر + ...?

ex.: - Did you study your lessons ?
- • Yes, I did. • No, I didn't.

Question word كلمة الاستفهام + did + subject الفاعل + inf. المصدر + ...?

ex.: - Where did you spend your last summer holiday ?
- I spent it in Alexandria.

لاحظ أن : يتم استخدام (verb to be) فى زمن الماضى كالتالى :

- I / He / She / It —فاعل مفرد→ was / wasn't ....
- We / You / They —فاعل جمع→ were / weren't ....
- Was + he / she / it / فاعل مفرد .... ?
- Were + we / you / they / فاعل جمع .... ?

Read and correct the underlined words :

1. My uncle go to the market yesterday. (..........)
2. Are you ready for the exam yesterday ? (..........)
3. When I was five, I don't have a watch. (..........)
4. Did you wore your new jacket yesterday ? (..........)

Unit 6

1 Countable Nouns : الأسماء التى تُعد :

• هى الأسماء التى لها مفرد وجمع يسبق الاسم المفرد منها بـ a / an :

a potato → potatoes ← جمع منتظم

an ox → oxen ← جمع غير منتظم

ex.: - Potatoes are my favourite food.

2 Uncountable Nouns : الأسماء التى لا تُعد :

• هى الأسماء التى ليس لها جمع وتعامل معاملة المفرد أى تأخذ فعل فى صيغة المفرد بعدها :

ex.: - Meat is my favourite food.

some : بعض من

• تستخدم مع الجملة الخبرية المثبتة والسؤال فى حالة العرض والطلب .

ex.: - I have some books. (جملة خبرية مثبتة)
- Would you like some tea ? (عرض)
- Can you give me some apples ? (طلب)

any : أى

• تستخدم مع الجملة الخبرية المنفية والاستفهامية .

ex.: - There isn't any juice. (جملة منفية)
- Are there any pens ? (جملة استفهامية)

Read and correct the underlined words :

1. No, there aren't some loaves. (..........)
2. Cheese are my favourite food. (..........)
3. There isn't any canals near our village. (..........)
4. Can I have any water, please ? (..........)

III Important Paragraphs ٣. أهم الفقرات الإنشائية

السؤال السادس فى ورقة الامتحان

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

يكتب الطالب موضوعًا إنشائيًا من حوالى ثمانين كلمة ويعتبر هذا السؤال من الأسئلة التى تحتاج إلى مزيد من التدريب ولذلك نقدم لك موضوعات إنشائية هامة لكل وحدة كما يمكنك مراجعة موضوعات أخرى بإجاباتها النموذجية فى نهاية كتاب الشرح.

Model Paragraph 1

"My family"

My name's Ali. My mum's name is Amira. She is a teacher in my school. She is a teacher of English. She helps me study my lessons at home. My dad is a doctor. His name is Ramzy. He works at a nearby hospital. He helps sick people get well. I have got two sisters, Sama and Samira. They are twins. I am in prep one. I go to a preparatory school for boys. My sisters are younger than me. They go to a primary school. We play with each other at the weekend.

Model Paragraph 2

"Voluntary work"

I like voluntary work. We do voluntary work on Saturday afternoon. My sister and I help in children's hospital. We play games with the children there. We read stories to them, too. You can do voluntary work in many places. For example, you can help orphan children. They really need help. You can teach them. Helping poor people is also important. You can give them some money. They are in need, so helping them is important. Doing voluntary work is great.

Model Paragraph 3

"School rules"

School rules are important. We always wear our school uniform. We always help each other. We listen carefully to the teacher, too. We always do our homework. We never forget our pencil cases or notebooks. We don't say unkind things to other students. We arrive at school before lessons start. In the classroom, students don't talk to each other. When I want to ask our teacher, I put my hand up. It's important to come to school on time. Following the school rules is important.

Model Paragraph 4

"My favourite sports star"

Mohamed Salah is my favourite sports star. He is 1.75 meters tall. He is quite short for a footballer. He has got dark, curly hair and a beard. He usually has a big smile. He is a fast runner and he scores a lot of goals. He is very kind; he gives money to build schools and hospitals. He plays for a big team in England. Its name is Liverpool. Many Egyptians watch his matches. They feel very happy when Salah scores goals.

Model Paragraph 5

"A review on my favourite book"

I love reading so much. Last week, I read a book about life in mountains. The book is good but it has some information I don't believe so, I asked my teacher.

He told me it is a children's story ! I understood the idea and told the story to all my friends. They were very surprised when I told them. I think reading is very useful for all people. I advise everyone to read a lot. It is full of useful information.

Model Paragraph 6

"Technology"

I love technology. My favourite hobby is playing video games. I usually play them on my laptop but sometimes I play them on my mobile phone. I'd like to spend all day playing video games, but I have to go to school. My favourite lesson is computer studies. At break, I look at websites for new video games. Another thing I like to do about technology is making video calls. Video calls have become very famous. I can communicate with people all over the world in this way. Video calls make me feel that the person I speak to is with me !

Model Paragraph 7

"A picnic at Al-Azhar Park"

In October, we visited my uncle, aunt and cousins in Cairo. We had a picnic in Al-Azhar Park. We ate delicious food. Then, we played games. My brother, Ali rode his bike. We enjoyed our time. Al-Azhar Park is a beautiful place to go to. You can do many activities there. It's really wonderful. I hope to go there one day with my friends. I think it will be a very nice trip. Having picnics is a good thing as it teaches me a lot about nature and makes me feel better.

Model Paragraph 8

"My favourite dish"

My favourite meal is koshari. It is a delicious meal with rice, pasta and tomatoes. It is very popular in Egypt. I love it very much. All my family love it. Koshari isn't eaten with meat. It is served only with vegetables. You can eat it with salad. Some people eat it with hot sauce on the top. I see that koshari is healthy. Egyptians of all ages like eating it. It is also not expensive.

DAY 4

General Exercises collected from SB & WB

تدريبات عامة مجمعة من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات

I Vocabulary

Unit 1
Student's Book & Workbook

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Your sister is your parent's .... *(WB page 72)*
   a. niece b. daughter c. cousin d. mother
2. A group of people who play music together is called a .... *(WB page 73)*
   a. bin b. back c. band d. pond
3. Hazem and Hatem are .... They are brothers and aged 12. *(SB page 4)*
   a. twins b. double c. couple d. pairs
4. .... are animals that are like sheep. *(SB page 8)*
   a. Monkeys b. Cows c. Goats d. Buffaloes
5. .... is a difficult sport. *(SB page 10)*
   a. Drawing b. Physics c. Mathematics d. Gymnastics

Unit 2
Student's Book & Workbook

1. We know it is time for the next lesson when we hear the .... *(WB page 80)*
   a. ball b. bill c. bell d. pile
2. At break, I play games with my friends in the .... *(WB page 80)*
   a. office b. library c. playground d. ground
3. The children in the USA .... to school on a snowmobile. *(SB page 18)*
   a. take b. give c. stay d. travel
4. Some children in Egypt .... to school. Bikes are fantastic. *(WB page 82)*
   a. cycle b. play c. meet d. drive
5. Cars, buses, boats and trains are means of .... *(WB page 82)*
   a. port b. transport c. airport d. harbour

Unit 3
Student's Book & Workbook

1. A baby bird is very .... It cannot fly for many days. *(WB page 87)*
   a. weak b. poor c. rich d. strong
2. My aunt is very .... She always gives me big presents. *(WB page 87)*
   a. sad b. kind c. unkind d. poor
3. A .... person makes good decisions. *(WB page 89)*
   a. sensitive b. lazy c. sensible d. busy
4. A blog is a/an .... on which someone writes regularly. *(SB page 26)*
   a. playground b. office c. website d. library
5. Basel has got a/an .... because he cannot walk. *(SB page 30)*
   a. sofa b. bench c. armchair d. wheelchair

Unit 4
Student's Book & Workbook

1. They're taking .... I'm sending you one of their photos now. *(SB page 36)*
   a. selves b. selfies c. self d. yourself
2. Soha is not making a video .... , but she is talking to her friend. *(SB page 39)*
   a. cell b. call c. photo d. line
3. Mr Osman is .... his phone with a phone charger. *(SB page 34)*
   a. using b. killing c. charging d. breaking
4. Computers and mobiles are examples of .... *(WB page 100)*
   a. food b. technology c. subjects d. hobbies
5. It's important to .... safe online. *(WB page 100)*
   a. sleep b. save c. say d. stay

Unit 5
Student's Book & Workbook

1. A .... is a big, strong building from the past. *(WB page 104)*
   a. cattle b. castle c. kettle d. capital
2. A dolphin is a friendly .... animal. *(WB page 104)*
   a. wild b. land c. sea d. plant
3. A .... is something you buy to remember a holiday. *(WB page 104)*
   a. souvenir b. view c. prize d. medal
4. To .... is to sleep for a time in a tent. *(WB page 104)*
   a. stop b. step c. drop d. camp
5. There was a beautiful .... of the city from the top. *(SB page 50)*
   a. preview b. view c. review d. viewing

Unit 6

Student's Book & Workbook

1. You can boil water in a ______ . (WB page 110)
   a. saucepan b. teaspoon c. glass d. cup
2. ______ is not a cooking verb. (WB page 110)
   a. Play b. Boil c. Stir d. Add
3. The ______ which I always remember is fish and rice. (WB page 114)
   a. male b. mail c. meal d. mile
4. You shouldn't eat those crisps because they are ______ . (WB page 117)
   a. healthy b. kind c. unkind d. unhealthy
5. Fawzi thinks that the ______ of rice pudding is easy. (SB page 57)
   a. recipe b. recycling c. road d. equipment

2 Structures

Unit 1

Student's Book & Workbook

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. They're her bags. They're ______ . (SB page 3)
   a. his b. hers c. ours d. yours
2. Our parents are proud of ______ because we work hard at school. (WB page 72)
   a. ours b. us c. we d. yours
3. Throw the ball to ______, please. I am waiting. (WB page 72)
   a. my b. me c. mine d. I
4. Grandfather arrives at 5 o'clock. Let's go to meet ______ . (WB page 72)
   a. he's b. him c. he d. his
5. Clap for the football players. ______ played very well. (WB page 72)
   a. They b. Their c. Them d. Theirs
6. Heidi ______ with her grandfather. (SB page 8)
   a. live b. lives c. living d. is lived
7. Hany ______ basketball. He plays it every day. (WB page 73)
   a. loving b. loved c. loves d. is loving
8. What ______ you listen to on the radio ? - To music. (WB page 73)
   a. are b. does c. do d. were
9. They live in Port Said. We ______ them in the summer. (WB page 74)
   a. visit b. visits c. visiting d. are visited

10. Heidi's aunt ______ want Heidi to stay in the mountains. (WB page 75)
   a. don't b. doesn't c. isn't d. wasn't

Unit 2

Student's Book & Workbook

1. We ______ go to school on Fridays. (WB page 85)
   a. never b. sometimes c. always d. often
2. It is ______ very hot in summer. (WB page 85)
   a. never b. hardly c. ever d. usually
3. What are you very good ______ ? (WB page 83)
   a. on b. at c. for d. from
4. Amira ______ her homework after dinner. (SB page 20)
   a. does never b. never is c. is never d. never does
5. After dinner, I usually ______ a shower and read a book in bed. (SB page 20)
   a. had had b. have c. has d. having
6. She ______ breakfast with her family. (SB page 14)
   a. usually has b. has usually c. has often d. often have
7. This is the ______ room. (SB page 16)
   a. teacher b. teachers c. teacher's d. teachers'
8. It is ______ . (SB page 16)
   a. Huda notebook b. notebook Huda
   c. Huda's notebook d. Hudas' notebook
9. ______ pencil case is this ? - It's Noha's. (SB page 17)
   a. What b. Who c. Whose d. Whom
10. We ______ say unkind things to other students. (SB page 17)
   a. ever b. never c. doesn't d. aren't

Unit 3

Student's Book & Workbook

1. My best friend ______ got short, dark hair. (WB page 86)
   a. has b. have c. is d. are
2. He lives in England, so he ______ speak English. (WB page 87)
   a. can't b. can c. is d. be
3. Moustafa loves ______ art at school. (WB page 88)
   a. do b. does c. did d. doing

4. Does your father .... travelling to work ? (WB page 88)
a. likes b. like c. liked d. liking

5. I .... pick up that box. My arms are weak. (SB page 25)
a. must b. can c. can't d. mustn't

6. He is very good at .... (SB page 26)
a. drawing b. draws c. drew d. drawn

7. Basel cannot run, ... he is fast in his wheelchair. (SB page 30)
a. and b. because c. but d. so

8. I'm quite short .... dark hair. (WB page 9
a. of b. by c. with d. on

9. Osama likes playing football, basketball .... tennis. (WB page 9
a. and b. because c. but d. so

10. Fawzi and Hamdi .... painting. (SB page 3
a. love b. loves c. loving d. be loved

Unit 4

Student's Book & Workboo

1. There is a mouse .... the laptop on the teacher's desk. (WB page 9
a. near b. next c. in front d. across

2. .... there a mouse ? - Yes, there is. (WB page 9
a. Has b. Is c. Does d. Was

3. Are you wearing brown shoes ? - Yes, I .... (WB page 9
a. was b. are c. am d. is

4. To make a cup of tea, ... some water in a kettle and boil it. (WB page 99)
a. put b. puts c. putting d. is put

5. .... talk to people you don't know online. (WB page 100)
a. Doesn't b. Didn't c. Don't d. Isn't

6. To make a video call, ... your tablet on. (SB page 41)
a. turns b. turned c. turning d. turn

7. Is he .... football ? - No, he isn't. (SB page 43)
a. plays b. play c. playing d. played

8. My friend, Omar, ... his homework now. (SB page 34)
a. printed b. is printing c. printing d. prints

9. There are some laptops but there aren't .... tablets. (SB page 35)
a. some b. any c. no d. much

10. I'm playing chess online. I .... at the moment! (SB page 36)
a. win b. won c. am winning d. wins

Unit 5

Student's Book & Workbook

1. Last week, I .... from Cairo to Aswan. (WB page 107)
a. travel b. travelled c. travels d. travelling

2. When I was eight, we .... to Siwa. (SB page 46)
a. went b. go c. going d. were going

3. Near our house, there .... a busy market. (SB page 52)
a. were b. was c. are d. be

4. Where .... you go on holiday last year ? (WB page 104)
a. did b. do c. does d. done

5. The train .... Cairo at 8 o'clock and soon we passed Giza. (WB page 107)
a. leaves b. leaving c. left d. was left

6. Did you .... a mountain ? (SB page 48)
a. climb b. climbed c. to climb d. climbing

7. What time .... you go to sleep last night ? (WB page 108)
a. do b. did c. are d. were

8. I .... English and had a really great holiday at the same time ! (SB page 50)
a. learnt b. learn c. learning d. learns

9. My father bought our tickets at Ramses Station, then we .... on the train. (WB page 107)
a. were getting b. getting c. get d. got

10. Which lesson did you .... before English ? (WB page 108)
a. had b. have c. having d. were having

Unit 6

Student's Book & Workbook

1. Let's go to the shops. There is .... time before our train leaves. (WB page 115)
a. any b. too many c. enough d. few

2. There .... figs in the cupboard. (WB page 115)
a. is any b. are any c. aren't any d. aren't some

3. We .... eat too many crisps. They have too much salt and fat. (WB page 111)
a. should b. must c. shouldn't d. doesn't

4. Karim often .... a snack before he goes to bed. (WB page 111)
a. have b. has c. had d. are

5. .... there any hummus ? - No, there isn't. (SB page 55)
a. Does b. Is c. Are d. Do

6. There are .... of rice pudding recipes online. (SB page 57)
a. any b. a lot c. enough d. much

7. The saucepan is very hot. You shouldn't .... it. (WB page 111)
a. touched b. touches c. touch d. touching

8. There's .... cheese on the table. (SB page 63)
a. any b. some c. a lot d. many

9. Have we got .... rice to make koshari ? (SB page 63)
a. a lot b. many c. too many d. enough

10. We .... eat lots of fish. It doesn't have a lot of fat in it. (WB page 111)
a. should b. shouldn't c. haven't d. aren't

Structure

Read and correct the underlined words :

Unit 1

1. **Does** you play chess ? - Yes, I do. (SB page 6) (............)
....
2. I **doesn't** listen to music. I play football. (SB page 6) (............)
....
3. What **is** her hobbies ? (WB page 78) (............)
....
4. Seleem **don't** play tennis after school. (WB page 78) (............)
....

Unit 2

1. This is **Alis** phone. It's new! (WB page 81) (............)
....
2. We **always** walk to school. My dad and mum drive us to school. (SB page 14) (............)
....
3. Dina **go** swimming on Thursdays and Saturdays. (WB page 80) (............)
....
4. Those are my **brothers** jackets. They go to the same school. (WB page 81) (............)
....

Unit 3

1. Magda **don't** like swimming. (WB page 92) (............)
....
2. I **can** pick up that box. My arms are weak. (SB page 25) (............)
....
3. Mustafa loves playing football, but he doesn't like **play** tennis. (WB page 92) (............)
....
4. All my brothers and sisters have **get** dark, curly hair. (WB page 86) (............)
....

Unit 4

1. **Is** there any printers ? (WB page 95) (............)
....
2. Grandma is **read** a book. (WB page 96) (............)
....
3. Mum and my sister **make** a cake now. (WB page 96) (............)
....
4. There **isn't** any tablets. (SB page 35) (............)
....

Unit 5

1. Where did you **stayed** ? (WB page 104) (............)
....
2. We played games and Ali **rides** his bike. (SB page 46) (............)
....
3. What did you **ate** for dinner last night ? (SB page 49) (............)
....
4. They **don't** travel by car. They walked. (SB page 53) (............)
....

Unit 6

1. This cake is very sweet. There's too **many** sugar in it. (SB page 63) (............)
....
2. Are there **some** tomatoes in the fridge ? (SB page 63) (............)
....
3. Hany **should** eat snacks in the classroom. (WB page 111) (............)
....
4. There are too **much** people in the market today. (WB page 110) (............)
....

DAYS 5, 6 & 7

1. End of Term Practice

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Shorouk goes to school ....
   a. alone b. with Lubna only c. with her mother d. with Lubna and Alaa
2. Shorouk is in .... stage.
   a. nursery b. preparatory c. secondary d. university
3. Shorouk's parents work in ....
   a. the same place b. different places c. the same school d. a factory
4. .... work in a hospital.
   a. Alaa's parents b. Lubna's parents c. Shorouk's parents d. No parents

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Nessma and Reem go to the school library.

Reem : Good morning, Nessma, when will we start doing our research ?
Nessma : During the break.
Reem : Great. Where (1) .... ?
Nessma : In the school library.
Reem : Are (2) .... ?
Nessma : Of course, I'm ready.
Reem : Is it easy to find the books we need ?
Nessma : (3) ....
Reem : Who will help us there ?
Nessma : (4) ....
Reem : I hope (5) .... !

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following , then answer the questions :

My name is Mona. I want to be a doctor here in Cairo, so I always work hard at school. My favourite subjects are science and computer studies. I also want to speak good English to other children in different places. My teacher is very good, but I also like to use technology. I use a tablet to practise my English. Sometimes I use my phone, too! Last year, I learnt English in London with my family. It was fantastic! I cycled to summer school every day, and I met students from different countries. I now have a friend from Uganda! My favourite place was a river in Cambridge. It was very beautiful, but I didn't swim in it!

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What are Mona's favourite subjects ?
   ....
2. Why does she want to speak English ?
   ....
3. Is Mona right to use technology ? Why ?
   ....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined word "it" refers to ....
   a. Cairo b. technology c. a river d. summer school
5. Where is Mona now?
   a. In Egypt b. In England c. In Uganda d. In France
6. What does Mona use to practise her English?
   a. Her tablet b. Her phone c. Her laptop d. a and b
7. Mona is talking about her ....
   a. pets and hobbies b. life and friends c. boss at work d. travels to Uganda

D. Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. There are too .... people on this beach. Let's go to a different one.
   a. many b. much c. enough d. few
2. My uncle is very .... He chooses things wisely.
   a. strong b. tall c. fast d. sensible

3. I love sports. .... is my favourite school subject.
a. PE b. Maths
c. Computer Studies d. Art

4. The Egyptian football team arrived .... Uganda two days ago.
a. in b. at c. for d. from

5. On a .... weekend, Omar reads books at the club library.
a. tropical b. physical c. spicy d. typical

6. Ahmed likes history because he loves .... about the past.
a. learns b. to learning c. learning d. learnt

7. My father and mother are my ....
a. grandchildren b. parents c. cousins d. daughters

8. The tourists are .... a selfie next to the River Nile.
a. touching b. drawing c. relaxing d. taking

9. Tom is writing about his weekend in his online ....
a. 3D printer b. diary c. mouse d. laptop

10. Why don't we .... swimming next week ?
a. go b. do c. make d. see

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. What do you have for breakfast yesterday ? (........)
2. There are too much salt in this recipe. (........)
3. Amr shouldn't drink too many fruit juice. (........)
4. Gymnastics are my favourite sport. (........)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of 80 words about a typical day in your life :

....

2. Governorates Exams

امتحانات من المحافظات المختلفة

1 Cairo Governorate Dar El Salam Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى محادثة واختر الإجابة الصحيحة النصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. Asem lives with his ....
a. uncle b. father c. parents d. grandfather

2. Asem's grandfather is a/an ....
a. farmer b. doctor c. child d. engineer

3. Asem .... his grandfather.
a. helps b. teaches c. takes d. learns

4. Asem's grandfather ....
a. teaches English b. grows plants
c. builds roads d. helps sick people

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Nader and Tamer are talking about last holiday.

Nader : Where did you go on holiday last year ?
Tamer : I went to Alexandria.
Nader : Where did you (1) .... ?
Tamer : I stayed in my uncle's flat.
Nader : (2) .... did you travel there ?
Tamer : I travelled (3) .... train.
Nader : Did you swim in the sea ?
Tamer : (4) ....
Nader : What did you eat there ?
Tamer : I (5) .... when I was there.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Huda is an **orphan** girl. She lives with her grandfather. Her grandfather is an old man. He lives in a small house in a village. He has lots of goats. Huda sleeps in a bed in the attic of the house. She drinks goats' milk and eats bread and cheese. She sees birds and flowers. She loves the life in the village. She is very happy. One day, her aunt arrives and takes **her** to the city. Life in the city is exciting because there are a lot of places to visit, but Huda doesn't like to live in the city. She is very sad to be away from her grandfather.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

....

2. What does Huda see in the village?

....

3. Why do you think that life is exciting in the city?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined word "**orphan**" means someone who ....
   a. has no father or mother b. has no brother
   c. has no home d. has no food
5. The underlined pronoun "**her**" refers to ....
   a. grandfather b. mother
   c. aunt d. Huda
6. Huda's grandfather has lots of ....
   a. dogs b. cats c. goats d. lions

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. At school break, I play games with my friends in the ....
   a. office b. library c. playground d. hospital
2. Some children in Egypt .... to school. Bikes are fantastic.
   a. cycle b. play c. meet d. drive

3. A baby bird is very .... It can not fly for many days.
   a. poor b. weak c. rich d. strong
4. Computers and mobile phones are examples of ....
   a. food b. technology c. subjects d. hobbies
5. A dolphin is a friendly .... animal.
   a. wild b. land c. sea d. plant
6. A .... is something you buy to remember a holiday.
   a. souvenir b. view c. holiday d. lorry
7. My aunt is very .... She always gives me big presents.
   a. sad b. unkind c. poor d. kind
8. He lives in England, so he .... speak English.
   a. can't b. can c. is d. be
9. Is he .... football ? - No, he isn't.
   a. plays b. play c. playing d. played
10. Where .... you go on holiday last year?
   a. did b. do c. does d. doing

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. I **doesn't** listen to music. I play football. (........................)
2. Ahmed doesn't like **play** chess. (........................)
3. Are there **some** tomatoes in the fridge? (........................)
4. This is **Alis** phone. It's new. (........................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"My favourite sports star"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

2 Giza Governorate — Bulak El Dakrour Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Where is your school ? ....
   a. Far from my house b. Near my house
   c. Far from the shop d. Near the shop
2. How do you go to school ? ....
   a. On foot b. By car c. By bus d. By train
3. How is your school ? ....
   a. Big b. Small c. Clean d. Tidy
4. What's your mother's job ? ....
   a. A nurse b. A doctor c. A teacher d. A housewife

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Yara and Sally are talking about their future jobs.

Yara : What would you like to be ?
Sally : (1) ....
Yara : Why would you like to be a dentist ?
Sally : I'd like look after (2) ....
Yara : Wonderful. You should study hard to be a dentist, shouldn't you ?
Sally : Yes, of course. (3) .... ?
Yara : I want to be an engineer.
Sally : Great. (4) .... ?
Yara : The engineer designs machines.
Sally : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

I have got many friends, but Karim is my best friend. He has got short, dark, **straight** hair. He lives in Hurghada with his mum, dad and two sisters. His favourite subject is history because he loves learning about the past. He doesn't like art because he is not good at drawing or painting. His favourite sport is swimming. He goes swimming twice a week.

Karim is a big fan of Mohamed Salah. **He** always watches football matches on TV. And sometimes he goes to the club. In the club, he plays football with his friends.

a. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.
   ....
2. How often does Karim go swimming ?
   ....
3. Why do you think Karim goes to the club ?
   ....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Karim has got short, ... straight hair.
   a. dark b. light c. red d. brown
5. The underlined pronoun "**He**" refers to ....
   a. Mohamed Salah b. Karim
   c. Karim's father d. Karim's friend
6. The underlined word "**straight**" is the opposite of ....
   a. blond b. long c. curly d. short

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I'll send you a .... message soon.
   a. test b. text c. icon d. photo
2. Her dream is to go to the .... She is a top gymnast.
   a. physics b. mathematics c. Olympics d. economics

3. Egypt is the most important .... in Africa.
   a. city b. country c. town d. lake
4. I love .... I like watching trees, animals and flowers.
   a. technology b. game c. sport d. nature
5. My father is .... He always thinks well.
   a. bored b. nervous c. sensible d. strange
6. You should .... a lot of fruit and vegetables.
   a. eat b. ate c. eating d. eaten
7. This is Heba's book. It's ....
   a. she b. hers c. him d. he
8. There .... a 3D printer in our classroom.
   a. is b. are c. do d. does
9. It's important to stay .... online.
   a. angry b. worried c. colourful d. safe
10. I .... to my friends at break.
   a. study b. take c. talk d. draw

5 **Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. There aren't **some** figs in the fridge. (..................)
2. **Keeps** your password secret. (..................)
3. We **go never** to school on Friday. It's a holiday. (..................)
4. My uncle is **drink** tea at the moment. (..................)

E. Writing

6 **Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :**

"Your favourite hobby"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

3 Alexandria Governorate — El-Montazah Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. Where is your school ? It's .... my house.
   a. near b. far c. away d. long
2. How do you go to school ? ....
   a. By bus b. By car c. By bike d. By train
3. When do you arrive at your school ? ....
   a. Late b. On time c. At break d. After school
4. How is your journey to school ? ....
   a. Unhealthy b. Expensive c. Long d. Healthy

B. Language Functions

2 **Complete the following dialogue :**

Azza and Dalia are talking about having a day out.

Azza : Hi Dalia. I'm in the park with my family.
Dalia: What (1) .... you doing there ?
Azza : I'm (2) .... under a tree. It's very sunny.
Dalia: (3) .... your brothers sitting with you, too ?
Azza : No, they aren't. They are (4) .... football.
Dalia: Is your dad playing with them ?
Azza : No, he (5) .... He is not here. He's working today.
Dalia: What's your mother doing ?
Azza : Here she is. She's bringing me a drink. Thanks Mum.
Dalia: Have a nice day.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 **Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

My name is Andy. I'm from England. Last summer, I travelled to Egypt because I wanted to learn some Arabic. I went to a language school in

Cairo. I had a wonderful time. I was **there** for two weeks. The people in Cairo were very friendly. When I first went to the language school, I was not very good at Arabic. But the teachers helped me, and the lessons were fun. Cairo's shops are fantastic. I bought lots of **souvenirs**. My favourite place was the Cairo Tower. I enjoyed the view of the city from the top.

a. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage ?

....

2. What do you think of Andy's stay in Egypt ?

....

3. What was Andy's favourite place in Cairo ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Andy bought lots of souvenirs from Cairo shops. The word **"souvenirs"** means ....
   a. presents b. games c. subjects d. tickets
5. People in Cairo were very ....
   a. bad b. angry c. friendly d. busy
6. The underlined pronoun **"there"** refers to the ....
   a. Language school b. Cairo Airport
   c. Cairo Hospital d. Alexandria Library

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I usually play video .... on my laptop.
   a. websites b. films c. games d. calls
2. My uncle hasn't got a .... , but he has got a moustache.
   a. bread b. beard c. glasses d. hair
3. Our school is on the other side of the lake, so we go on a ....
   a. canoe b. bike c. foot d. snowmobile
4. We sometimes go to the .... to read some books.
   a. cinema b. playground c. school hall d. library

5. I don't like watching TV. I think it is ....
   a. interesting b. boring c. exciting d. funny
6. They have the same parents and the same birthday. They're ....
   a. cousins b. classmates c. mums d. twins
7. .... is a difficult sport, but it makes me happy.
   a. Gymnastics b. Gymnast c. Athletes d. Physics
8. We didn't stay in a hotel. We .... by the lake.
   a. camp b. are camping c. camped d. camps
9. Maher usually .... voluntary work at a hospital.
   a. do b. does c. done d. doing
10. There .... enough rice for all the family.
   a. is b. are c. should d. shouldn't

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. I **can** pick up the box. My arms are weak. (............)
2. Adel is my friend. **His** is a doctor. (............)
3. There's **any** cheese on the table. (............)
4. **Does** you go swimming after school ? (............)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your best friend"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

4 Qalyoubia Governorate — Benha Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. Ali is from ....
   a. El-Fayoum b. El-Tahrir c. Cairo d. El-Minia
2. How old is he ? ....
   a. 16 b. 13 c. 19 d. 17
3. Ali wants to be ....
   a. a teacher b. a doctor c. an engineer d. an officer
4. What is Ali's favourite subject ? ....
   a. English b. Art c. Science d. Arabic

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Reda is meeting Basim who bought a new mobile.

Reda : Good morning, Basim.
Basim : Good morning, Reda.
Reda : What a nice mobile ! When did you buy it ?
Basim : (1) ....
Reda : (2) .... ?
Basim : 1000 pounds.
Reda : (3) .... Can you come with me to buy one for my dad ?
Basim : (4) ....
Reda : (5) .... ?
Basim : We can go this evening.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

School starts at half past seven every day. Nabil lives **near** his school, so he goes to school on foot. He is kind and friendly. He works hard to pass the exams every year. He likes reading, so he goes to the school library twice a week. He hopes to be a doctor because he is good at maths, science and English. He likes meeting clever people, but he doesn't like meeting bad people. He also likes visiting new places. His favourite foods are fish, meat and rice. He helps his mother at home. **His** favourite sport is football.

a. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.
   ....
2. Do you think Nabil will be a doctor ? Why ?
   ....
3. How often does Nabil go to the school library ?
   ....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Nabil likes meeting .... people.
   a. bad b. clever c. unkind d. unhappy
5. The underlined pronoun "**His**" refers to ....
   a. food b. Nabil's father c. Nabil d. sport
6. The opposite of the word "**near**" is ....
   a. far b. close c. nearby d. crowded

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Can you tell me the .... of the delicious dish ?
   a. ingredients b. members c. raisins d. groups
2. Children like to build .... on the beach.
   a. cows b. rocks c. sandcastles d. water

3. Egypt is the most important .... in Africa.
a. village b. countryside c. city d. country

4. Last week, I had a lot of .... in Dream Park.
a. adventures b. stories c. animals d. mountains

5. Does your father have a .... on his face ?
a. leg b. arm c. hand d. moustache

6. My dad's brother is my ....
a. aunt b. uncle c. son d. grandfather

7. The twins are two children born at the .... time.
a. same b. different c. similar d. difficult

8. .... Samira like watching TV ?
a. Do b. Is c. Are d. Does

9. When do we .... swimming ?
a. goes b. go c. went d. going

10. They .... football yesterday.
a. played b. play c. playing d. was playing

5 **Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. This book belongs to Ali. It's **him**. (..................)
2. We didn't **bought** many bags yesterday. (..................)
3. There isn't **some** salt in the food. (..................)
4. He can't sleep as he has too **many** coffee. (..................)

E. Writing

6 **Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :**

"A visit to the zoo"

5 Sharkia Governorate

Fakous Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. How old is Ali ? ....
a. Seventy b. Thirty c. Three d. Thirteen

2. What is his mother's job ? ....
a. A housewife b. An engineer c. A nurse d. A teacher

3. How many brothers does Ali have ? ....
a. Five b. Three c. Two d. One

4. What is his grandmother called ? ....
a. Huda b. Hana c. Nada d. Lima

B. Language Functions

2 **Complete the following dialogue :**

Ziad tells Ayman about his friend, Samir.

Ziad : There is my friend, Samir.
Ayman : I don't (1) .... him.
Ziad : Really ?
Ayman : What does he (2) .... like ?
Ziad : He has (3) .... short, dark hair.
Ayman : Has he got (4) .... ?
Ziad : No, he can see well.
Ayman : Has he got blue eyes ?
Ziad : No, his eyes (5) ....
Ayman : Ok, I can see him.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 **Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

Once a train stopped at a small station and a woman opened the window. There was a boy outside and the woman said to him, "I don't

want to get out of the train as I am old and I can't walk fast. Please, run to the station Cafeteria and **get** me an ice cream and get **one** for yourself, too. Here is one pound. The boy "came back before the train moved again. He was eating an ice cream. He ran to the woman's window, gave her fifty piastres and said, "I am awfully sorry madam, there was only one ice cream in the Cafeteria. Here's the fifty piastres.

a. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage ?

....

2. What did the woman ask the boy to do ?

....

3. Why do you think the woman couldn't go to the Cafeteria ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The boy came back a few seconds ....
   a. when the train moved b. before the train moved
   c. after the train moved d. the moment the train moved
5. The verb "**get**" in the passage means ....
   a. give b. buy
   c. eat d. drink
6. The word "**one**" refers to ....
   a. the woman b. the boy c. ice cream d. cafeteria

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. He .... clever. He gets the full mark.
   a. is always b. always is c. is never d. never is
2. A brave person is happy to do something ....
   a. fun b. strange c. dangerous d. bad
3. There .... figs in the cupboard.
   a. is any b. are any c. aren't any d. aren't some

4. Something scary makes you feel ....
   a. sad b. bad c. funny d. frightened
5. Reading and chess are my favourite ....
   a. hopes b. foods c. meals d. hobbies
6. At break, I play games with my friends in the ....
   a. library b. chemist's c. bookshop d. playground
7. He is friendly and always talks to his ....
   a. bans b. pins c. vans d. fans
8. The children used to .... sandcastles on the beach.
   a. make b. do c. learn d. teach
9. Everyone .... snacks.
   a. love b. loves c. loving d. is loved
10. Rice, pasta and tomatoes are the main .... of koshari.
   a. recipes b. ingredients c. members d. fans

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **Who** car is this ? (....................)
2. We don't like **watch** TV. (....................)
3. Too much sugar is bad **at** our bodies. (....................)
4. Is Sama **wear** glasses ? (....................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your best friend"

....
....
....

6 Menoufia Governorate — Shebin El Koum Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. How old is Yara ? ....
   a. 8 b. 12 c. 10 d. 9
2. Where does she live ? - In ....
   a. Giza b. Tanta c. Cairo d. Aswan
3. She lives with her ....
   a. uncles b. cousins c. family d. aunts
4. Yara's father is a ....
   a. nurse b. doctor c. farmer d. teacher

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Said and Omar are talking about their favourite hobbies.

Omar : Hi Said ! Pleased to meet you.
Said : Hi Omar. (1) .... is your favourite hobby ?
Omar : I like sports. I play football (2) .... Fridays.
Said : (3) .... do you play it ?
Omar : In the club.
Said : Who do you play it with ?
Omar : I play it with (4) ....
Said : Do you have any other hobbies?
Omar : Yes, I (5) .... reading.
Said : I like reading, too.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

I am Ahmed and this is my picture of my classroom. We often use tablets in schools. There are two laptop computers in the classroom, too.

One laptop has got a mouse. I don't know why it is called a mouse. There is a printer, too. I have got a mobile phone in my bag. I don't use it in the class. We shouldn't use a mobile phone in the class. Mr Nasser has got a mobile phone on his desk. He is charging it with a phone charger. He has got a new MP3 player. It is **small** and blue. Can you see **it** ?

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.
....
2. Where do we often use tablets ?
....
3. Do you think we should use a mobile phone in the class ?
....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun " it" refers to the ....
   a. laptop b. mouse c. tablet d. MP3 player
5. The underlined word "small" is the opposite of ....
   a. large b. tiny c. special d. smart
6. The laptop has got a/an ....
   a. mouse b. board c. MP3 player d. pencil

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... are animals that are like sheep.
   a. Dinosaurs b. Goats c. Parrots d. Cows
2. The .... rings when a lesson starts and finishes.
   a. bell b. drum c. telephone d. ball
3. Mohamed Salah scores a lot of ....
   a. glasses b. scarfs c. goals d. goods
4. A .... is used to make water hot.
   a. key b. cattle c. kite d. kettle

5. A .... is a place to stay for a holiday.
   a. holiday flat b. library c. castle d. restaurant
6. When you do exercise and eat well, you become ....
   a. unhealthy b. healthy c. dirty d. ugly
7. There isn't .... pollution in the country. It is clean.
   a. some b. any c. a d. an
8. Heba learned how to cook in the .... lesson.
   a. music b. art
   c. home economics d. Arabic
9. The ball is next .... the box.
   a. in b. at c. to d. on
10. Has your brother .... long hair ?
   a. get b. gets c. getting d. got

5 **Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. Don't **eating** when you use a computer. (..................)
2. This is Ali's book. It is **mine**. (..................)
3. He is **read** his English book now. (..................)
4. Where **do** you go last holiday? (..................)

E. Writing

6 **Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :**

"A day on the beach"



7 **Gharbia Governorate** Basyoun Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Ahmed goes to school ....
   a. by car b. by bus c. by train d. on foot
2. Ahmed lives in ....
   a. Tanta b. Aswan c. Cairo d. Benha
3. Ahmed is not good at ....
   a. singing b. drawing c. eating d. cooking
4. Ahmed's favourite subject is ....
   a. art b. history c. science d. English

B. Language Functions

2 **Complete the following dialogue :**

Samy meets a British tourist.

Samy : Welcome to Egypt. Where are you from ?
Tourist : (1) ....
Samy : England ! (2) .... ?
Tourist : No, I haven't. It's my first visit to Egypt.
Samy : What places have you visited ?
Tourist : (3) ....
Samy : (4) .... ?
Tourist : I am going to stay here for two weeks.
Samy : I hope you will enjoy your visit.
Tourist : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 **Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

Hoda is a student at a preparatory school. She walks to school because <u>It</u> is near her house. She likes reading, so she goes to the library

to read **different** books. Hoda likes visiting new places and meeting clever people. Her father and her only brother like her because she helps her mother at home.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the main idea of the passage ?
....
2. How many persons are there in Hoda's family ?
....
3. How do you know that Hoda likes reading ?
....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined word "**it**" refers to ....
a. Hoda b. Hoda's school c. the library d. Hoda's home
5. Hoda likes meeting .... people.
a. bad b. unkind c. clever d. lazy
6. The opposite of the underlined word "**different**" is ....
a. ugly b. similar c. dangerous d. incredible

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My father's daughter is my ....
a. mother b. sister c. aunt d. cousin
2. Abdu studies hard to .... his dreams.
a. achieve b. leave c. stay d. finish
3. I usually get up at half .... six.
a. pass b. to c. passed d. past
4. How .... do you go to the club ?
a. many b. much c. often d. long
5. Asmaa likes .... photos of butterflies.
a. making b. doing c. looking d. taking

6. Are there .... apples in the fridge ?
a. a b. an c. any d. much
7. I don't like watching TV. It is ....
a. boring b. exciting
c. interesting d. nice
8. .... you at the party last night ?
a. Do b. Did c. Were d. Had
9. Football is my favourite ....
a. sport b. food c. subject d. character
10. It is important to .... safe online.
a. stay b. say c. give d. leave

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. This is not your pen. It is **me**. (...............)
2. We **is** got an apple tree in our garden. (...............)
3. They are **plays** chess now. (...............)
4. Where did Magdy **spent** the weekend ? (...............)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A visit to the beach"

....



8 Dakahlia Governorate

Aga Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

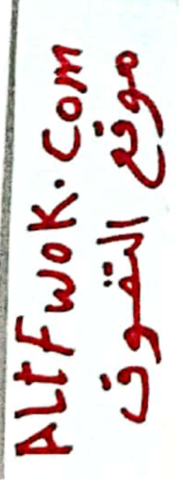
1. What is Alice's Adventures in Wonderland ?
   a. A children's story b. A men's book
   c. A magazine d. A newspaper
2. Who helps Alice ?
   a. A cow b. A rabbit c. A queen d. A cat
3. What is Alice like ?
   a. Poor b. Weak and unkind
   c. Brave and clever d. Slow and sad
4. What kind of people does she meet there ?
   a. Boring b. Interesting c. Poor d. Rich

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Kazem is talking about his trip.

Aser : What are you doing now ?
Kazem : I'm looking at (1) .... of my trip.
Aser : Photos of your trip! Where (2) .... you go ?
Kazem : I went to Paris.
Aser : What places did you visit ?
Kazem : I visited (3) ....
Aser : What did you (4) .... there ?
Kazem : I bought some souvenirs.
Aser : Can I see them ?
Kazem : (5) .... Here they are.



C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

The River Nile is very important for all Egyptians. It's the longest river in the world. Some use it to catch fish, others use it to travel in small boats. But, the most important thing is that we use the Nile for irrigating our lands.

Once a man said. "The Nile is the true friend of the farmer". So we need to keep its water clean. Bad people throw **rubbish** and dead animals in the Nile. All those people should be punished.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the main idea of the passage ?
   ....
2. Why should bad people be punished ?
   ....
3. Do you think the Nile is important ? Why / Why not ?
   ....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

4. The underlined word "it" refers to ....
   a. fish b. boat c. the Nile d. water
5. The Nile is a true friend to the ....
   a. farmers b. doctors c. carpenters d. driver
6. The word "**rubbish**" means ....
   a. hobby b. litter c. paper d. forest

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... is the language of Arab countries.
   a. English b. Arabic c. French d. Japanese
2. My mother always cooks .... food. We all like it.
   a. dark b. busy c. delicious d. kind
3. He plays the piano in a famous ....
   a. band b. bank c. bike d. break

4. You should keep your password ....
a. easy b. famous c. known d. secret

5. Karim has a .... before he goes to bed.
a. snack b. castle c. bell d. lake

6. Mohamed Salah has got .... hair.
a. blond b. straight c. sensible d. curly

7. Habiba Marzouk .... for five or six hours every day.
a. boils b. camps c. trains d. clicks

8. This is my aunt. .... name is Amal.
a. His b. Her c. Hers b. She

9. Look! Adel .... in the garden.
a. works b. are working c. is working d. work

10. Nader has got a wheelchair .... he cannot walk very well.
a. so b. because c. and d. but

5 **Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. Amr shouldn't drink too <u>many</u> fruit juice. (..................)
2. Ahmed likes <u>watch</u> TV in the evening. (..................)
3. You are very good <u>of</u> playing tennis. (..................)
4. What <u>do</u> you have for breakfast yesterday ? (..................)

E. Writing

6 **Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :**

"Your holiday"

....

....

....

....

....

....

9 Beheira Governorate — Mahmoudiyah Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

استمع الى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. Egypt and Sudan are in ....
a. Asia b. Africa c. Europe d. America

2. Arabic is a ....
a. language b. country c. city d. place

3. All Arab countries speak ....
a. English b. French c. German d. Arabic

4. .... is in Asia.
a. Egypt b. Morocco c. Oman d. Sudan

B. Language Functions

2 **Complete the following dialogue :**

Adel is at the supermarket.

Adel : Hello, How are you ?
Assistant : Hello, fine thanks, How can I (1) .... you ?
Adel : Have you (2) .... cheese ?
Assistant : Yes, we have got some. How much do you want ?
Adel : I (3) .... a half kilo.
Assistant : (4) .... you are.
Adel : How much does it cost ?
Assistant : It (5) .... thirty pounds.
Adel : Thanks a lot.
Assistant : You're welcome.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Every morning, children from a far village **cycle** to school. It is a cheap and healthy way to travel. They can always arrive on time. It is also hard for children who live next to the lake in Uganda. Their school is on the other side of the lake, so they don't walk to school. They go on a canoe. **It** takes them to school and home again every day. In winter there is a lot of snow in the USA, so the children travel to school in a snowmobile!

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.

....

2. Do you think it is useful to go to school on a bike ? Why / Why not ?

....

3. Why do children in the USA use a snowmobile in winter ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The verb **cycle** means ....
   a. go on foot b. go by bike
   c. go in a canoe d. go by boat
5. The underlined pronoun "**It**" refers to ....
   a. a canoe b. a village c. a school d. a snowmobile
6. They use a snowmobile in ....
   a. Egypt b. Uganda c. France d. America

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Your mum or dad's brother is your ....
   a. uncle b. daughter c. cousin d. aunt
2. An .... has no mother or father.
   a. uncle b. aunt c. orphanage d. orphan

3. Habiba has no time to lose. She is always ....
   a. free b. lazy c. busy d. easy
4. A sensible person ....
   a. makes good decisions b. has no time
   c. is very tall d. is unfriendly
5. .... is not a cooking verb.
   a. Pudding b. Boil c. Add d. Stir
6. My family .... a picnic in Al Azhar park yesterday.
   a. made b. rode c. did d. had
7. In the USA, there is a lot of .... in winter, so they use a snowmobile.
   a. snow b. wind c. rain d. storm
8. My father has a red shirt, but .... is blue.
   a. his b. hers c. mine d. theirs
9. All my brothers and sisters .... dark curly hair.
   a. 's got b. 've got c. get d. got
10. Mustafa loves .... art at school.
   a. does b. do c. did d. doing

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. My brother **does** his homework at the moment. (..................)
2. The beach **were** far from Sayed's home. (..................)
3. The **mens'** shirts are colourful. (..................)
4. He **always is** happy. (..................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A trip to Alexandria"

....

10 Kafr El-Sheikh Governorate — Motobis Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. Where did Soha spend her holiday ?
   a. In Paris b. In Rome c. In Italy d. In Madrid
2. How was the food ?
   a. Salty b. Bad c. Cold d. Delicious
3. What is Paris famous for ?
   a. The Eiffel Tower b. The Pyramids
   c. The High Dam d. The Sphinx
4. What did Soha buy for Nada ?
   a. A bag b. A postcard
   c. A souvenir d. An MP3 player

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Nour is telling Sarah about her trip.

Sarah : What are you doing ?
Nour : I'm (1) .... the photos of my trip.
Sarah : Where did you go ?
Nour : I (2) .... to Paris.
Sarah : What places did you (3) .... ?
Nour : I visited the Eiffel Tower and the museum.
Sarah : What did you (4) .... there ?
Nour : I bought some souvenirs.
Sarah : Can I see them ?
Nour : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Egypt is a big country in Africa. It is a fine country. Every year, a lot of tourists come to visit Egypt. They come by air or by sea. Most of them prefer visiting Egypt in winter because it is usually warm. They visit a lot of beautiful places. They visit the Egyptian Museum in Cairo. They also go to Giza to see the Pyramids and the Sphinx. They go to Luxor to see the Temple of Karnak. In summer, they go to the beaches to enjoy swimming and fishing. They spend a lot of money which is important for Egypt.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Why do you think tourists prefer visiting Egypt in winter ?
   ....
2. Give a suitable title for this passage.
   ....
3. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to ?
   ....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. Tourists can see the .... in Giza.
   a. sea b. pyramids c. beaches d. temple
5. The .... spent by tourists is very important for Egypt.
   a. time b. holiday c. food d. money
6. The underlined word "fine" means ....
   a. very bad b. very cold c. very hot d. very good

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I .... a wonderful time last week.
   a. had b. made c. did d. took
2. .... drinks are bad for your health.
   a. Crazy b. Fizzy c. Healthy d. Careful
3. A .... is something you buy to remember a holiday.
   a. castle b. view c. camp d. souvenir

4. To make a video call, ... on your tablet.
   a. turns   b. turned   c. turning   d. turn
5. Omar is .... He is happy to do something dangerous.
   a. coward   b. crazy   c. brave   d. ugly
6. I'd like to .... a selfie in front of the river.
   a. take   b. tap   c. do   d. make
7. We can read and borrow books in the ....
   a. laboratory   b. library   c. hospital   d. post office
8. She's only five, ... she can read and write.
   a. so   b. to   c. and   d. but
9. Something scary makes you feel ....
   a. sad   b. bad   c. funny   d. frightened
10. .... pencil is this ? - It's Heba's.
   a. Whose   b. When   c. Where   d. What

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. My uncle **buy** his house last summer. (..................)
2. Amira **don't** like spaghetti. (..................)
3. Ahmed and I **has** got curly hair. (..................)
4. The **childrens'** clothes are in that bag. (..................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your favourite school subject"

....

....

....

11 Damietta Governorate

El-Serw Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. I .... English very much.
   a. like   b. dislike   c. hate   d. know
2. English is my .... subject.
   a. bad   b. favourite   c. sad   d. old
3. I watch English ....
   a. books   b. pictures   c. films   d. drama
4. I read ....
   a. computer studies   b. Arabic
   c. art   d. stories

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed tells Ali about his visit to Giza.

Ali : Hello, Ahmed.
Ahmed : Hello Ali.
Ali : Where did you go last week ?
Ahmed : I (1) .... to Giza.
Ali : With whom ?
Ahmed : With my (2) ....
Ali : (3) .... did you see there ?
Ahmed : I saw the pyramids.
Ali : How (4) .... you go there ?
Ahmed : I went there by (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text passage, then answer the questions :

I'm Hala. I am a secondary school student. I'm from Damietta. I live in new Damietta with my family. My father is a taxi driver. My mother is

a teacher. I have a sister and two brothers. Salma is a pupil at a primary school. Ashraf and Hany are at a prep school. On holidays, **we** go to near parks. There, we play games and have a nice time. Sometimes, we have dinner at a restaurant near the park. We usually order pizza, rice and fish and drink juice. As our house is not **far**, we go back home on foot.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the main idea of the passage ?
....
2. What do you think about Hala's holiday ?
....
3. Where do they go on holidays ?
....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The word "**far**" is the opposite of ....
a. near b. good c. fine d. nice
5. Hala's brothers study at a ....
a. university b. secondary school c. prep school d. primary school
6. What does the underlined word "**we**" refer to ?
a. Hala and her sisters b. Hala and her brothers c. Hala and her parents d. Hala and her family

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. This is .... friend.
a. me b. I c. my d. mine
2. A band are people playing ....
a. music b. sport c. football d. tennis
3. Pupils .... their homework every day.
a. do b. make c. sit d. set

4. .... do you go to school ? - At 7 o'clock.
a. Where b. How c. When d. Why
5. The question is not difficult. It is ....
a. near b. easy c. far d. long
6. The car belongs .... my father.
a. with b. for c. to d. at
7. Football players .... the ball.
a. cake b. kick c. cook d. neck
8. The eagle is a big ....
a. bird b. animal c. insect d. fly
9. Players score by throwing the ball into a goal in ....
a. swimming b. chess c. handball d. boxing
10. .... come to Egypt to see monuments.
a. Bats b. Thieves c. Scientists d. Tourists

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. We enjoy **watch** TV. (..................)
2. I don't need **some** help. (..................)
3. She **walk** to school every morning. (..................)
4. There **is** 40 pupils in the classroom. (..................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your father"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

12 Port Said Governorate — East Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. Where did you travel last week ?
   a. To Cairo b. To Aswan c. To Port Said d. To Tanta
2. Where did your father buy the tickets ?
   a. At Ramses Station b. At Alexandria
   c. At the train d. At the cinema
3. How did you travel ?
   a. By taxi b. By train
   c. By plane d. By car
4. How was the journey ? - It was ....
   a. fine b. cool
   c. bad d. hot

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Nada and Malak are talking about their school timetable.

Nada : That's the bell. What is the next lesson ?
Malak : Let's look at the timetable.
Nada : We have got computer (1)........................ .
Malak : Yes, I love it. It's my (2)...................... subject.
Nada : I am not good at computer studies.
Malak : So, what are your favourite (3)........................ ?
Nada : I love science and languages.
Malak : What languages are you good (4)........................ ?
Nada : I am quite good at English.
Malak : Oh, I (5)...................... like languages. I am bad at English.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Ahmed and Soha were in the dinning room and their parents were at work. Soha was doing her homework. They thought their sister Salma was playing with her toys. Soha saw some water. **It** was coming through the floor. Ahmed and Soha went to the bathroom. They found Salma. She was playing with her toys. There was a lot of water on the bathroom floor and it was running into the dinning room. They talked about the water and decided to dry the floor. They used some of their father's old newspapers. Ahmed decided to phone his mother and father and tell them about the water.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.
   ....
2. How did Ahmed and Soha dry the floor ?
   ....
3. How many persons are there in the family ?
   ....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun "**It**" refers to the ....
   a. floor b. vapour c. dinning room d. water
5. While Ahmed and Soha were in the dinning room, their parents were at ....
   a. school b. home c. work d. bedroom
6. There was a lot of water on the .... floor.
   a. bedroom b. bathroom c. hall d. kitchen

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. There is .... milk in the fridge.
   a. some b. any c. a lot d. many
2. Maher .... voluntary work at a hospital.
   a. goes b. gives c. plays d. does

3. At break, I play games with my friends in the ....
   a. playground b. hall c. classroom d. office
4. We .... go to school on Fridays.
   a. never b. always c. usually d. sometimes
5. We can give money to help .... people.
   a. weak b. poor c. slow d. rich
6. A blog is a/an .... diary.
   a. online b. offline c. inline d. line
7. Is she .... with a pen or a pencil?
   a. write b. writes c. writing d. to write
8. We went on a trip in the desert and slept in ....
   a. rocks b. tents c. sandcastles d. towers
9. A/An .... is a child with no mother or father.
   a. nephew b. orphan c. poor d. parent
10. We .... two maths lessons on Tuesday.
   a. make b. do c. have d. go

5 **Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. **Have** she got blond hair? (............)
2. I **drink** tea at the moment. (............)
3. There **aren't** a charger. (............)
4. I **eat** fish last week. (............)

E. Writing

6 **Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :**

"Your favourite sport"

....

....

13 Beni Suef Governorate

El-Wasta Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Where is Nader? - He is in his ....
   a. playground b. classroom c. car d. homework
2. How many laptops are there in the classroom?
   a. 3 b. 4 c. 2 d. 5
3. There is one .... in the classroom.
   a. laptop b. MP3 player c. tablet d. printer
4. Who is printing his homework?
   a. Omar b. Nader c. Ali d. Tarek

B. Language Functions

2 **Complete the following dialogue :**

Khaled is at a restaurant.

Waiter : Hello. What would you like today?
Khaled : Hello. (1) .... you got any pizzas?
Waiter : Yes, small or large?
Khaled : (2) .... , please. I am not very hungry.
Waiter : (3) .... would you like to drink?
Khaled : I'd like to drink some apple (4) .... , please.
Waiter : Anything else?
Khaled : No, thanks. How much are these?
Waiter : These are 70 (5) .... , please.
Khaled : Thank you. Here you are.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Rana is an **orphan** girl. She went to live with her uncle Adnan who was a shepherd in the Western Desert. He lived in a small house and he had a lot of goats and camels. Rana slept in a bed made from animal's skin and drank goat's milk. She ate bread and cheese. She made friends with a female camel, which she called Felfela. She loved her and **they** went on long walks in the desert. Rana had many adventures in the desert. She loved the life of desert and mountains.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.
....
2. What did Adnan have ?
....
3. What do you think of life in the desert ?
....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The word **"orphan"** means?
a. has no father or mother b. has no friends
c. has no brothers d. has no sisters
5. Felfela is a .... camel.
a. male b. bad c. baby d. female
6. The underlined pronoun **"they"** refers to ....
a. Rana b. Felfela c. a & b d. Adnan

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Your sister is your parent's ....
a. niece b. cousin c. daughter d. mother
2. .... is a difficult sport.
a. Drawing b. Physics c. Mathematics d. Gymnastics

3. Basel has got a/an .... because he cannot walk.
a. wheelchair b. sofa c. armchair d. bench
4. Computers and mobiles are examples of ....
a. food b. technology c. subjects d. hobbies
5. A baby bird is very .... It cannot fly for many days
a. strong b. weak c. happy d. rich
6. A .... is a big, strong building from the past.
a. cattle b. castle c. kettle d. capital
7. Fawzi thinks that the .... of rice pudding is easy.
a. recipe b. recycling c. road d. equipment
8. Clap for the football players. .... played very well.
a. Their b. Them c. They d. Theirs
9. Amira .... her homework after dinner.
a. does never b. never is c. is never d. never does
10. Fawzi and Hamdi .... painting.
a. love b. loves c. loving d. be loved

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. He arrived **on** Uganda last week. (..............)
2. They **don't** travel by car. They walked. (..............)
3. Hany **should** eat snacks in the classroom. (..............)
4. What **is** your sister look like? (..............)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your visit to the pyramids"

....
....
....

14 Fayoum Governorate

Youssef El-Sadeek Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

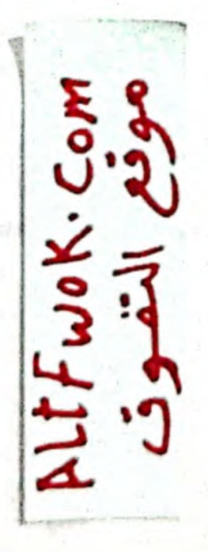
1. Soha is .... years old.
   a. 3 b. 30 c. 13 d. 23
2. Soha goes to school by ....
   a. bike b. plane c. car d. bus
3. Soha is a .... student.
   a. fast b. clever c. lazy d. bad
4. Soha has computer studies .... a week.
   a. once b. three times c. four times d. twice

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Anas is asking Ahmed about his holiday.

Anas : Hi, Ahmed. How was your holiday ?
Ahmed : Hi, Anas. It was great, thanks.
Anas : Where did you go ?
Ahmed : I (1) .... to France.
Anas : Did you (2) .... the Eiffel Tower ?
Ahmed : Yes, I did.
Anas : Did you enjoy your time there ?
Ahmed : No, I didn't because I (3) .... very ill.
Anas : (4) .... did you come home ?
Ahmed : I came back (5) .... Sunday.



C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Most people have three meals every day, breakfast, lunch and dinner. But in fact most of **them** don't care about what they should eat for each meal. Doctors say that healthy food is very **vital**, and people should eat lots of fruits and vegetables. People should not eat too many cakes. Doctors advise people to drink a lot of water and milk every day and not to have too many sugar drinks. To keep healthy, doctors advise people not to stay at home all the time. They should go for walks, do exercise or practise any sport.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.
   ....
2. Why do you think people should eat lots of fruits and vegetables ?
   ....
3. What do doctors advise people not to do ?
   ....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined word "**them**" refers to ....
   a. doctors b. people c. fruits d. meals
5. .... people care about food.
   a. All b. A lot of c. Few d. No
6. The underlined word "**vital**" means very ....
   a. important b. bad c. dark d. secret

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We play .... together on Saturday.
   a. subject b. cheese c. playground d. chess
2. The .... rings at the end of the lesson.
   a. pill b. bell c. hall d. bill

3. Things which are .... make you feel frightened.
   a. scary b. cute c. good d. nice
4. .... on the icon on your laptop.
   a. Write b. Take c. Click d. Send
5. We went to Siwa and slept in a .... in a mountain.
   a. view b. river c. cave d. park
6. We shouldn't have a lot of .... drinks.
   a. healthy b. fizzy c. good d. careful
7. We use the .... to make water hot.
   a. cattle b. kite c. can d. kettle
8. This is the .... ball.
   a. children's b. childrens' c. child d. children
9. Tarek and .... cousin went to the park.
   a. her b. him c. his d. he
10. I .... got brown hair.
   a. don't have b. hasn't c. doesn't have d. haven't

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Are you **use** a tablet ? (............)
2. **Did** you in Alexandria last week ? (............)
3. They have too **enough** sugar in them. (............)
4. He never **playing** in the street. (............)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Holidays"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

15 Minia Governorate

Abu-Korkas Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Where did Fatma spend her holiday ?
   a. In Paris b. In Rome c. In Italy d. In Madrid
2. How was the food ?
   a. Nasty b. Bad c. Expired d. Delicious
3. What is Paris famous for ?
   a. The Eiffel Tower b. The Pyramids
   c. The High Dam d. The Sphinx
4. What did Fatma buy for Azza ?
   a. T-shirt b. A postcard c. A souvenir d. Nothing

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Rana and Maya are talking about food.

Rana : What is your favourite food ?
Maya : It is (1) ....
Rana : Fantastic. What are its (2) .... ?
Maya : (3) ...., tomatoes and pasta.
Rana : Is it (4) .... ?
Maya : Yes, koshari is very delicious.
Rana : What else do you like ?
Maya : I enjoy (5) .... fish. What about you ?
Rana : I like kofta very much.
Maya : Wonderful!

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Many tourists come to Egypt from all over the world. Some of them come by ship, but most of them come by plane. Egypt is a popular place

for a holiday. In Egypt, tourists can visit many exciting places and do many interesting things. In Alexandria and Hurghada, **they** can enjoy beaches and delicious food. In Giza, they like to visit the Pyramids. There, they ride camels and enjoy taking photos. In old Cairo, they visit many historical places. The most famous place in old Cairo is Khan El-Khalili. It is famous for its markets and bazaars. They go to Luxor and Aswan to enjoy the High Dam and the **ancient** temples. They always say that Egypt is a safe country.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What can tourists enjoy in Hurghada ?

2. Give a suitable title for the passage.

3. How do most tourist come to Egypt ?

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The word **"they"** refer to ....
   a. tourists b. Egyptians
   c. holidays d. Luxor and Aswan
5. The word **"ancient"** is the same meaning as ....
   a. new b. modern c. happy d. very old
6. Egypt is a/an .... country.
   a. sad b. safe c. dangerous d. ugly

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The .... for making pizza was easy.
   a. recipe b. cookie c. directions d. ingredient
2. Mohammed Salah is very good at .... goals.
   a. kicking b. scoring c. hitting d. diving
3. We went on a boat .... last week.
   a. way b. flight c. voyage d. trip

4. Social studies and science are school ....
   a. objects b. subjects c. teams d. groups
5. At break, Ahmed and Ali play .... together in the study room.
   a. cheese b. maths c. sailing d. chess
6. To .... is to sleep for a time in a tent.
   a. comb b. camp c. climb d. clip
7. Put rice and water in a .... before cooking rice pudding.
   a. bag b. teaspoon c. saucepan d. cup
8. Aya is not very good at science, ... she is very good at English.
   a. so b. because c. and d. but
9. I .... with a dolphin in Hurghada last summer.
   a. swims b. swam c. swim d. swimming
10. At the moment, students .... to a story.
   a. listened b. are listening c. listens d. listen

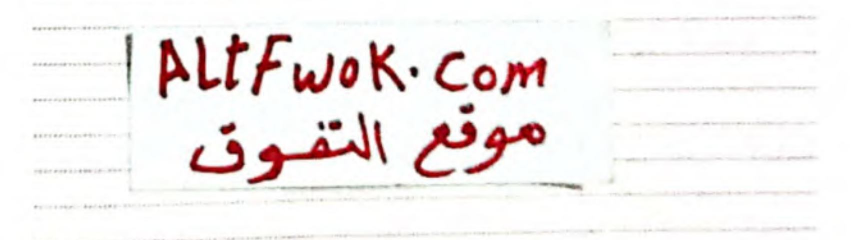
5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. It's not my camera. **My** is new. (........)
2. She doesn't have **some** meat. (........)
3. Does she like **watch** TV ? (........)
4. **Didn't** speak loudly. (........)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your family"



16 Assiut Governorate — Sedfa Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Where did Fatima spend her holiday ?
   a. In Jordan b. In Rome c. In Italy d. In England
2. How was the food ?
   a. Salty b. Sweet c. Spicy d. delicious
3. How did she go there ?
   a. By plane b. By bus c. By boat d. On foot
4. What did Fatima buy for Nada ?
   a. A T-shirt b. A postcard c. A souvenir d. Nothing

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Tamer is asking Mazin about his favourite sport.

Tamer : Do you like sports, Mazin ?
Mazin : Yes, I (1) ....
Tamer : What's your (2) .... sport ?
Mazin : Football.
Tamer : How often do you play it ?
Mazin : (3) ....
Tamer : (4) .... do you play it with ?
Mazin : I play it with my friends.
Tamer : Who is your favourite sports star ?
Mazin : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

My name is Mona. I'm 13 years old. I live in Assiut city. I like English, but art is my favourite subject. I like drawing and painting. I like drawing trees, farms and birds. My father is a doctor. **He** has got short dark hair and glasses. My mother is a teacher. I have got two sisters and a brother. In the summer holiday, we all go to Alexandria. I like swimming in the sea. My brother Ahmed **enjoys** making sandcastles with my younger sisters, Ola and Sara.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. How many people are there in Mona's family ?
   ....
2. Do you think Mona likes nature ? Why ?
   ....
3. What's the main idea of the passage ?
   ....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined word "He" refers to ....
   a. Ola b. Ahmed c. mother d. father
5. The word "**enjoys**" has the same meaning as "................".
   a. hates b. likes c. agrees d. gives
6. Mona likes drawing the ....
   a. technology b. languages c. nature d. sandcastles

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Don't tell anyone about your .... information on the internet.
   a. personally b. personality c. personal d. person
2. Your mum or dad's mother is your ....
   a. grandmother b. aunt
   c. grandfather d. grandparents
3. There is a beautiful .... from the top of the mountain.
   a. flat b. view c. camp d. review

4. I always eat .... of fruit at lunchtime.
   a. prices b. prizes c. spices d. pieces
5. A busy person is always ....
   a. brave b. frightened
   c. doing something d. talks
6. We should follow the school ....
   a. busses b. walls c. snacks d. rules
7. Habiba eats well because .... is a difficult sport.
   a. gym b. gymnastics c. gymnast d. gymnasium
8. Grandfather has got a wheelchair .... he cannot walk very well.
   a. so b. because c. and d. but
9. There are .... people in the market today.
   a. too much b. much c. a lot d. too many
10. They .... at website for information now.
   a. are looking b. looking c. looked d. look

5 **Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. Sara **doesn't** buy a camera yesterday. (........)
2. My sister goes to a **girl's** school. (........)
3. I have got a brother, **he** name is Moustafa. (........)
4. We **shouldn't** eat healthy food. (........)

E. Writing

6 **Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :**

"Your favourite subject"

....

17 Qena Governorate — Abo Tesht Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Shorouk goes to school ....
   a. alone b. with her mother
   c. with Lubna only d. with Lubna and Alaa
2. Shorouk is in .... stage.
   a. nursery b. preparatory
   c. secondary d. university
3. Shorouk's parents work in ....
   a. the same place b. different places
   c. the same school d. a factory
4. .... work in a hospital.
   a. Alaa's parents b. Lubna's parents
   c. Shorouk's parents d. No parents

B. Language Functions

2 **Complete the following dialogue :**

Nessma and Reem go to the school library.

Nessma : We'll start doing our research during the break.
Reem : Great. Where (1) .... ?
Nessma : In the school library.
Reem : Are (2) .... ?
Nessma : Of course, I'm ready.
Reem : Is it easy to find the books we need ?
Nessma : (3) ....
Reem : Who will help us there ?
Nessma : (4) ....
Reem : I hope (5) .... !

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Everyone loves snacks! But some snacks are bad. You can eat crisps and cakes, but you should not eat many of them. Crisps have much fat and salt. Cakes, chocolate and biscuits have much sugar which is bad for us.

Fruit is a great snack! It is very good for us and it has a sweet taste. You should eat between two and four pieces a day. Beans and vegetables are very good for us, so we should eat a lot of **them**. They are **delicious**. We should be careful, even with healthy foods. Olives, meat and fish sometimes have a lot of salt.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.
....
2. What do you think about snacks ?
....
3. How much fruit should you have every day ?
....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined word "**delicious**" is the opposite of ....
a. terrible b. good c. sweet d. healthy
5. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to ....
a. cakes b. crisps and cakes c. snakes d. beans and vegetables
6. Fish sometimes have ....
a. a lot of sugar b. a lot of salt c. a lot of fat d. a lot of food

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My mother told me the .... of this delicious meal.
a. members b. ingredients c. groups d. raisins

2. On a .... weekend, Omar reads books at the club library.
a. tropical b. physical c. spicy d. typical
3. My father and mother are my ....
a. grandchildren b. parents c. cousins d. daughters
4. Which of these is not a cooking verb ?
a. Pudding b. Boil c. Stir d. Add
5. It is .... very hot in the summer.
a. never b. always c. seldom d. rarely
6. A brave person is happy to do something ....
a. fun b. strange c. dangerous d. bad
7. Something scary makes you feel ....
a. sad b. bad c. funny d. frightened
8. This book belongs to me. It is ....
a. I b. mine c. hers d. my
9. We .... football on Tuesdays.
a. play usually b. plays usually c. usually playing d. usually play
10. I don't have a ...., but I have a moustache.
a. bread b. beard c. bird d. bride

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. What **do** you have for breakfast yesterday ? (..................)
2. Gymnastics **are** my favourite sport. (..................)
3. There are too **much** people in the market today. (..................)
4. These are my **sisters** shoes. Her name is Huda. (..................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A day with your family"

....

18 Sohag Governorate — Al Monshaa Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. What is Alice's Adventures in Wonderland ?
   a. A children's story b. A men's book
   c. A magazine d. A newspaper
2. Who helps Alice ?
   a. A cow b. A rabbit c. A queen d. A cat
3. What is Alice like ?
   a. Poor and thin b. Weak and unkind
   c. Brave and clever d. Slow and sad
4. What kind of people does she meet there ?
   a. Boring b. Interesting c. Poor d. Rich

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Anas tells Ali about his brother.

Anas : This is a photo of my brother.
Ali : What's his (1) .... ?
Anas : It's Adam.
Ali : How old is he ?
Anas : (2) ....
Ali : Where does he live ?
Anas : (3) .... in Sohag.
Ali : What's his favourite (4) .... ?
Anas : He loves fish with rice.
Ali : What's his favourite hobby ?
Anas : He likes (5) ....



C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Sham El-Nessim is my favourite time of the year. We enjoy <u>it</u> at the start of spring. Sham El-Nessim started in 2700 BCE! Today, most Egyptians have a picnic in a garden or next to the river with their families. Many people also go to the beach, where they make sandcastles and swim in the sea. On this day, we eat a lot of special food. Do you want to know how to enjoy <u>**feseekh**</u> ? Add lemon juice to the fish and have it with salad. It's delicious, but you should buy it from a good shop and you shouldn't eat much. Last year at Sham El-Nessim, we went to Alexandria. We visited our family and went to the beach. We rode our bikes and played games.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the main idea of the passage ?
   ....
2. Where did you spend your last Sham El-Nessim ?
   ....
3. What do you think about Sham El-Nessim ?
   ....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined word "<u>it</u>" refers to ....
   a. river b. meat
   c. Sham El-Nessim d. feseekh
5. **Feseekh** is a kind of ....
   a. meat b. castle c. program d. fish
6. They spent last Sham El-Nessim in ....
   a. Cairo b. Luxor c. Aswan d. Alexandria

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We put food in the .... to stay cold.
   a. pot b. pan c. fridge d. kitchen

2. It is always very .... in summer.
a. hot b. cold c. rainy d. snowy

3. He has got dark hair and a ....
a. beard b. heard c. bird d. tired

4. Camels are very .... They can carry 200 kilos of bags!
a. tall b. short c. weak d. strong

5. A busy person is always ....
a. talking b. walking
c. doing something d. laughing

6. Something scary makes you feel ....
a. sad b. bad c. funny d. frightened

7. Your .... is a word or numbers you use to go onto a website.
a. passport b. book c. bag d. password

8. .... any printers ?
a. There is b. Is there c. Are there d. There are

9. There is .... milk in the fridge.
a. some b. any c. few d. many

10. Look! She .... in the garden.
a. plays b. played c. play d. is playing

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Rana **never is** late. (..................)
2. She is sitting next **too** her friend. (..................)
3. They didn't **visited** the museum. (..................)
4. Have you **get** a beard ? (..................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your favourite subject"

....

19 Aswan Governorate — Korn Ombo Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع الى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Fatima is .... years old.
a. ten b. eleven c. twelve d. thirteen

2. Fatima has a twin ....
a. brother b. sister c. mother d. father

3. Fatima's mother is a ....
a. doctor b. teacher c. gymnast d. vet

4. Fatima and her family live in ....
a. Aswan b. Cairo c. Alexandria d. Giza

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed is in a restaurant.

Waiter : Hello, what would you like today ?
Ahmed : Hello, (1) .... you got any Pizza ?
Waiter : Yes, small or large ?
Ahmed : (2) .... please, I'm not very hungry.
Waiter : (3) .... would you like to drink ?
Ahmed : I'd like some orange (4) .... please.
Waiter : Anything else ?
Ahmed : No, thank you. How much are these ?
Waiter : That's 50 (5) .... please.
Ahmed : Thank you. Here you are.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Ali was a poor man, but he worked hard. His job was to clean the streets. One day, while he was **going back** home, he saw an old lady trying to cross the street. He hurried to help her, but she fell down and hurt her leg. He carried her to the nearest hospital. The doctor gave her some medicine, she called Ali and said to him "I have no family". I thank you for your help and this bag is for you". To his surprise **it** was full of money and the woman died after half an hour.

a. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.

....

2. Do you think Ali was a good man ? Why ?

....

3. Why was the woman alone ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "**it**" refers to ....
   a. hospital   b. the bag   c. street   d. her leg
5. The word "**going back**" means .... home.
   a. returning   b. selling   c. buying   d. driving
6. After giving Ali the bag, the lady ....
   a. went   b. slept   c. cried   d. died

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. There are too .... people on this beach. Let's go to a different one.
   a. many   b. much   c. enough   d. few
2. A .... person makes good decisions.
   a. lazy   b. foolish   c. sensible   d. maths

3. I love acting. .... is my favourite subject.
   a. Match   b. Drama   c. Art   d. Computer studies
4. Ahmed likes history because he loves .... about the past.
   a. learns   b. learnt   c. to learning   d. learning
5. A .... is a big strong building from the past.
   a. hall   b. circle   c. castle   d. cassette
6. The tourists are .... a selfie next to the River Nile.
   a. touching   b. drawing   c. relaxing   d. taking
7. We .... drink a glass of milk every day.
   a. should   b. can't   c. mustn't   d. shouldn't
8. Why don't we .... swimming next week ?
   a. do   b. make   c. go   d. see
9. On a .... weekend. Omar reads books at the club library.
   a. physical   b. spicy   c. tropical   d. typical
10. Adam is writing about his weekend in his online ....
   a. 3D printer   b. diary   c. mouse   d. laptop

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. What **do** you have for breakfast yesterday ? (....................)
2. **Keeping** your password secret. (....................)
3. You should **to clean** your teeth in the morning. (....................)
4. There **are** too much salt in this recipe. (....................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your favourite sport"

....

Listening Texts

نصوص استماع

Listening text page 4

A. Habiba Marzouk is a gymnast. She is 18. In the evenings, she trains for five or six hours. She wants to go to the Olympics.

B. Mohamed Salah is my favourite sports star. He plays football. He is very good at scoring goals. He is a fast runner.

End of term practice

Shorouk is 12. She is in preparatory 1. She goes to school with her sister Lubna. Shorouk's parents are doctors at a hospital.

Listening Texts of Governorate Exams

1 Cairo Governorate
Dar El Salam Educational Directorate

Asem lives with his grandfather in a small village. Asem's grandfather is a farmer. Asem is kind and helpful. He always helps his grandfather with his work. Asem's grandfather grows plants.

2 Giza Governorate
Bulak El Dakrour Educational Directorate

My school is far from my house. It is big and it has a playground. I go to school with my friend Ali on a bus. My mother is a nurse and she always helps me study my lessons.

3 Alexandria Governorate
El-Montazah Educational Directorate

I usually arrive at my school on time. I ride my bike to school as it is near my house. The journey to my school is nice and healthy.

4 Qalyoubia Governorate
Benha Educational Directorate

My name is Ali. I'm seventeen years old. I am from El-Minia. I'm in El-Minia secondary school. My favourite subject is science and I want to be a doctor.

5 Sharkia Governorate
Fakous Educational Directorate

Ali is thirty years old. He has got two brothers and a sister. She is called Sara. Ali's mother is a teacher. They all live with their grandmother. She is called Nada.

6 Menoufia Governorate
Shebin El Koum Educational Directorate

My name is Yara. I'm twelve years old. I'm from Aswan and I live with my family there. My father works in a hospital. He is a famous doctor.

7 Gharbia Governorate
Basyoun Educational Directorate

Ahmed lives in Tanta with his father. He is sixteen years old. He goes to school on foot. He is not good at drawing. His favourite subject is English. He likes watching English films.

8 Dakahlia Governorate
Aga Educational Directorate

Alice's Adventures in Wonderland is a famous children's story. Alice meets lots of interesting people. She is brave and clever. A cat helps her to find different places and characters.

9 Beheira Governorate
Mahmoudiyah Educational Directorate

Egypt and Sudan are in Africa but Oman is in Asia. They are Arab countries. They speak Arabic. Arabic is a great language.

10 Kafr El-Sheikh Governorate
Motobis Educational Directorate

Soha spent her holiday in Paris. She travelled by plane. She had lunch in the afternoon. The food was delicious. She bought a souvenir for her friend Nada. Paris is famous for the Eiffel Tower.

11 Damietta Governorate
El-Serw Educational Directorate

I like English very much. Most people in the world speak English. English is my favourite subject at school. I read stories and watch films in English.

12 Port Said Governorate
East Educational Directorate

Last week, I travelled to Port Said. My father bought the tickets at Ramses Station. We travelled by train. The journey was cool.

13 Beni Suef Governorate
El-Wasta Educational Directorate

Nader is twelve years old. He is in his classroom. There are two laptops in the classroom. Also there is a printer. Nader is printing his homework.

14 Fayoum Governorate
Youssef El-Sadeek Educational Directorate

Soha is a clever student. She is thirteen years old. She always goes to school by bus. She likes playing computer games. She has computer studies twice a week.

15 Minia Governorate
Abu-Korkas Educational Directorate

Fatma spent her holiday in Paris. She went with her father. They travelled by plane. Paris is famous for the Eiffel Tower. They had delicious food. Fatma bought a postcard for her friend Azza.

16 Assiut Governorate

Sedfa Educational Directorate

Fatima decided to spend her holiday in Italy. She went there by plane. She had lunch at the restaurant. The food was spicy. She bought a souvenir for her sister Nada.

17 Qena Governorate

Abo Tesht Educational Directorate

Shorouk goes to school with her friends Lubna and Alaa. She is in preparatory stage. Her parents work in different places but Lubna's parents work in a hospital.

18 Sohag Governorate

Al Monshaa Educational Directorate

Alice's Adventures in Wonderland is a famous children's story. Alice is brave and clever. She meets a lot of interesting characters. The Cheshire Cat helps her to find different places and characters.

19 Aswan Governorate

Kom Ombo Educational Directorate

Fatima and her family live in Cairo. Fatima is eleven years old. She has a twin sister. Her mother is a doctor. She works in a hospital.



SECTION 3

Answers of The Main Book (1st Prep)

إجابات كتاب الشرح المعاصر للصف الأول الإعدادى

Unit (1)

lessons 1 & 2

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. twins 2. b. hobby
3. d. research 4. c. interview
5. b. Mum and dad
6. a. Drums 7. c. does
8. d. male 9. b. same
10. d. Swimming 11. b. aunt
12. b. band 13. d. Both
14. c. called 15. b. aged

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. she 2. a. me
3. d. theirs 4. d. us
5. b. She 6. b. They
7. b. Whose 8. c. his
9. c. I 10. b. our
11. b. him

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. My	(Mine)
2. hers	(her)
3. your	(you)
4. your	(yours)
5. Who	(Whose)
6. his	(hers)
7. his	(their)
8. her	(his)
9. them	(their)
10. for	(to)

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. Basketball
2. b. On Mondays
3. d. My friends
4. c. interesting

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. of 2. called
3. old 4. years old
5. What

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. great-grandchildren
2. b. its 3. c. his
4. a. dictionary 5. b. twins
6. a. voluntary 7. b. daughter
8. c. band 9. a. our
10. d. football

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. her	(their)
2. mine	(me)
3. call	(called)
4. What	(Whose)

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answers

lessons 3 & 4

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. add
2. b. adventures
3. b. orphan
4. b. goat
5. b. meat
6. c. mountain
7. b. country
8. d. England
9. d. end
10. c. conversation
11. d. city
12. c. attic
13. a. making
14. b. takes
15. c. with
16. a. from

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. never
2. a. go
3. a. plays
4. c. doesn't
5. a. feel
6. b. listen
7. b. usually get
8. a. live
9. a. gives
10. a. speak
11. d. goes
12. c. get up
13. b. washes
14. d. does
15. c. love
16. c. builds

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. do (are)
2. works (work)
3. plays (play)
4. plays always (always plays)
5. don't (doesn't)
6. do (does)
7. writes (write)
8. am (do)
9. play (plays)
10. do (does)

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

1. Complete the following dialogue :

1. I live in Cairo.
2. Yes, I have got a brother.
3. What is his name ?
4. What's your hobby ?
5. Yes, I am.

2. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Suggested title : Samar's life.
2. He had a lot of goats and camels.
3. Suggested answers :
   - I think it's quiet and healthy.
   - I think it's boring ..... etc.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. a. has no father or mother
5. b. camel
6. c. Samar and Felfela

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. go
2. c. does
3. a. is always
4. a. orphan
5. d. make
6. c. sheep
7. b. adventures
8. b. away
9. b. attic
10. d. airport

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. live (lives)
2. boiling (boils)
3. don't (doesn't)
4. goes (go)

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answers

Lessons 5 & 6

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. Olympics 2. c. Gymnastics
3. c. balance 4. b. train
5. b. top 6. b. swimming
7. b. achieve 8. a. diagrams
9. a. Weak 10. c. description
11. b. stay 12. b. gymnast
13. a. Busy 14. b. made
15. b. is 16. c. stay

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. difficult 2. d. train
3. b. balance 4. a. achieve

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. What is his name ?
2. How old is he ?
3. He lives in Giza.
4. He likes fish.
5. Yes, I do / No, I don't

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. Her 2. b. is
3. d. spending 4. c. gymnast
5. a. dream 6. a. studies
7. b. gymnastics 8. c. train
9. b. do 10. a. move

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. do (is)
2. live (lives)
3. are (is)
4. don't (doesn't)

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answers

Test on Unit 1

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. Cairo
2. c. the Olympics
3. a. gymnast 4. a. busy

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. pilot 2. Does
3. likes 4. Airport
5. spend

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Suggested title : Top athletes in Egypt.
2. Suggested answer : Because they train very hard and study as well.
3. Five athletes.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. d. does gymnastics
5. b. Farida Osman
6. b. squash

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. yours	2. d. airport
3. c. aged	4. d. makes
5. c. busy	6. a. orphan
7. b. Olympics	8. c. hobbies
9. c. doesn't	10. a. reads

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. hers	(our)
2. Does	(Do)
3. plays	(play)
4. stays	(stay)

6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answers

Unit (2)

Lessons 1 & 2

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. lessons	2. d. drama
3. c. social studies	4. c. bell
5. b. playground	6. c. typical
7. b. timetable	8. c. goes
9. b. maths	10. b. to
11. d. Computer studies	
12. b. Break	13. c. library
14. c. drove	15. d. in
16. d. get	

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. never go	2. d. often
3. c. never	4. c. always
5. a. never	6. d. is
7. c. always	8. b. never
9. c. always	10. c. does

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. always	(sometimes)
2. in	(at)
3. travels always	(always travels)
4. walks	(walk)
5. always are	(are always)
6. eats never	(never eats)
7. When	(How often)

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

1. Complete the following dialogue :

1. I like maths.
2. Yes, we do.
3. What time does it start ?
4. What is your favourite day ?
5. My favourite day is Wednesday.

2. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Suggested title : Othmano's typical day.

2. Suggested answers : I think it's a good typical day.
 - I think he spends too long time at school.
3. Because his school is far away.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. a. Othmano
5. b. bell
6. b. rest

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. home economics
2. d. Religion 3. b. typical
4. c. Break 5. c. How often
6. b. is always 7. a. drama
8. b. time 9. c. language
10. b. visit

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. has (have)
2. many (often)
3. does usually (usually does)
4. never (always)

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answers

lessons 3 & 4

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. rain 2. c. objects
3. b. cycle 4. c. rules
5. c. rains 6. a. canoe
7. b. say 8. b. uniform
9. a. cultures 10. d. shirt
11. b. transport 12. c. canoe
13. d. snowmobile 14. a. way
15. b. on 16. c. take

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. brothers' 2. d. belongs to
3. c. children's 4. b. Whose
5. b. girls' names
6. c. teachers' room
7. c. computer screen
8. b. Dina's 9. a. baker's
10. a. house 11. a. car park
12. a. Adam 13. b. cat's

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Dalia's and Azza (Dalia and Azza's)
2. girl (girl's)
3. Alis (Ali's)
4. girl's (girls')
5. When (Whose)
6. Halas' (Hala's)
7. chemist (chemist's)

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. far 2. b. cycle
3. b. arrive 4. d. healthy

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. unkind 2. a. takes
3. b. towel 4. c. transport
5. d. b & c 6. b. Dangerous
7. b. doctor's car
8. d. safe 9. d. listen
10. c. Sara's mother

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Ali (Ali's)
2. school's (school)
3. Rokaya (Rokaya's)
4. of (to)

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answers

lessons 5 & 6

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. grade 2. c. shower
3. d. project 4. a. dinner
5. c. quite 6. c. message
7. b. photos 8. a. go
9. a. preparatory 10. b. put
11. b. friendly 12. c. timetable
13. c. from 14. d. at
15. c. with 16. d. Best wishes

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. 12 2. b. Hurghada
3. d. preparatory
4. d. science and maths

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. from 2. city
3. grade 4. do
5. take / have

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. reply 2. b. separate
3. c. with 4. b. French
5. c. never 6. a. wake
7. b. do 8. b. goes
9. c. in 10. a. good

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. studied (study)
2. don't (doesn't)
3. ever (never)
4. are (do)

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answers

Test on Unit 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. Nairobi 2. d. parents
3. b. far away 4. d. library

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. My dad drives me to school.
2. I go by bus.
3. Because my school is far away.
4. How long does it take to go to school ?
5. Which is better to go by car or by bus ?

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Nada
2. Suggested title : Nada's daily life.
3. Suggested answer : Because she surfs the internet on it.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. c. 10:00 p.m.
5. b. before
6. c. next to

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. quite 2. b. message
3. b. laboratory
4. a. school playground
5. a. cycle 6. d. hobbies
7. d. put 8. c. end
9. b. is always 10. b. boy's name

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. chemist (chemist's)
2. goes (go)
3. Who's (Whose)
4. girl's (girls')

6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answers

Unit (3)

Lessons 1 & 2

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. hair 2. d. fans
3. b. blond 4. b. scarf
5. a. normal 6. a. weak
7. d. sports 8. d. rich
9. b. features 10. c. glasses
11. d. team 12. b. score
13. c. moustache 14. b. beard
15. c. look 16. c. for

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. has 2. b. got
3. a. can 4. a. 've
5. c. hasn't 6. b. haven't got
7. c. Have 8. c. She
9. b. hasn't 10. d. Have

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. has (have)
2. 've ('s)
3. hasn't (has)
4. Have (Has)
5. gives (give)
6. get (got)
7. has (have)
8. can't (can)

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. volleyball 2. a. 180
3. a. smile
4. a. strong and fast

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. for 2. Which
3. Football 4. gives
5. have

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. haven't	2. a. centimetres
3. b. team	4. b. Slow
5. d. moustache	6. b. famous
7. c. smile	8. a. can
9. a. Europe	10. c. hasn't

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. running	(run)
2. Do	(Can)
3. has	(have)
4. Have	(Has)

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answers

Lessons 3 & 4

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. strange	2. b. scary
3. b. angry	4. d. painting
5. c. Adventures	6. a. character
7. d. exciting	8. c. science
9. b. main	10. b. cowardly
11. d. queen	12. d. blog
13. b. Clever	14. b. make
15. a. doing	16. c. Twice

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. painting	2. d. doesn't
3. c. flying	4. b. Does
5. b. playing	6. a. like
7. c. doing	8. a. watching
9. b. to play	10. d. using

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. listen	(listening)
2. about	(in)
3. play	(playing)
4. travel	(travelling)
5. watch	(watching)
6. ride	(to ride)
7. listens	(listening)
8. walk	(walking)

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

1. Complete the following dialogue :

1. Basketball is my favourite sport.
2. Because I am tall and strong.
3. Where do you play it ?
4. How often do you play it ?
5. Yes, of course./Sure.

2. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Suggested answer : Alice's Adventures in Wonderland.
2. It helped her to find different places and characters.
3. Suggested answer : Because she was not frightened of the Queen of Hearts.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. c. the Queen of Hearts
5. d. loudly
6. b. Alice

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. learning — 2. a. do
3. c. sensible — 4. b. shouts
5. d. like — 6. d. frightened
7. b. boring — 8. a. art
9. d. History — 10. c. blog

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. do (does)
2. read (reading)
3. draw (drawing)
4. going (to go)

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answers

lessons 5 & 6

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. storm — 2. c. personality
3. c. wheelchair — 4. d. secrets
5. a. fun — 6. c. joined
7. a. called — 8. c. island
9. c. Reading — 10. b. different
11. c. Together — 12. b. Hobbies
13. b. around — 14. c. do
15. b. for — 16. c. by

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. Basel — 2. d. straight
3. c. kind — 4. d. a & b

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. history — 2. Why
3. What — 4. like
5. games

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. brave — 2. a. and
3. d. to do — 4. a. playing
5. c. wheelchair — 6. d. playground
7. b. curly — 8. a. secret
9. b. but — 10. d. best

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. and (but)
2. drinking (to drink)
3. play (playing)
4. gets (got)

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answers

Test on Unit 3

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. dark — 2. d. history
3. c. art — 4. c. drawing

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. He is called Basel.
2. What does he look like ?
3. What does he like doing ?
4. He is good at playing football.
5. Yes, I do.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Suggested title : My best friend Akram.
2. Suggested answer : To watch matches of our national team.
3. Twice a week.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. b. Akram
5. b. two times 6. a. dark

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. secret 2. a. pool
3. a. fans 4. c. because
5. b. personality 6. d. lesson
7. b. playground 8. a. do
9. c. talking 10. b. got

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Has (Have)
2. but (and)
3. play (playing)
4. can't (can)

6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answers



lessons 1 & 2

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. printer 2. b. classmate
3. d. laptop 4. c. charger
5. a. MP3 player 6. a. mouse
7. d. take 8. b. sending
9. a. Click 10. c. charge
11. b. email 12. c. text
13. b. video call 14. c. website
15. c. for 16. c. doing

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. is 2. b. are
3. d. Is 4. b. any
5. c. aren't 6. c. is
7. b. Are 8. c. some
9. c. are 10. d. isn't

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. aren't (isn't)
2. are (is)
3. any (some)
4. are (aren't)
5. some (any)
6. Is (Are)
7. their (there)

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. winning 2. b. are making
3. d. is coming 4. c. is reading
5. a. are playing 6. d. sending
7. b. front 8. d. getting
9. c. behind 10. a. kicking

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. behind (next)
2. charged (charging)
3. sleeps (is sleeping)
4. prints (is printing)

5. up (to)
6. drink ('m drinking)
7. is (are)

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. classroom 2. c. 2
3. d. printer 4. a. Omar

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. doing 2. mobile
3. send 4. take
5. photos

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. phone 2. b. online
3. a. are 4. b. any
5. a. icon 6. a. printing
7. c. using 8. a. guess
9. b. click 10. b. text

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Does (Is)
2. Is (Are)
3. some (any)
4. look (looking)

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answers

lessons 3 & 4

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. insects 2. c. mime
3. b. wave 4. c. put
5. b. sitting 6. b. video call
7. b. do 8. d. flying
9. b. sunny 10. d. kind
11. c. uniform 12. b. different
13. c. eagle 14. a. Nature
15. c. bring 16. b. smiling
17. c. make 18. b. on

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. are 2. c. I am
3. c. writing 4. b. working
5. c. calling 6. b. Is
7. a. Are 8. d. isn't
9. d. wearing 10. d. doing

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Are (Is)
2. does (is doing)
3. do (doing)
4. wearing (is wearing)
5. do (is)
6. use (using)
7. are (is)

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

1. Complete the following dialogue :

1. park 2. do
3. a lot 4. bird
5. fly

2. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Suggested title :
Rokaya's love of nature.

2. Taking photos of flowers and birds.
3. Suggested answer :
   She loves writing articles about nature.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. b. video
5. d. park
6. b. hates

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. advice 2. d. show
3. c. am playing 4. d. Eagles
5. b. spend 6. b. think
7. c. taking 8. c. take
9. b. insects 10. a. is

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. play (playing)
2. listen (listening)
3. Does (Is)
4. make (making)

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answers

Lessons 5 & 6

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. drop 2. a. popular
3. b. kettle 4. c. password
5. b. instructions 6. b. answer
7. c. about 8. a. personal
9. a. Staying 10. a. gave
11. b. make 12. d. turn on
13. b. secret 14. a. ask
15. c. send 16. b. make

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. Don't 2. c. Ask
3. c. send 4. a. tap
5. d. Don't 6. a. Keep
7. c. cross 8. b. Use
9. b. eat 10. b. Wait

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Doesn't (Don't)
2. Keeps (Keep)
3. Didn't (Don't)
4. putting (put)
5. Always (Never)
6. forgot (forget)
7. Guessed (Guess)

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

1. Complete the following dialogue :

1. I do 2. How
3. charger 4. take
5. click

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. saved 2. b. Turn
3. c. popular 4. b. boil
5. b. put 6. c. font
7. a. safe 8. d. messages
9. c. Don't 10. c. use

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Answer the following questions :

1. I should tell a parent or a teacher.

2. Suggested title :
   How to stay safe online
3. Suggested answer :
   To be safe online as there are some bad people.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. d. password
5. d. technology
6. a. mum or dad

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Didn't (Don't)
2. Helping (Help)
3. Turns (Turn)
4. wastes (waste)

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answers

Test on Unit 4

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. nature
2. b. watching
3. a. likes
4. c. sky

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. are
2. use
3. doing
4. looking
5. mobiles

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Suggested Answer :
   Using technology.
2. He is a winner.
3. Suggested Answer : Yes. As he uses it to do his computer studies homework.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. b. receiving
5. c. USA
6. b. Sama and her mum

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. Come
2. a. making
3. c. uniform
4. b. is listening
5. b. Ask
6. b. using
7. b. make
8. c. say
9. d. instructions
10. b. Is

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. do (is)
2. is (are)
3. Doesn't (Don't)
4. watches (watching)

6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answers

Unit (5)

lessons 1 & 2

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. beach
2. b. jungle
3. d. desert
4. b. waterfall
5. a. made
6. a. Camels
7. d. Forests
8. b. lake
9. a. River
10. b. country

11. a. bats 12. b. lake
13. a. Sand 14. a. journey
15. c. picnic 16. c. of

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. watched 2. d. was
3. b. did 4. d. had
5. a. eat 6. d. wasn't
7. d. went 8. c. bought
9. c. Did 10. a. see
11. b. study 12. d. did
13. c. visited 14. b. wore
15. a. didn't 16. c. Were

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. spent (spend)
2. found (find)
3. walk (walked)
4. play (played)
5. wasn't (weren't)
6. has (had)
7. gives (gave)
8. bought (buy)

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. Al-Azhar Park
2. a. delicious
3. b. bike
4. c. games

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. beach 2. did
3. swam 4. come
5. took

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Suggested title : A visit to Hurghada
2. As she was frightened.
3. Suggested answer : I think it has a lot of exciting places.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

4. c. Hurghada
5. d. salt water
6. b. sandwiches

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. was 2. b. map
3. b. check 4. a. go
5. a. climbed 6. a. desert
7. b. jungle 8. a. beach
9. c. didn't 10. b. swim

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. ate (eat)
2. Was (Were)
3. doesn't (didn't)
4. go (went)

6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answers

Lessons 3 & 4

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. advertisements
2. a. culture 3. c. course

4. c. activities
5. b. Dolphins
6. d. view
7. a. Camp
8. d. designs
9. b. language
10. c. souvenir
11. b. tower
12. d. hotel
13. a. castle
14. c. in
15. b. make
16. c. around

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

1. Complete the following dialogue :

1. It was great.
2. Where did you go ?
3. Yes, I did.
4. Did you enjoy your time there ?
5. I came back last Monday.

2. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Suggested Answer : All about Mona
2. With her family
3. Suggested answer :
   Yes, I think so. Because it was fantastic.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. c. A laptop
5. b. very good
6. b. river

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. boring
2. d. flat
3. c. place
4. b. had
5. c. dolphin
6. b. go
7. b. learn
8. c. language
9. d. ride
10. c. did

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. did (was)
2. did (do)
3. have (had)
4. camp (camped)

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answers

lessons 5 & 6

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. response
2. c. rules
3. d. postcard
4. b. sign
5. b. theatre
6. b. tickets
7. c. friendly
8. b. closed
9. c. Tower
10. c. sandals
11. a. museum
12. d. snail
13. c. top
14. a. turns
15. c. on

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. summer
2. d. Arabic
3. a. language school
4. d. wonderful

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. went
2. How
3. by
4. swim
5. ate

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. pity
2. d. light
3. b. art
4. c. boats

5. b. want 6. b. went
7. c. Valley 8. d. start
9. b. had 10. a. saw

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. felt (feel)
2. is (was)
3. eat (ate)
4. talked (talk)

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answers

Test on Unit 5

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. To Siwa 2. c. swam
3. d. camels 4. a. favourite

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. from 2. come
3. dentist 4. job
5. teacher

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Suggested title : A holiday on the beach
2. Suggested Answer : Because he went to the sea with his family for the first time.
3. The hotel

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. c. interesting
5. a. far from
6. a. 21

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. making 2. c. didn't
3. a. was 4. b. boat
5. d. beach 6. b. place
7. d. tent 8. b. find
9. d. sign 10. a. frightened

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. do (did)
2. last (ago)
3. didn't (wasn't)
4. is (was)

6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answers

Unit (6)

Lessons 1 & 2

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. ingredients 2. d. teaspoon
3. d. Raisins 4. b. Crisps
5. a. Pudding 6. c. saucepan
7. c. Stir 8. b. milk
9. d. delicious 10. b. boiled
11. d. cinnamon 12. d. Cheese
13. b. Nut 14. b. into
15. c. eating 16. c. to buy

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. some 2. d. is
3. c. any 4. a. some

5. b. any 6. c. aren't
7. b. some 8. c. is
9. b. any

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. any (some)
2. aren't (isn't)
3. some (any)
4. some (any)
5. isn't (aren't)
6. Is (Are)
7. any (some)
8. isn't (aren't)
9. Are (Is)

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. water 2. b. too much
3. c. enough 4. a. too much
5. d. enough 6. c. much
7. c. too many 8. c. enough
9. d. a lot of

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. a lot (a lot of)
2. many (much)
3. enough (too many)
4. many (much)
5. much (many)
6. isn't (aren't)
7. much (many)

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. recipes 2. b. family
3. d. sugar 4. c. food

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. OK.
2. Is there any hummus ?
3. Yes, there is.
4. Yes, there are./No, there aren't.
5. Are there any raisins ?

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. too many 2. c. quick
3. c. stir 4. a. fridge
5. b. aren't 6. a. enough
7. b. rice pudding 8. c. cinnamon
9. c. ingredients 10. d. recipe

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. isn't (aren't)
2. many (a lot of)
3. Are (Is)
4. some (any)

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answers

lessons 3 & 4

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. taste 2. b. teeth
3. d. Onion 4. d. meal
5. b. dry 6. a. healthy
7. b. Spices 8. c. type
9. b. traditional 10. c. meat
11. c. diagram 12. d. Chocolate
13. c. Salt 14. c. way
15. c. look 16. a. stop

Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. shouldn't
2. a. should
3. b. shouldn't
4. a. keep
5. d. should
6. a. eat
7. d. train
8. c. drink
9. a. do
10. c. shouldn't

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. following	(follow)
2. should to	(should)
3. should	(shouldn't)
4. eating	(eat)
5. should	(shouldn't)
6. shouldn't	(should)
7. were	(be)

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

1. Complete the following dialogue :

1. sweets
2. good
3. Why
4. sugar
5. should

2. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Suggested title : The history of making bread
2. The ancient Egyptians.
3. Suggested answer : I think they were clever.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. c. bread
5. b. 4000
6. a. different

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. illness
2. a. for
3. b. careful
4. c. clean
5. d. cook
6. b. taste
7. b. shouldn't
8. c. stew
9. a. fit
10. b. ingredients

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. shouldn't	(should)
2. should	(shouldn't)
3. plays	(play)
4. catching	(catch)

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answers

lessons 5 & 6

Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. pound
2. c. chef
3. a. menu
4. c. customers
5. c. walls
6. b. menu
7. a. beach
8. c. meal
9. d.fresh
10. b. support
11. b. order
12. c. good
13. a. to listen
14. d. with
15. c. out of
16. c. part

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. Last weekend
2. c. family
3. b. lunch
4. c. walls

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. Have 2. Small
3. What 4. juice
5. pounds

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. to play 2. c. make
3. d. too much 4. b. should
5. c. have 6. a. café
7. b. chef 8. a. see
9. b. careful 10. c. looks

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. did (do)
2. to clean (clean)
3. much (many)
4. shouldn't (should)

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answers

Test on Unit 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. Morocco 2. b. tagine
3. d. amazing 4. a. pot

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. It is koshari.
2. What are its ingredients ?
3. Is it delicious ?
4. I like pizza. 5. I like fish.

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Suggested Answer : Having snacks
2. Suggested Answer :
   Some of them are healthy and others aren't.
3. Between two and four pieces of fruit a day.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. a. terrible
5. d. beans and vegetables
6. b. a lot of salt

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. some 2. b. including
3. a. sugar 4. c. shouldn't
5. b. menu 6. b. amazing
7. b. too many 8. c. fat
9. a. waiter 10. b. pounds

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. some (any)
2. much (many)
3. is (does)
4. shouldn't (should)

6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answers

Days 5,6&7

3. 15 Sample Tests

٣. ١٥ نموذج اختبار على المنهج بالكامل.

Sample Test 1

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الاجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. Egypt and Morocco are in ....
   a. Asia b. Africa c. Europe d. America
2. Arabic is a ....
   a. language b. country c. place d. city
3. All Arab countries speak ....
   a. English b. Arabic c. French d. German
4. .... is in Asia.
   a. Egypt b. Morocco c. Oman d. Sudan

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Hoda : Hello, Hana. Where are you going ?
Hana : Hi, Hoda. I'm going to the library.
Hoda : (1) ....Why.......... are you going there ?
Hana : To read a story. What (2) ....about.......... you ?
Hoda : I'm going to the (3) ....club.......... .
Hana : Why ?
Hoda : To play a football (4) ....match.......... .
Hana : Are you in the school football team ?
Hoda : (5) ....Yes, I am.
Hana : I wish you good luck.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Everyone loves snacks ! But some snacks are bad for us. What is the best way to enjoy healthy snacks ?

It is OK to eat crisps and cakes sometimes, but you should not eat too many of **them**. Crisps have a lot of fat and salt. Cakes, chocolate and biscuits have a lot of fat and sugar. Too much of this type of food is bad for our bodies.

Fruit is a great snack ! It is very good for us and most people like the sweet taste. You should eat between two and four pieces of fruit a day.

Beans and vegetables do not have much sugar or fat. They are very good for us, so we should eat a lot of them. Snacks like hummus with carrot and pepper are **delicious**.

We should be careful, even with healthy foods. Fruit juice has got a lot of sugar, so we should not drink too much of it. Olives, meat and fish sometimes have a lot of salt.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.
   ......Healthy and unhealthy Snacks.
2. What do you think about snacks ?
   ......Everyone loves Snacks but some Snacks are bad For us.
3. Which food has a lot of fat and sugar ?
   ......Cakes, chocolate and biscuits.

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The opposite of the underlined word **"delicious"** is "............".
   a. terrible b. interesting c. boring d. fantastic
5. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to ....
   a. cakes b. crisps and cakes
   c. snakes d. bodies
6. Fish sometimes have ....
   a. a lot of sugar b. a lot of salt
   c. a lot of fat d. a lot of food

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I can hear the .... It's time for the English lesson.
   a. bell b. ball c. hall d. radio
2. Planes, trains and cars are .... of transport.
   a. roads b. streets c. farms d. means
3. I'm very .... I don't have time to play.
   a. busy b. free c. careful d. ready

4. A .... takes people from one side of a lake to another.
   a. bike b. snowmobile c. canoe d. car
5. We're going to do a .... on "How to be healthy".
   a. shopping b. housework c. subject d. project
6. You can .... your mobile using a phone charger.
   a. change b. charge c. hear d. choose
7. Swimming is my .... hobby. I like it.
   a. busy b. fast c. expensive d. favourite
8. What sport .... you like ?
   a. don't b. doesn't c. aren't d. not
9. He arrived at school .... 7 o'clock.
   a. in b. on c. at d. for
10. Where did he .... in the desert ? - In a tent.
   a. sleep b. slept c. sleeping d. sleeps

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Does she like **watch** TV ? (watching)
2. Is there a mouse ? - Yes, there **are**. (is)
3. Last summer, my family **have** a fantastic holiday. (had)
4. We play games with the children and read **they** stories. (them)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your visit to the Pyramids"

....
....
....
....
....
....

Sample Test 2

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. How many kinds of animals mentioned in the passage ?
   a. One b. Two c. Three d. Four

2. You can ride ....
   a. a goat
   b. a horse
   c. a camel
   d. a camel or a horse
3. .... give us meat and milk.
   a. Goats
   b. Horses
   c. Donkeys
   d. Dogs
4. Horses are .... animals.
   a. useless
   b. useful
   c. careless
   d. lazy

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Nour : That's the bell. What is the next lesson ?
Basem : Let's look at the timetable.
Nour : We have got computer (1) ...STudies...
Basem : Yes. I love it. It's my (2) ...favourite... subject.
Nour : I am not good at computer studies.
Basem : So, what are your favourite (3) ...Subject... ?
Nour : I love science and languages.
Basem : What languages are you good (4) ...at... ?
Nour : I am quite good at English.
Basem : Oh, I (5) ...don't... like languages. I am bad at English.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

I'm Sara. I visited a café last weekend with my mum, my dad and my brother, Ashraf. We chose this café for lunch because **it** looked very nice. The walls were green and white and there were big windows. I love looking out of the window and watching the city.

Ashraf and I both had rice for lunch. I had fish with rice and he had chicken. My dad had fish with rice, too, and mum had a salad. It's very healthy! We all liked our food.

After lunch, Ashraf and I had cakes. This was the part we enjoyed most ! There were a lot of different cakes and they all looked delicious ! I chose **basbousa** and Ashraf had kunafa. They were amazing ! I'd like to visit this café again very soon !

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What does this passage talk about ?
   ...Sara Spent a good Time lastweek....
2. What does the underlined pronoun "**it**" refer to ?
   ...They had Cakes....

3. Why do you think they chose this cafe for lunch ? It looked very nice.
Because

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. .... went to a café in that passage.
   a. Two people b. Three people
   c. Four people d. No people
5. Sara watched the city through ....
   a. the shop windows b. the cafe windows
   c. the weekend d. lunch
6. The underlined word "**basbousa**" is a kind of ....
   a. dessert b. vegetables c. meat d. gas

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Her dream is to go to the .... She is a gymnast.
   a. physics b. Olympics c. mathematics d. gymnastics
2. Samar wants to join the school music ....
   a. pond b. band c. hole d. dream
3. I want a full .... of the flat before buying it.
   a. study b. description c. answer d. training
4. Last week, I had a lot of .... in Dream Park.
   a. adventures b. stories c. animals d. mountains
5. Egypt is the most important .... in Africa.
   a. village b. countryside c. country d. city
6. The classroom is .... There are 80 students.
   a. free b. great c. busy d. balanced
7. Athletes work hard to .... their studies, work and their families.
   a. practise b. balance c. research d. volunteer
8. What do you think .... Mazen?
   a. to b. of c. by d. off
9. There weren't .... cars in the desert.
   a. some b. no c. any d. a lot
10. Where did Younis .... on holiday ? - To Jordan.
    a. went b. going c. go d. goes

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **Came** here, please Ali. (Come)
2. Tell me about **you** family. (Your)

3. Does Ashraf score a goal ? - No, he **don't**. (doesn't)
4. **Is** you wearing a school uniform ? (Are)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A holiday you enjoyed a lot"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 3

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. Asem lives with his ....
   a. uncle b. father c. parents d. grandfather
2. Asem's grandfather is a / an ....
   a. farmer b. doctor c. child d. engineer
3. Asem .... his grandfather.
   a. helps b. teaches c. takes d. learns
4. Asem's grandfather ....
   a. teaches English b. grows plants
   c. builds roads d. helps sick people

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Dina : What's your typical day like ?
Jana : I usually get up at six o'clock.
Dina : When do you (1) ......have...... breakfast ?
Jana : At six thirty with my family.
Dina : What time do you arrive at home ?
Jana : (2) ......At 7 a.m......
Dina : When do you (3) ......Finsh / leave...... school ?
Jana : At 1:30 in the (4) ......afternoon.... .

Dina : Do you always do your homework after lunch ?
Jana : (5) ....Yes.............. , I do.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

I want to write about an amazing meal I remember. I visited my cousins in Damietta last summer with my dad, mother and sister. They took us to this café for lunch. It was near the beach and it had big windows.
It was wonderful watching the boats on the water.

I had my favourite meal, Koshari. I love Koshari, but this was different than usual. It was delicious. My family and cousins all had fish from the sea ! We all liked our food.

We then all had Egyptian rice pudding. There was not a lot of sugar in its recipe and it was not too sweet or unhealthy.

It was a **wonderful** meal and I would like to visit this café again one day !

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.
   ....An amazing meal..........
2. What did they watch from the café windows ?
   ....They watched the boats on the water.
3. Do you think they had a healthy dessert ? Why / Why not ?
   ....Yes, because The recipe was not to sweet.

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined word "**wonderful**" means .... in this passage.
   a. very bad b. very good c. very happy d. very sad
5. The writer's favourite meal is ....
   a. koshari b. fish c. rice pudding d. meat
6. The underlined word "**it**" refers to the ....
   a. lunch b. beach c. café d. meal

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The science teacher shows us many interesting .... for that lesson.
   a. sports b. words c. dialogues d. diagrams
2. Athletes should eat .... food.
   a. unhealthy b. healthy c. dirty d. warm

3. London, Paris and Cairo are big ....
a. villages b. countries c. cities d. towns
4. I had many old objects in the .... of the house.
a. bathroom b. attic c. wall d. gate
5. Hurry up to the .... , so that you can catch the plane to Paris.
a. hospital b. airport c. library d. bridge
6. The twins are two children born at the .... time.
a. different b. same c. similar d. difficult
7. My parents are .... of me. I got a gold medal in judo.
a. worried b. proud c. noisy d. happy
8. She always .... nice stories in the library.
a. reads b. read c. reading d. has read
9. It is .... very hot in the summer.
a. never b. sometimes c. often d. usually
10. I've .... short, curly hair.
a. gets b. get c. getting d. got

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. They are her bags. They're **her**. (hers)
2. Mr Helmy never **watch** football matches on TV. (watches)
3. It's **Ugandas'** flag. (Uganda's)
4. I **eat** a lot of fish yesterday. (ate)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A famous sportsman"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 4

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الاجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. Gymnastics is a/an .... sport.
a. easy b. difficult c. interesting d. boring

2. The gymnast .... many hours daily.
   a. waves b. tells c. keeps d. trains
3. A gymnast must .... his hobby, work and study.
   a. train b. balance c. mime d. charge
4. The gymnast always wants to .... his dream.
   a. achieve b. study c. take d. go

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ayman : Hello, Baleegh.
Baleegh : Hello, Ayman.
Ayman : Did you go to Siwa ?
Baleegh : Yes, I (1) ...did... .
Ayman : (2) ...When did... you go there ?
Baleegh : When I was eight years old.
Ayman : What did you do there ?
Baleegh : I (3) ...swam... in the lake.
Ayman : Where did you (4) ...sleep... there ?
Baleegh : I slept in a (5) ...tent... in the desert.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

From : Fatma
To : Azza
Subject : My holiday

Hi, Azza !

I am back from my holiday in Paris. I had a wonderful time ! Paris is a great city for a holiday because there is so much to see and do. The food is delicious. I ate a lot of new things, for example, snails !

One day we climbed the Eiffel Tower, and from the top we had a view of the city. We visited museums and had a picnic in the Luxembourg Gardens. We also went on a boat on the River Seine. What a pity ! We did not have time to go to the Science Museum. I also wanted to see the art at the Louvre, but **it** was closed.

Near our hotel, there was a busy market. I bought a T-shirt and some postcards. I also bought you a souvenir; it is a very small Eiffel Tower. You can put it next to your bed. It has got a light on the **top**.

See you soon !

Fatma

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What's the best title for this passage ?
A wanderFul time in Paris.
2. Where did Fatma go on a boat ?
She went on a boat on the river Seine.
3. Would you like to go to Paris one day ? Why / Why not ?
Yes, of course To visit The Eiffel Tower.

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The opposite of the underlined word "**top**" is ....
a. bottom b. under c. beneath d. middle
5. Fatma bought .... for Azza.
a. a T-shirt b. some postcards
c. a souvenir d. a market
6. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ....
a. the Louvre b. the River Seine
c. The Eiffel Tower d. picnic

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. On a .... weekend, I visit my uncle and aunt.
a. typical b. careful c. helpful d. famous
2. .... on the icon on your laptop.
a. Write b. Click c. Type d. Read
3. Students learn about .... in the maths lesson. *(WB page 85)*
a. rivers b. lakes c. numbers d. colours
4. I .... a lot of friends in my new school.
a. took b. made c. put d. gave
5. Nader always talks nicely to people. He's very ....
a. bad b. kind c. angry d. unkind
6. When you put sugar in the glass, you should .... it well.
a. start b. spill c. stir d. stop
7. .... are animals that are like sheep. *(SB page 8)*
a. Dogs b. Cows c. Goats d. Rats
8. Dina likes .... very much.
a. paint b. painted c. painting d. to painting
9. Mohammed Salah .... score a lot of goals. He is very clever.
a. can b. must c. mustn't d. has
10. .... they got any pencils ?
a. Has b. Are c. Do d. Have

5 **Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. Do you goes swimming after school ? (go)
2. There is food enough in the fridge. enough food (............)
3. I loves reading books. love (............)
4. The boys found there pens. Their (............)

E. Writing

6 **Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :**

"A film you watched yesterday"

....
....
....
....
....
....

Sample Test 5

A. Listening

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الاجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. At school, I have .... every day.
   a. Arabic b. art c. English d. science
2. I watch TV .... doing my homework.
   a. before b. after c. when d. with
3. My .... helps me study English.
   a. father b. brother c. mother d. sister
4. My mother helps me ....
   a. at school b. at home c. in the playground d. in the street

B. Language Functions

2 **Complete the following dialogue :**

Riham : What's your name ?
Dalia : My name is Dalia.
Riham : (1) Who .... do you live with ?
Dalia : I live with my father, mother and two sisters.

Riham : Are you a student ?
Dalia : Yes, (2) ......I am............ .
Riham : What's your favourite (3) ......Subject...... ?
Dalia : I like art, (4) ......but.................. I am not good at drawing or painting.
Riham : What's your favourite sport ?
Dalia : I like (5) ......Football

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

I'm Hassan. My family lives in Alexandria, but my dad doesn't work in Egypt. He works in England. He went to the airport on Sunday evenings and he caught the plane to England. He will come home next month. On Saturday, I don't go to school, and my brother doesn't go to school as well. We play chess or go to the park. On Sunday mornings, we go swimming. My sister is three and she doesn't swim. **She** watches us. I hope to travel to England when I grow up to **complete** my study there. My father encourages me to do that.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.
   ......Hassan and his family......
2. Where does Hassan's father work ?
   ......He work in England......
3. Why do you think Hassan's father encourages him to travel to England ?
   ......To Complete his Study there.

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun "**She**" refers to ....
   a. Hassan b. Hassan's father c. Hassan's sister d. Hassan's family
5. When do they go to the park ? ....
   a. On Sunday b. On Saturday c. Every day d. On Wednesday
6. The underlined word "**complete**" means ....
   a. start b. finish c. enjoy d. leave

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... Samira like watching TV ?
   a. Do b. Does c. Are d. Is
2. Is he .... glasses ? - Yes, he is.
   a. wear b. to wear c. wears d. wearing

3. Mona's father .... reading a book at the moment.
   a. is b. are c. does d. do
4. The .... rings when a lesson starts and finishes.
   a. bill b. bell c. ball d. peel
5. A plane is very .... It can go at 900 km/h.
   a. tall b. fast c. slow d. long
6. .... is a game for two people.
   a. Football b. Handball c. Chess d. Volleyball
7. I eat a lot of olives because they are .... for me.
   a. bad b. unhealthy c. good d. ugly
8. Your brother is your parent's ....
   a. sister b. daughter c. son d. uncle
9. It's important to stay .... online.
   a. safe b. worried c. angry d. colourful
10. A .... is a place inside a mountain.
   a. river b. view c. cave d. park

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Hany **should** eat snacks in the classroom. shouldn't (............)
2. There **are** too much sugar. is (............)
3. We **swim** in the lake and climbed the mountain. swam (............)
4. It's **me** pen. It's mine. my (............)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A top gymnast"

....
....
....
....
....
....

Sample Test 6

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الاجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. I go to school ....
   a. by bike b. by car c. on foot d. by bus

2. At the ...., I talk to my friends.
   a. lessons b. break c. school d. friends
3. The lessons are in the ....
   a. break b. playground c. classroom d. house
4. I .... to my friends at break.
   a. study b. take c. talk d. draw

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Basel : What are you doing, Wael ?
Wael : I (1) ...am playing... chess online.
Basel : Who are you playing with ?
Wael : I'm playing with (2) ...John............
Basel : John ? (3) ...Who.............. is he ?
Wael : He is my English friend.
Basel : Do you always play chess (4) ...online........ ?
Wael : Not often. I have many friends online.
Basel : Do you also chat with your online friends ?
Wael : Yes, we always chat (5) ...on..................... facebook.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

My name's Lamia. I'm nine years old. I live in Aswan with my family. My parents are teachers. My brother Ali is 13 years old and Khaled is nine. I play music with my brothers. Ali plays football at school and he watches football matches on TV. Khaled goes swimming every Friday. There's a swimming pool **near** our house. My best friend is Aya. We play basketball at school, and we're **both** in the school team. Our team is very good !

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.
   ...My Family...
2. Who is older Lamia or Ali ?
   ...Ali is older Than Lamia...
3. Do you think Lamia's family is happy ? Why / Why not ?
   ...Yes, because she has a good family.

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The swimming pool isn't ....
   a. near their house b. far from their house
   c. by their house d. beside their house
5. The underlined word "**both**" refers to ....
   a. Lamia's parents b. Aya and Khaled
   c. Khaled and Ali d. Lamia and Aya
6. The underlined "**near**" is the opposite of "............" .
   a. cheap b. hard c. far d. easy

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Salma .... a story yesterday.
   a. wrote b. writes c. writing d. write
2. You .... make noise in the school library.
   a. should b. should have c. shouldn't d. shouldn't have
3. Stop .... unhealthy food.
   a. to eat b. eat c. eating d. eats
4. A/An .... is a room at the top of a house.
   a. pick b. attic c. kitchen d. library
5. A baby bird is very .... It can't fly.
   a. poor b. weak c. strong d. fit
6. You can find a lot of books at the ....
   a. hospital b. library c. playground d. hall
7. .... is not a cooking verb.
   a. Pudding b. Boil c. Stir d. Add
8. Meat is the main .... in tagine in Morocco.
   a. ingredient b. subject c. sport d. place
9. Mohamed Salah .... a lot of goals.
   a. records b. plays c. scores d. gives
10. Computers and mobile phones are examples of new ....
   a. sports b. video games c. technology d. nature

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. That car belongs to Mr Ali. It's **him**. (his)
2. She **don't** go swimming on Fridays. (doesn't)
3. When I was eight, we **go** to Siwa. (went)
4. Amira **does never** her homework after dinner. (never does)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"How to keep safe online"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 7

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. My school is .... from my house.
   a. near b. far c. easy d. long
2. I go to school by ....
   a. bus b. car c. bike d. train
3. I .... at my school on time.
   a. drive b. arrive c. walk d. talk
4. It's .... to go to school by bike.
   a. unhealthy b. bad c. good d. healthy

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Nadia : Let's make lunch. I think we have all the food.

Omar : There is some salad. Is there any Hummus ?

Nadia : No, there isn't, but there (1) ......are...... some olives.

Omar : There are some peppers and (2) ......Cucumbers......

Nadia : Good. Is there (3) ......any...... cheese ?

Omar : Yes, there is. I've got it.

Nadia : What about figs ? Are (4) ......There...... any figs ?

Omar : (5) ......No......, there aren't any figs.

Nadia : Are there any raisins ?

Omar : Yes.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 **Read the following, then answer the questions :**

"Heidi" is the story of an **orphan** girl. She goes to live with her grandfather in Switzerland. Her grandfather is an old man. He lives in a small house in the mountains and **he** has lots of goats. Heidi sleeps in a bed in the attic of the house. She drinks goat's milk and eats bread and cheese.

Every day she walks in the mountains with the goats, her grandfather and her friend, Peter. She sees birds and flowers. She is very happy.

But one day, Heidi's aunt arrives and takes her to the city. Heidi doesn't like the city and she is very sad to be away from her grandfather, Peter and the goats. Heidi has lots of adventures in the city.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the main idea of the passage ?
   ......Heidi is an orphan girl.......
2. Why was Heidi sad in the city ?
   ....
3. What do you think about Heidi and Peter's life ?
   ......I think They had a happy life.

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined word "**he**" refers to ....
   a. Peter
   b. Heidi's grandfather
   c. the writer
   d. Heidi's cousin
5. .... mentioned in the passage.
   a. Two males
   b. Two females
   c. Two males and one female
   d. Two males and two females
6. The underlined word "**orphan**" means someone who ....
   a. has no father or mother
   b. has no money
   c. has no friends
   d. has a father and mother

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Are there .... boys in the playground ?
   a. some b. any c. much d. little
2. We .... be careful while crossing the road.
   a. shouldn't b. can't c. should d. mustn't
3. When does Naglaa .... swimming ?
   a. goes b. go c. went d. going

4. Habiba has a very .... life. She goes to school and studies hard.
   a. free b. dear c. busy d. daily
5. My friend has got a/an .... because he cannot walk.
   a. wheelchair b. snowmobile c. armchair d. stool
6. You can boil water in a ....
   a. saucepan b. teaspoon c. bowl d. cup
7. A / An .... is a simple message sent through the internet.
   a. telegram b. letter c. blog d. email
8. Ali .... the evening reading a short story.
   a. gave b. spent c. worked d. moved
9. In Alexandria, you can have a wonderful .... from your own window.
   a. review b. view c. preview d. interview
10. Painting is my favourite ....
    a. sport b. hobby c. food d. subject

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Last October, we **have** a picnic in Al Azhar Park. (............)
2. **Have** Samir got a beard ? (............)
3. I usually **plays** the drums. (............)
4. Ali is my best friend and **her** hobby is watching TV. (............)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A review of your favourite book"

....
....
....
....
....
....

Sample Test 8

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. I like music and play the ....
   a. drums b. piano c. flute d. cello

2. What do you do in art lessons ? ....
   a. I play the piano   b. I learn about countries
   c. I draw pictures   d. I like music
3. .... tells us about countries.
   a. English   b. Art   c. Social Studies   d. Science
4. Drawing pictures makes me ....
   a. sad   b. strong   c. weak   d. happy

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Nader : Where did you go on holiday last year ?
Tamer : I went to Alexandria.
Nader : Where did you (1) ....Stay.... ?
Tamer : I stayed in my uncle's flat.
Nader : (2) ....How.... did you travel there ?
Tamer : I travelled (3) ....by.... train.
Nader : Did you swim in the sea ?
Tamer : (4) ....Yes, I did
Nader : What did you eat there ?
Tamer : I usually eat (5) ....Fish.... when I am there.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Hello ! My name's Ali. I'm 13. This is a picture of my family. My mum's name is Amira. She's a teacher. Next to her is my dad. His name is Adel. He's a teacher, too. Both my **parents** are teachers at my school. **They** have one daughter - she's my sister, Lamia, and she's 9 years old.
And they have two sons - me, and my brother, Khaled. He's 11.
Our grandmother is 64 and she's called Huda. She's my mum's mother.
My mum's father is our grandfather - he's called Omar. He's 65. Their daughter's called Judy. She's my mum's sister and she's my aunt.
My uncle's called Marwan. He is a doctor. Their son is called Tarek, and he's my cousin. It's his birthday today - he's 3 years old.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What does the passage talk about ?
   ....Ali and his Family.
2. How many brothers does Ali have ?
   ....Ali has one brother Called Khaled.

3. What do you think about Ali's family ?
........I Think They are happy Family.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined word "**they**" refers to ....
   a. Amira and Adel b. Lamia and Khaled
   c. Huda and Omar d. Amira and Marwan
5. Ali's grandfather is .... than his grandmother.
   a. older b. younger c. taller d. shorter
6. The underlined word "**parents**" means ....
   a. sister and brother b. father and mother
   c. uncle and aunt d. son and daughter

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. In Egypt, students .... go to school on Friday.
   a. always b. never c. sometimes d. usually
2. My sister Soha has got long hair .... glasses.
   a. and b. because c. but d. on
3. They are .... chess pieces now.
   a. made b. make c. makes d. making
4. My father is a .... He works at a restaurant.
   a. doctor b. cook c. teacher d. pilot
5. My father's sister is my ....
   a. uncle b. aunt c. cousin d. daughter
6. The queen of England is very .... She has got many houses.
   a. poor b. rich c. short d. fast
7. What .... of food do you like most ? – Turkish food.
   a. colour b. age c. kind d. name
8. .... has got rice and pasta in it. It's an Egyptian meal.
   a. Tagine b. Kapenta c. Koshari d. Burger
9. The .... is my favourite place to go in summer to swim.
   a. cave b. mountain c. beach d. desert
10. A .... is a group of people who play music together.
   a. hand b. team c. band d. family

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. My family doesn't lives in Cairo. (Live)
2. Adel lives in England. He can't speak English well. (Can)

3. **Didn't** speak loudly.
4. **They** names are Emad and Dina.



E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A visit to the Zoo"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 9

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الاجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. Where did they have lunch ? ....
   a. At the cinema b. At a restaurant
   c. At a shop d. At home
2. They went to the park last ....
   a. summer b. Friday c. month d. winter
3. They went to the market and bought a ....
   a. jacket b. hat c. T-shirt d. coat
4. He went to the park with his ....
   a. father b. mother c. uncle d. brother

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Hoda : Hi, Laila.
Laila : Hi, Hoda.
Hoda : What was the weather (1) ....like.... yesterday ?
Laila : It was very hot.
Hoda : Where did you go ?
Laila : I went to the (2) ....beach.... .
Hoda : The beach ! (3) ....What.... did you do there ?
Laila : I swam in the (4) ....Sea.... .
Hoda : What else did you do there ?
Laila : I made a (5) ....Sand castle.... on the beach.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

I'm Akeyo. I live in Nairobi, in Kenya. This is a typical day for me. On school days, I get up at half past six. I usually have breakfast with my family. My school is far away, so **we** never walk there . My mum and dad **drive** us there. It always takes a long time because the roads are busy. When we hear the bell at eight o'clock, we go to the school hall. We have four lessons, then it is break. I usually talk with my friends in the playground, but sometimes we go to the library to read books. After break, we have more lessons. We have lunch at half past twelve. School finishes at four o'clock. When I get home, I have something to eat, then I always do my homework. My brother and
I usually watch TV before we go to bed at about half past eight. I have a busy day !"

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable tittle for this passage.
   ....A Typical day.........
2. What does Akeyo do when he hears the school bell ?
   ....He goes To School hall.........
3. How do you think students feel when they finish a school day ?
   ....I Think They Feel happy.........

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. Akeyo takes a long time to go to school because ....
   a. his school is far away   b. he gets up early.
   c. the roads are busy   d. a & c
5. The word "**drive**" means going by ....
   a. car   b. canoe
   c. boat   d. bicycle
6. The underlined pronoun "**we**" refers to ....
   a. Akeyo's family   b. Akayo's brothers
   c. People of Kenya   d. People of Egypt

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Fatma .... got blond hair.
   a. has   b. have   c. having   d. is
2. There .... much water on the floor.
   a. is   b. are   c. has   d. have

3. The boy is standing .... the tree. His father can't see him.
   a. behind b. in front of c. next to d. under
4. A brave person is happy to do something ....
   a. fun b. strange c. dangerous d. bad
5. A .... person makes good decisions.
   a. lazy b. foolish c. sensible d. funny
6. You should .... on the SEND icon to send your text message.
   a. tick b. take c. click d. write
7. Things you buy to remember a holiday are called ....
   a. views b. sandwiches c. cards d. souvenirs
8. A child with no mother or father is called a/an ....
   a. orphan b. actor c. pilot d. officer
9. The musical instruments which you hit to make a noise are called ....
   a. pianos b. violins c. flutes d. drums
10. Famous football teams have a lot of .... They encourage players.
   a. vans b. fins c. fans d. vets

5 **Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. It's not my camera. **My** is new. (Mine)
2. **Is** there any nuts in the cupboard ? (Are)
3. My uncle has got two **child** . (Children)
4. You **shouldn't** eat a lot of fruits and vegetables. (Should)

E. Writing

6 **Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :**

"A recipe for your favourite food"

....
....
....
....
....
....

Sample Test 10

A. Listening

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. Maths lessons help us learn about ....
   a. numbers b. pictures c. languages d. lessons

2. Pupils like their ....
   a. hospital b. class c. school d. park
3. English is England's ....
   a. subject b. lesson c. picture d. language
4. Pupils can paint and draw in .... lessons.
   a. maths b. art c. English d. science

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Soha : What's your favourite hobby, Rana ?
Rana : I love reading adventure stories.
Soha : Have you read "Alice's (1) ...adventures... in Wonderland" ?
Rana : Yes. It's a nice children's (2) ...Story... .
Soha : What do you think of Alice ?
Rana : I think she is a (3) ...Sensible... girl.
Soha : Sensible ? What does this mean ?
Rana : Sensible means that she can think (4) ...well... .
Soha : Who is the most frightening (5) ...Character... in the story ?
Rana : I think the Queen of Hearts.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Wael loves technology! His favourite hobby is playing video games. He usually plays **them** on his laptop, but sometimes he plays them on his mobile phone.

His favourite lesson at school is computer studies! At break and lunchtime he stays in the classroom and he looks at video game websites on his phone.

Mazen loves nature. He likes walking and watching the trees, animals, flowers and insects. He doesn't like being in the house; he likes being in the garden and looking at the sky.

At school, he always goes **outside** at break. He goes inside when it's very hot or cold!

He has got a mobile phone. He doesn't send messages or make video calls on his phone, but he takes photos of flowers.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.
   ...Technology and nature...

2. Where does Mazen go at break time ?
He always goes outside at break.
3. Mazen love nature. How do you know ?
....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. On your smart mobile phone, you can ....
   a. take photos b. make video calls
   c. send text messages d. a, b & c
5. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to ....
   a. video games b. hobbies
   c. mobile phones d. technology
6. The underlined word "**outside**" is the opposite of ....
   a. busy b. inside c. free d. helpful

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... there any boys in the garden ?
   a. Is b. Are c. Do d. Does
2. Physics .... a difficult subject.
   a. has b. were c. are d. is
3. Birds always .... in the early morning.
   a. to sing b. singing c. sings d. sing
4. We know about the past in .... lessons.
   a. science b. history c. maths d. Arabic
5. Tigers are .... animals.
   a. funny b. scary c. cute d. nice
6. Ayman prefers tea with light sugar, so he puts only one ....
   a. pot b. dish c. teaspoon d. glass
7. .... are friendly sea animals.
   a. Sharks b. Octopuses c. Dolphins d. Whales
8. .... is not a cooking verb.
   a. Pudding b. Boil c. Stir d. Add
9. Keep your password ....
   a. secret b. popular c. slow d. famous
10. Tell your parents if you're .... about something.
   a. clever b. good c. happy d. worried

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. He goes always to his work early. (..........)
2. Nader has got a wheelchair because he can walk very well. (..........)
3. Ali is read his English book now. (..........)
4. Throw the ball to mine. I'm waiting. (..........)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Nature"

....
....
....
....
....
....

Sample Test 11

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الاجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. How old is your grandfather ? ....
   a. 80 b. 70 c. 60 d. 50
2. Samy is your ....
   a. dad b. uncle c. grandfather d. brother
3. .... is 30 years old.
   a. Hala b. Samy c. Grandfather d. Helmi
4. My grandfather's hair is white and ....
   a. tall b. long c. old d. short

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Amira : Hello. Amira is speaking.
Marwa : Hello, Amira. This is Marwa.
Amira : Hello, Marwa. Can I (1) .... to Salwa, please ?
Marwa : I'm sorry. She isn't here at (2) .... moment.
Amira : (3) .... is she now ?
Marwa : She is sitting under a tree in the park.

Amira : What is the weather like there ?
Marwa : It's (4) ....Sunny.......... . There is a lot of sun.
Amira : That's great. I know she loves (5) ....nature.... .
Marwa : That's right. She likes nature.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Every morning, children from a far village in Egypt cycle to school. It is a cheap and healthy way to travel. They can always arrive on time. It's also hard for children who live next to Lake Bunyonyi, in Uganda. **Their** school is on the other side of the lake, so they do not **walk** to school. They go in a canoe. The canoe takes the children to school and home again every day.

In winter, there is a lot of snow in the USA. So, the children travel to school on a snowmobile !

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the main idea of the passage ?
........How do children go To school.........
2. Do you think it's useful to go to school on a bike ? Why / Why not ?
Yes, as it's Cheap and healthy way To Travel.
3. Which countries are mentioned in this passage ?
........Egypt , Uganda and USA.........

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. "**Walk**" means ....
a. go on foot b. go by bike c. go in a canoe d. go by boat
5. A canoe is used in ....
a. lakes b. villages c. homes d. schools
6. The underlined pronoun "**Their**" refers to children from ....
a. Egypt b. Uganda
c. the world d. the USA

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The story is .... a clever doctor.
a. about b. from c. with d. to
2. Nada .... like swimming.
a. don't b. isn't c. aren't d. doesn't

3. My father has .... a smartphone.
   a. get b. got c. gets d. getting
4. I'm not good at running. I'm very ....
   a. fast b. slow c. strong d. fit
5. A .... is a big strong building from the past.
   a. souvenir b. castle c. desert d. hotel
6. Athletes work hard to .... their school studies and their sport.
   a. taste b. train c. balance d. take
7. Omar plays the violin in a famous ....
   a. bank b. band c. hospital d. library
8. Omar has got a big .... on his mouth.
   a. beard b. ear c. hair d. moustache
9. How many countries are there in the Sahara .... ?
   a. Lake b. Sea c. Desert d. Mountain
10. The phone is ringing. Can I .... it ?
   a. ask b. take c. answer d. make

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **Is** there any mobile phones ? (Are)
2. When I first came to the language school, I **am not** very good. (was not)
3. You can **giving** money to help poor people. (give)
4. We should **drinks** a lot of water. (drink)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Snacks"

....
....
....
....
....
....

Sample Test 12

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. Famous people have a / an .... life.
   a. free b. busy c. boring d. interesting

2. Famous people do their work for a .... time.
   a. short b. tall c. long d. dark
3. It is important for famous people to .... their work and life.
   a. train b. balance c. take d. ask
4. Life of famous people is important but ....
   a. easy b. lazy c. difficult d. happy

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Taha : Do you use technology at your school ?
Omar : Yes, we do. We use tablets.
Taha : Really ? Can you (1) ......use...... a tablet ?
Omar : Yes, I can.
Taha : Which subjects do you use tablets in ?
Omar : (2) ......All Subdects......
Taha : Has your classroom (3) ......got...... a smart board ?
Omar : Yes, it (4) ......has...... .
Taha : Do you use mobile phones at class ?
Omar : (5) ......No, I donit......

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

"Alice in Wonderland" is a famous children's story. It is an adventure story. Alice had a lot of adventures in Wonderland. She met a lot of interesting characters. Wonderland was strange, but it was an interesting place for Alice. Alice was a sensible, brave and **clever** girl. She met the White Rabbit that was always late and ran fast. The Cheshire Cat is a funny animal which helped Alice to find different places and characters. The Queen of Hearts was a scary person, but Alice was not frightened of **her**.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.
   ......A famous Children Story......
2. How did the Cheshire Cat help Alice ?
   He helped her To find different places and characters
3. Why do you think Alice was brave ?
   ......Because She wasnt afrightened of the Queen of hearts.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. Alice met a lot of interesting .... in Wonderland.
   a. characters b. kings c. places d. blog posts
5. The word "**clever**" means very ....
   a. slow b. bored c. lazy d. intelligent
6. The underlined pronoun "**her**" refers to ....
   a. Alice b. the Queen of Hearts
   c. the White Rabbit d. the Cheshire Cat

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I live in Alexandria with .... parents.
   a. mine b. I c. my d. me
2. We can .... with our tongues.
   a. smell b. taste c. touch d. see
3. Does he like .... basketball ?
   a. play b. playing c. plays d. played
4. She .... to the cinema last week.
   a. go b. goes c. went d. going
5. When I see lions, I feel .... I don't like them.
   a. happy b. proud c. frightened d. hot
6. You can see a beautiful .... from the top of Cairo Tower.
   a. desert b. view c. car d. ice
7. It's nice to .... students from different countries.
   a. eat b. cut c. meet d. carry
8. Unhealthy foods cause illness and add to your ....
   a. culture b. information c. weight d. discussion
9. You can boil water in a ....
   a. saucepan b. teaspoon c. bowl d. cup
10. .... is a natural drink and very healthy.
    a. Raisin b. Pepper c. Cinnamon d. Nuts

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. There **isn't** any tablets. (aren't)
2. First, **putting** some water in the kettle. (..Put)
3. Grandfather arrives at 5 o'clock. Let's go to meet **his**. (..him)
4. There is too **many** sugar. (..much

E. Writing

6 **Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :**

"Your favourite place"

....
....
....
....
....
....

Sample Test 13

A. Listening

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الاجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. My school library is on the .... floor.
   a. first b. ground c. second d. third
2. .... gives us information about people and life.
   a. Playing b. Walking c. Reading d. Running
3. You can .... books from your school library.
   a. buy b. borrow c. sell d. eat
4. In the ...., you can learn about people and life.
   a. information b. library c. ground d. playground

B. Language Functions

2 **Complete the following dialogue :**

Daughter : I have a problem, mom.
Mother : Oh! (1) ....What's.... that problem ?
Daughter : I don't know how to (2) ....make.... tea.
Mother : It's very easy. Follow my instructions.
Daughter : I am listening to you, mom.
Mother : (3) ....First.... , put some water in the kettle.
Daughter : OK. What's next ?
Mother : (4) ....Boil.... the water. Then, put the hot water in a cup with tea and sugar.
Daughter : That's easy. What's (5) ....next.... ?
Mother : Take out the tea bag. Then, drink the tea.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 **Read the following, then answer the questions :**

Lamees is 12 years old. She lives in a big house with her family. Her grandparents live with them, too. Her father is a doctor. He helps **sick** people. Her mother, Nadia, is a teacher. She teaches home economics in a primary school. Lamees and her only sister, Rodina are twins. They look the same. Both of **them** have got, big blue eyes and blond hair. They have no brothers, so they spend their free time together playing with their toys. Her grandfather Kamal doesn't work. He is 65 years old. He always tells the children stories. Grandmother Munira is a good cook. She often makes them delicious cakes.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What does the passage talk about ?
   ......Lemee's Family.......
2. How does Rodina look like ?
   ......She has got big blue eyes and blond hair.
3. Why do you think the children like their grandfather ?
   ......Because he always Tells Them stories .

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The word "**sick**" is the opposite of ....
   a. delicious b. lazy c. fast d. healthy
5. .... makes delicious cakes.
   a. Nadia b. Kamal c. Munira d. Lamees
6. The underlined word "**them**" refers to ....
   a. Nadia and Lamees b. Lamees and Rodina
   c. Lamees d. Nadia

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. All Egyptians .... their country.
   a. loves b. loving c. love d. 'll love
2. Yesterday .... a typical day for me.
   a. is b. are c. was d. were
3. How long does it .... to fly to Luxor ?
   a. taking b. took c. takes d. take
4. When you meet people from different countries, you know different ....
   a. forests b. cultures c. rivers d. brids

5. My aunt's food is .... We like it so much.
   a. terrible b. bad c. delicious d. weak
6. School .... should be followed.
   a. roles b. rules c. rolls d. rulers
7. In a school, students play games in the ....
   a. library b. theatre c. museum d. playground
8. **A :** What .... have we got next ? **B :** It's social studies.
   a. sport b. timetable c. subject d. school
9. We paint and draw in the .... lesson.
   a. music b. English c. art d. Arabic
10. .... the icon on your mobile phone.
   a. Say b. Tap c. Send d. Put

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. The cat is very fast. **It's** tail is long. (Its)
2. Ayman goes to work and **do** his work. (does)
3. What can Basmala **does** to get high marks ? (do)
4. Our parents are proud of **ours**. (us)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A traditional meal in Morocco"

....
....
....
....
....
....

Sample Test 14

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. How old is Tamer ? ....
   a. 7 b. 8 c. 9 d. 10
2. Tamer lives in ....
   a. Cairo b. Alexandria c. Luxor d. Aswan

3. Tamer has .... brothers.
a. three b. four c. two d. five

4. Tamer lives with his ....
a. friends b. family c. animals d. wife

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Hana : Hi, Nour, How was your holiday ?
Nour : Hi, Hana, (1) ...it was. fantastic
Hana : Where (2) ...did... you go ?
Nour : I went to France.
Hana : Did you visit the Eiffel Tower ?
Nour : (3) ...Yes, I did
Hana : Did you (4) ...enjoy... your time there ?
Nour : Yes, I enjoyed my time there.
Hana : When did you come home ?
Nour : I came home (5) ...Last... Sunday.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Last summer, I had a holiday course in English in the exciting city "London". I had a wonderful time at the language school. I was **there** for two weeks. It was nice to meet students from **different** countries. My favourite place was Windsor Castle. I learnt English very well. London's shops were fantastic and I bought a lot of souvenirs. My favourite activity was a ride on the London Eye because there was a beautiful view of the city from the top. It was really a wonderful visit.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable tittle for this passage.
...A visit to london...
2. What was the writer's favourite place ?
...Windsor Castle...
3. What was the writer's opinion about his visit to London?
...It was really a wonderfull visit.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The word **"different"** is the opposite of ....
   a. difficult b. quiet c. the same d. usual
5. The writer's favourite activity was a .... on the London Eye.
   a. ride b. jump c. hit d. hop
6. The underlined word "**there**" refers to ....
   a. Paris b. London c. Cairo d. Athens

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Samy, Hany and Emad are brothers. .... at my school.
   a. Them b. Theirs c. Their d. They're
2. We .... go to school on Friday. It's a holiday.
   a. sometimes b. never c. often d. usually
3. I like fish .... rice.
   a. by b. to c. with d. of
4. We can .... a video call with our cousins in England.
   a. make b. take c. send d. type
5. .... at the website and find some information.
   a. Tap b. Look c. Give d. Dig
6. My grandfather can't see well. He needs to wear ....
   a. a coat b. a glass c. glasses d. a jacket
7. When I was young, I used to build .... on the beach.
   a. rocks b. caves c. waterfalls d. sand castles
8. Egypt is a great .... in Africa.
   a. village b. town c. country d. city
9. .... are dried grapes.
   a. Figs b. Raisins c. Biscuits d. Rice
10. My mother's food has a good ....
    a. test b. type c. taste d. form

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **Does** Mona and Sara like painting ? (..Do.....)
2. They are **drinks** tea. (drinking)
3. The house is **our**. It belongs to us. (..ours)
4. There are some laptops and there **are** a whiteboard. (..is.....)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A family party"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 15

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. Ramadan is .... years old.
   a. 12 b. 11 c. 10 d. 9
2. Ramadan goes to school and ....
   a. comes back b. never comes back
   c. stays there d. plays there
3. Why does Ramadan have a wheelchair ? - Because ....
   a. he is young b. his brother helps him
   c. he can't walk d. he goes to school
4. Ramadan moves on a ....
   a. seat b. chair c. wheelchair d. desk

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Randa : Hi, Farida.
Farida : Hi, Randa.
Randa : What are you doing (1) ....at.......... the moment ?
Farida : I am looking at a (2) ....website..........
Randa : A website ! (3) ....Why.......... ?
Farida : Because I want to (4) ....make.......... a cake.
Randa : A cake ! Why ?
Farida : For our daughter's (5) ....birthday.......... party.
Randa : That's great. Happy birthday for her.
Farida : Thank you.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

It's important to eat the right things but we shouldn't **forget** about what we drink. We should drink a lot of water. Water is great because **it** hasn't got any fat or sugar. So we should drink more water. Some drinks have a lot of sugar. We shouldn't drink these because they're bad for our bodies and they are bad for our teeth. Milk is good for our teeth. We should try to drink a glass of milk every day. Fizzy drinks are always bad for our teeth even when they don't have sugar.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the main idea in the passage ?
   Healthy and unhealthy drinks
2. What does the underlined pronoun "**it**" refer to ?
   Water.
3. Why do you think we should eat the right things ?
   To be healthy.

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. Fizzy drinks are .... for our bodies.
   a. bad b. good c. easy d. difficult
5. Milk is good for our ....
   a. blood b. teeth c. ears d. noses
6. The word "**forget**" means to be ....
   a. able to remember b. unable to remember
   c. able to help people for free d. unable to move to a place

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... the children like playing chess ?
   a. Do b. Does c. Is d. Are
2. There isn't .... water in the fridge.
   a. some b. any c. no d. many
3. I .... into the cave because I was frightened.
   a. went b. go c. don't go d. didn't go

4. These brothers are the same age. They are .... (WB page 73)
   a. cousins b. sisters c. twins d. friends
5. I can't pick up that box. My arms are .... (SB page 25)
   a. strong b. weak c. tall d. friendly
6. Rania Elwani is a .... swimmer. Everyone knows her.
   a. tall b. famous c. weak d. unkind
7. When we hear the ...., we go to the school hall.
   a. radio b. ball c. bell d. noise
8. .... video games is my favourite hobby.
   a. Going b. Playing c. Doing d. Marking
9. To .... is to sleep for a time in a tent. (WB page 104)
   a. comb b. camp c. climb d. clip
10. Football is .... all over the world. A lot of people like it.
   a. boring b. popular c. dangerous d. difficult

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Salma and Ola are twins. **There** sister is called Rokaya. (Their)
2. I always **listens** to the teacher carefully. (Listen)
3. These are my **sister** shoes. (Sister's)
4. Has your friend got straight hair ? - No, she **haven't**. (hasn't)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"What do you want to be when you grow up ?"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Test 1

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الاجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. What is Habiba Marzouk ?
   a. A doctor b. A gymnast c. A teacher d. A farmer
2. Habiba is ....
   a. 16 b. 17 c. 19 d. 18
3. How long does she train ?
   a. Ten hours b. Six hours c. Seven hours d. Eight hours
4. Where does Habiba want to go ?
   a. London b. Cairo c. The Olympics d. School

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Zainab : Hello. Are you a new student here ?

Mena : Yes, I am. But I have got a sister here.

Zainab : (1) .... grade is she in ?

Mena : Grade three. She is in (2) .... 3 A.

Zainab : What's her name ?

Mena : Her name is Mai Mohamed.

Zainab : Mai Mohamed ? What is her (3) .... ?

Mena : She plays the drums in the school (4) ....

Zainab : Oh! I know her. She is very good (5) .... music.

Mena : That's right. She loves music.

C. Reading

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

I am Ziad and this is a picture of my classroom. We often use tablets in school. There are two laptop computers in the classroom, too. One laptop has got a mouse. I don't know why it's called a mouse. Do you

know ? And there's a printer, too. My friend, Omar is printing his homework.

I have got a mobile phone but it's in my bag. We don't use our phones in the classroom. Mr Osman has got a phone on his desk. He's charging his phone with a phone charger. And he's got a new MP3 player. It's small and blue. Can you see **it** ?

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is Mr Osman doing ?

....

2. Is it important to use computers at school ? Why / Why not ?

....

3. What are the means of technology mentioned in the passage ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ....

a. MP3 player b. printer
c. phone d. phone charger

5. Osman is ....

a. a teacher b. a student c. Ziad's friend d. a classmate

6. You can listen to music using a/an ....

a. MP3 player b. printer c. mouse d. picture

D. Vocabulary & structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Which sport can .... you happy ?

a. give b. do c. make d. drive

2. .... is an interesting subject.

a. Physics b. Athletics c. Olympics d. Electronics

3. We should never say .... things to other students.

a. kind b. unkind c. good d. polite

4. Old people usually have white ....

a. games b. beards c. films d. stars

5. You should check your teeth .... at the dentist's.
   a. privately b. regularly c. helplessly d. carelessly
6. Alice is the .... character in the story.
   a. mean b. man c. male d. main
7. I'd like to .... a selfie at the top of the Pyramids.
   a. give b. make c. take d. tap
8. That's .... father's car.
   a. I b. my c. mine d. me
9. My mother .... a clever tennis player.
   a. always b. is always c. always is d. never
10. Tamer and Nader .... apples now.
   a. eating b. is eating c. eats d. are eating

5 **Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. Salma likes **hers** English teacher. (....................)
2. Are they **visit** the zoo ? (....................)
3. It is **Hudas'** notebook. (....................)
4. No, there aren't **some** figs. (....................)

E. Writing

6 **Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :**

"Your family"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....



A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. Where did you go ?
   a. To Cairo b. To Siwa c. To Alexandria d. To Luxor
2. We .... in the lake.
   a. saw b. ate c. swam d. slept
3. We saw .... and slept in a tent.
   a. dogs b. cats c. cows d. camels
4. It was my .... holiday.
   a. favourite b. bad c. happy d. sad

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Basem : Who is your best friend, Hamada ?

Hamada : He is Ayman, my cousin.

Basem : How (1) .... is he ?

Hamada : He is 13. He is in the same classroom.

Basem : What are his (2) .... subjects ?

Hamada : He likes science and maths.

Basem : And what is his favourite (3) .... ?

Hamada : He is (4) .... basketball.

Basem : Is he tall ?

Hamada : Yes, he (5) ....

C. Reading

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Last August, when the weather was hot, we went to the beach near my home in Hurghada. Mariam made this sandcastle. There was a cave

in the rocks. But Mariam didn't want to go into **it**, because she was frightened!

Last October, we visited my uncle, aunt and cousins in Cairo. We had a picnic in Al Azhar Park. We ate delicious food, then we played games and my cousin Ali rode his bike.

When I was eight, we went to Siwa. We swam in the lake, and climbed the mountain. We saw camels and slept in a tent in the desert. It was my favourite holiday!

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Do you think that they enjoyed their visit to Cairo ? Why ?

....

2. What does the underlined word "**it**" refer to ?

....

3. Why didn't Mariam go into the cave ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The word "**frightened**" means very ....

a. strong b. happy c. afraid d. angry

5. Al Azhar Park is in ....

a. Cairo b. Hurghada c. Siwa d. Aswan

6. "August" is a .... month.

a. winter b. summer c. autumn d. spring

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Khaled .... swimming every Friday.

a. goes b. gives c. tries d. drives

2. My friend is .... Ali.

a. called b. given c. thrown d. aged

3. .... means usual.

a. Typical b. Busy c. Kind d. Friendly

4. My best friend is Rokaya. We are both in the school basketball ....
   a. group   b. system   c. crew   d. team
5. Habiba Marzouk wants to .... her dreams.
   a. drive   b. destroy   c. take   d. achieve
6. We have to follow the school ....
   a. roles   b. rulers   c. rules   d. rollers
7. She works for 57357 hospital for no money. She does .... work.
   a. necessary   b. voluntary   c. training   d. diving
8. .... a whiteboard over there.
   a. There   b. There's   c. There're   d. There were
9. What .... now ?
   a. is he writing   b. does he write   c. is he write   d. he writing
10. There are too .... raisins on rice pudding.
   a. many   b. much   c. some   d. any

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. She can **jumps** very high. (....................)
2. Moustafa **love** doing art at school. (....................)
3. **Doesn't** come late for work. (....................)
4. Mona went to the zoo **next** week. (....................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A story you read"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test 3

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. What is Mohamed Salah ?
   a. Sports star b. Teacher c. Doctor d. Driver
2. What game does Mohamed Salah play ?
   a. Volleyball b. Football c. Tennis d. Basketball
3. Mohammed Salah is very good at .... goals.
   a. writing b. scoring c. reading d. watching
4. Mohamed Salah is a .... runner.
   a. fast b. slow c. happy d. quiet

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ayman : How do you like travelling to school ?
Helmy : I like cycling to school every day.
Ayman : (1) .... do you like cycling ?
Helmy : Because it's a (2) .... and healthy way to travel.
Ayman : Do you always arrive on (3) .... ?
Helmy : Yes, I am never late for school.
Ayman : Do all children in your school cycle to school ?
Helmy : No. Some children go (4) .... foot.
Ayman : Really ? Walking is also (5) ....
Helmy : That's right.

C. Reading

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Hi Nagwa,

How are you ? You want to know what my parents do at the weekend. My father works with computers. My mother is a teacher. My dad never

works at the weekend, but sometimes my mum looks at students' homework. We often go shopping. When it is not very hot, we usually go to the park. My brother always plays football when we go **there**. He is very good at football. What about you ? What do you do at the weekend ?

Best wishes,

Nesma

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What does Nesma's mother sometimes do at the weekend ?

....

2. What is the main idea of Nesma's email ?

....

3. Do you think that Nesma is happy at the weekend ? Why / Why not ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. They usually go to the park ....
   - a. at the weekends
   - b. when they are busy
   - c. when it isn't very hot
   - d. when it's hot

5. My dad never .... at the weekend.
   - a. sleeps
   - b. travels
   - c. works
   - d. watches TV

6. The underlined "**there**" refers to ....
   - a. the playground
   - b. shopping
   - c. the park
   - d. football

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. You should .... your study and your hobbies.
   - a. balance
   - b. practise
   - c. stay
   - d. spend

2. Salah always .... a lot of goals.
   - a. scores
   - b. gains
   - c. gets
   - d. throws

3. It's easy to .... on the icon.
   a. use b. click c. make d. send
4. What's your favourite .... ? - Football.
   a. habit b. subject c. hobby d. science
5. As a gymnast, she .... for 5 or 6 hours daily.
   a. teaches b. trains c. studies d. swims
6. I usually .... music on the radio.
   a. go b. make c. listen to d. do
7. Your .... is your parent's son.
   a. uncle b. brother c. cousin d. dad
8. These children .... play football.
   a. not b. doesn't c. don't d. aren't
9. He arrived at school .... 7 o'clock.
   a. in b. on c. at d. for
10. What's .... now ?
    a. happen b. happens c. happened d. happening

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. That is Toka. **His** car is red. (........................)
2. Tamer **drink** tea every day. (........................)
3. These are the **boys** football shirts. (........................)
4. Yunis loves **learn** about the past. (........................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your school day"

....
....
....
....
....
....



A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. The Cheshire Cat is a funny ....
   a. class b. subject c. animal d. block
2. The Cheshire Cat is very ....
   a. friendly b. sad c. adventurous d. famous
3. The Cheshire Cat .... Alice about Wonderland.
   a. sees b. tells c. helps d. meets
4. What does the Cheshire Cat help Alice to find ?
   a. Games b. Stories c. Places d. Books

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Rashad : Where are you, Mariam ?
Mariam : I am here in the living room.
Rashad : What are you (1) .... here ?
Mariam : Nothing. Why ?
Rashad : I want to play (2) .... together.
Mariam : But I don't like chess. (3) .... play table tennis.
Rashad : I am not good at tennis. What about (4) .... to music ?
Mariam : That sounds nice. I love music most.
Rashad : Me, too. We both love music.
Mariam : Yes. I love (5) .... the drums, too.

C. Reading

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Mohamed Salah is my favourite sports star. He plays football for a very good team in Europe. He plays for Egypt, too. He is very good at scoring goals. He is a fast runner and a clever footballer.

Mohamed Salah has usually got a big smile. He is quite short for a footballer. He is 1.75 metres tall. Mohamed Salah has got dark, curly hair and a beard.

He is a kind person. He gives money to build schools and hospitals in Egypt. He also gives money to poor people. He is very friendly and he always talks to his fans.

He has not got much time for hobbies, but when he is at home, he enjoys playing video games and watching films.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What's the best title for the passage ?

....

2. Who does Salah talk to ?

....

3. Do you think Salah is a great sports star ? Why / Why not ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. When someone is a star, it means he is clever and ....
   a. has many hobbies b. is a footballer
   c. gives money to people d. many people like him
5. "Fast" is the opposite of ....
   a. short b. weak c. slow d. friendly
6. One of Salah's hobbies is ....
   a. giving money to the poor b. building schools
   c. getting much time d. playing video games

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Gymnastics is a type of ....
   a. subject b. sport c. object d. team
2. All students come to the school .... when they hear the bell.
   a. hole b. hall c. hill d. hell

3. I don't like watching TV. I think it is ....
   a. fantastic b. interesting c. surprising d. boring
4. Something scary makes you feel ....
   a. sad b. bad c. funny d. frightened
5. A/An .... person takes good decisions.
   a. stupid b. scary c. sensible d. angry
6. My arms are weak, so I can't .... up that box.
   a. get b. pick c. give d. drive
7. Habiba Marzouk is a top .... in Africa.
   a. gymnastic b. gymnast c. gymnastics d. gym
8. .... Nabil's sister play tennis ?
   a. Do b. Does c. Don't d. Not
9. My father gave .... his watch.
   a. I b. my c. mine d. me
10. We can .... money to help the poor.
   a. give b. gave c. giving d. to give

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Osama likes playing football, basketball **but** tennis. (..........................)
2. The wind stopped and we **go** on a boat trip. (..........................)
3. There are too **much** raisins. (..........................)
4. You **should** eat too many crisps and cakes. (..........................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your favourite hobby"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test 5

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. When did you travel to Aswan ?
   a. Yesterday b. Last week c. Last year d. Last month
2. I bought .... at Ramses Station.
   a. pens b. books c. tickets d. bags
3. There were people from many .... on the train.
   a. countries b. classes c. cities d. towns
4. When did the train leave Cairo ?
   a. At 11 o'clock b. At 10 o'clock c. At 8 o'clock d. At 9 o'clock

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ann : Hi, where are you from ?

Sara : I'm Egyptian. And you ?

Ann : I'm (1) .... London.

Sara : Oh. How did you (2) .... to Egypt ?

Ann : By plane. I am here (3) .... my family.

Sara : What's your father's job ?

Ann : He is a (4) ....

Sara : A dentist ? And what's your mother's ?

Ann : She is a (5) ....

Sara : Like my mother. She is a teacher, too.

C. Reading

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Alice's Adventures in Wonderland is a famous Children's story. Alice's adventure begins when she goes to Wonderland. Alice thinks that Wonderland is interesting, but it is a strange place. She is a sensible girl,

but she does not understand Wonderland. Alice is also **brave** and clever. She meets a lot of interesting characters.

Alice often sees the White Rabbit. The White Rabbit is very busy and he is usually very late. He always runs fast.

The Cheshire cat is a funny animal. He has got a big smile and he is very friendly. He tells Alice about Wonderland and helps her to find different places and characters. The Queen of Hearts is not very nice. She is a scary person. She is always angry and she shouts at people.

Alice is brave, so she is not frightened of her.

At the end of the story, all the characters help Alice, so she can go home again.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Why is not the Queen of Hearts nice ?

....

2. Who is usually very late ?

....

3. Why do you think the Cheshire Cat is helpful ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. Going to Wonderland tells us that Alice is ....

a. scary b. clever and brave
c. weak d. frightened

5. "Brave" is the opposite of ....

a. frightened b. strong c. funny d. angry

6. When someone is funny, he/she ....

a. is always angry b. has a big smile
c. is dangerous d. is a scary person

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I always tell my young brother ....

a. music b. stories c. games d. matches

2. It's .... to cycle to school.
   a. fast b. unhealthy c. healthy d. quick
3. I go to the cinema .... a week.
   a. two b. twice c. one d. for
4. I write what I'm going to do in my ....
   a. dairy b. diary c. book d. password
5. My brother is .... He's 2 metres.
   a. tall b. long c. short d. fat
6. It's half .... ten just now.
   a. post b. too c. past d. to
7. As a/an .... , she doesn't have a father or mother.
   a. musician b. honest c. child d. orphan
8. I like reading stories .... Taha Hussein.
   a. to b. with c. for d. by
9. There .... any women in the car.
   a. was b. wasn't c. were d. weren't
10. .... the children like playing chess ?
   a. Do b. Does c. Is d. Are

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. You **shouldn't** always clean your teeth. (....................)
2. How **did** the match yesterday ? (....................)
3. Stop playing on your phone and **listens** to me. (....................)
4. Abdullah didn't **felt** well yesterday. (....................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your best friend"

....

....

....

....

....

....



A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الاجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. Yesterday, we went to ....
   a. Cairo   b. Luxor   c. Aswan   d. Siwa
2. Where is Siwa ?
   a. In the desert   b. In the town   c. In the temple   d. In the country
3. What is Siwa famous for ?
   a. Cakes   b. Oranges   c. Olives   d. Eggs
4. We slept in a .... in the desert.
   a. class   b. tent   c. school   d. park

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Walaa : Tell me, Joody, who is your best friend at class ?
Joody : She is Mosheera. She sits next to me.
Walaa : What does she (1) .... like ?
Joody : She (2) .... got long straight hair.
Walaa : Has she got (3) .... ?
Joody : Yes, she has. She can't read well without them.
Walaa : I think I know her. (4) .... she always cycle to school ?
Joody : Yes, she does. She has got a red bicycle.
Walaa : I know her. She is a (5) .... girl.
Joody : Yes, of course. She usually laughs a lot.

C. Reading

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

My best friend is called Basel. He has got straight hair and brown eyes. He is kind and funny. He likes reading and playing video games. **Those** are my favourite hobbies, too!

Basel has got a wheelchair because he cannot walk. It is not easy for Basel to travel around school. I open the doors for Basel and I help him to get things in the classroom.

Basel's wheelchair is not usually a problem. We do a lot of things together. He goes to all of my lessons and we have lunch together. Sometimes, we even play football in the playground. Basel cannot run, but he is fast in his wheelchair!

I like Basel because he is a lot of fun. I am very happy that he is my friend.

Fady.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Why does Fady like Basel ?

....

2. What are Fady's favourite hobbies ?

....

3. What do you think of Fady ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. Wheelchairs are for people who ....

a. can't walk | b. can't speak
c. can't see | d. can't listen

5. .... are the things that Fady and Basel do together.

a. Going to lessons | b. Having lunch
c. Playing football | d. a, b & c

6. The underlined word "**Those**" refers to ....

a. brown eyes | b. friends
c. Basel and Fady | d. reading and playing video games

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... is a game for 22 players.

a. Chess b. Basketball c. Volleyball d. Football

2. We go to the .... to read books.

a. art room b. library c. playground d. court

3. He wears his .... to see better.
   a. hat b. trousers c. glasses d. sunglasses
4. Our brother is still 5 years old. He hasn't got a ....
   a. house b. family c. mouth d. beard
5. We learn about numbers in .... lessons.
   a. maths b. English c. art d. Arabic
6. I like this .... who plays music together.
   a. match b. band c. team d. game
7. Ali and Hany are both in the school football ....
   a. achievement b. dream c. time d. team
8. Tomorrow is .... birthday.
   a. she b. her c. hers d. they
9. My sister goes to a nearby ....
   a. girls school b. girl school c. girls' school d. girl's school
10. Be careful when .... a lot of snow.
   a. there b. their c. there's d. there're

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Abdullah has a new mobile. **Their** mobile is smart. (....................)
2. Samy and Ali **likes** playing chess. (....................)
3. Whose shoes are these ? They are **Ali**. (....................)
4. **Keeps** your password secret. (....................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your favourite subject"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test 7

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. There are a lot of rice pudding .... online.
   a. recipes b. books c. ingredients d. instructions
2. There is enough rice pudding for the whole ....
   a. girls b. family c. boys d. teachers
3. Is there a lot of sugar in the recipe ?
   a. No. b. Yes.
   c. I don't know. d. Not in the text.
4. I like sweet ....
   a. raisins b. cinnamon c. food d. milk

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Rana : Whose photo is this in the sports magazine ?

Sama : It's for Habiba Marzouk.

Rana : (1) .... is she ?

Sama : She is an Egyptian (2) ....

Rana : Why is she famous ?

Sama : Because she is a top (3) .... in Africa.

Rana : She looks young and strong.

Sama : Yes. She is 18 and (4) .... for five or six hours a day.

Rana : Does she go to school ?

Sama : Yes, she does. She studies (5) .... in the evening.

C. Reading

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

My name is Riham. My favourite subject at school is science. I love learning about how things work. I like doing maths, too. I am quite good at maths.

I quite like doing sport. My favourite sport is tennis. I like playing it with my friends, but I am not very good at **it**.

I usually go home **after** school. I do not like playing computer games. After I do my homework, I like reading a book. I like writing stories, too.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What sport does Riham like ?

....

2. What does Riham like doing at home ?

....

3. What's your opinion about Riham ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. You can learn about how things work in .... lesson.

a. science b. maths c. English d. tennis

5. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ....

a. tennis b. playing c. TV d. school

6. The underlined word "**after**" is the opposite of ....

a. before b. by c. at d. to

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I'm very .... I don't have time to play.

a. busy b. free c. careful d. ready

2. Alice had a lot of .... in Wonderland.

a. water b. places c. devices d. adventures

3. In Egypt, we have the longest .... in the world.

a. sea b. waterfall c. river d. forest

4. You can enjoy sitting on the .... by the sea.

a. jungle b. beach c. mountain d. river

5. Healthy .... are important for you.

a. pairs b. snacks c. snakes d. diagrams

6. Tagine is a .... from Morocco.

a. mean b. mail c. meal d. male

7. Can you count the .... of this story ?

a. books b. characters c. novels d. plays

8. Where did he .... ?

a. sleep b. slept c. sleeping d. sleeps

9. There's too .... milk.

a. much b. many c. lot of d. lots of

10. Here's a piece .... cheese.

a. of b. to c. from d. for

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Tarek is his cousin. Today is **her** birthday. (.....................)
2. Where does Heidi's father **lives** ? (.....................)
3. Camels are very strong. They **can't** carry 100 kilos of bags. (.....................)
4. My best friend **have** got short, dark hair. (.....................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your school"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. A .... which I always remember is fish and rice.
   a. paper b. snack c. meal d. drink
2. Where is the great restaurant ?
   a. In Alexandria b. In Luxor c. In Cairo d. In Aswan
3. I went there with my ....
   a. teacher b. doctor c. sister d. family
4. The .... was very fresh.
   a. rice b. fish c. meat d. koshari

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ashraf : Is your school near your house ?

Toka : No, sir. It's a long way from my house.

Ashraf : How do you (1) .... to school ?

Toka : My father always (2) .... me to school.

Ashraf : How long does it (3) .... ?

Toka : It takes 20 (4) ....

Ashraf : But why do you come to school late ?

Toka : Sorry, sir, the streets are (5) .... in the morning.

Ashraf : Try to be early. Don't come late again.

Toka : Ok, sir.

C. Reading

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Hi! My name is Yunis. I have got short, dark curly hair. I live in Alexandria with my mum, dad and two brothers. My favourite school subject is history. I love learning about the past.

I like maths and science, too. I do not like art because I am not very good at drawing or painting.

I often play sport after school. My favourite sport is basketball. I am good at it because I am tall and I can jump high. I like swimming, too. I go swimming twice a week.

At home, I like reading and playing video games. I do not like watching TV. I think **it** is **boring**.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Why is Yunis good at basketball ?

....

2. Which school subject tells us about the past ?

....

3. Do you like Yunis ? Why ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. .... includes painting and drawing.

a. Sport b. A game c. Science d. Art

5. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ....

a. watching TV b. jumping
c. reading d. video games

6. The word "**boring**" means ....

a. very nice b. different c. not funny d. liked

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A laptop has got a ....

a. player b. tablet c. printer d. mouse

2. The .... is too high to climb it.

a. beach b. cave c. mountain d. forest

3. Raisins, milk and nuts are the .... of the rice pudding.

a. ingredients b. subjects c. objects d. habits

4. You can boil water in a ....

a. saucepan b. cup c. bowl d. teaspoon

5. There's a lot of .... in the desert.
   a. sand   b. castles   c. water   d. plants
6. You can .... a selfie on your mobile.
   a. click   b. look   c. take   d. make
7. I'll send you a/an .... message soon.
   a. test   b. text   c. icon   d. photo
8. Did you .... in the sea ?
   a. swim   b. swam   c. swimming   d. to swim
9. She cooks meat .... tomatoes.
   a. with   b. in   c. of   d. on
10. You should .... a lot of fruit and vegetables.
   a. eat   b. ate   c. to eat   d. eating

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Yunis **don't** like reading or playing video games. (....................)
2. Are **their** any pens in your bag, Sama ? (....................)
3. I **drink** orange juice at the moment. (....................)
4. Don't **making** friends with people you don't know online. (....................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Using technology at school"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....



Test 9

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. My grandfather is .... than my grandmother.
   a. older b. younger c. taller d. shorter
2. How many sons do your grandparents have ?
   a. Two b. Three c. Sixty d. Five
3. My aunts are ....
   a. teachers b. doctors c. nurses d. engineers
4. How old is your grandfather ?
   a. 60 b. 64 c. 67 d. 68

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Rami : Good morning. How are you, Tamer ?

Tamer : Good morning. I am fine, thanks.

Rami : Who is your favourite (1) .... star ?

Tamer : He is Trizigeh.

Rami : What sport does he (2) .... ?

Tamer : He plays football for Aston Villa F.C.

Rami : What does he look (3) .... ?

Tamer : He has got blond straight (4) ....

Rami : Does he (5) .... goals ?

Tamer : Yes, he scores a lot of goals.

C. Reading

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Hi Ali

Last summer, I travelled to Egypt because I wanted to learn Arabic. I went to a language school in Cairo. I had a wonderful time.

I was there for two weeks. People in Cairo are very friendly. Now I have many new friends.

When I first went to the language school, I was not very good at Arabic. But the teachers helped **me**, and the lessons were fun. Now I can talk to my new friends in Arabic!

Cairo's shops are fantastic. I bought lots of souvenirs. My favourite place was the Cairo Tower. I enjoyed the view of the city from the top.

Andy.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Why did Andy go to Egypt?

....

2. What do you think about Andy's visit to Cairo ?

....

3. What did Andy find about learning Arabic language at first ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. Andy's favourite place was ....

a. Cairo Tower　b. Cairo shops
c. The language school　d. the view

5. The underlined pronoun "**me**" refers to ....

a. Ali　b. Andy　c. the teacher　d. Arabic

6. The souvenirs are things you buy to .... you visited.

a. remember the place　b. forget the place
c. play sports　d. study the subjects

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My little sister likes making .... on the beach.

a. sand　b. sandcastles　c. caves　d. lakes

2. It's safe to keep your password ....

a. clear　b. secret　c. popular　d. known

3. You can .... your mobile using a phone charger.
   a. change b. charge c. hear d. choose
4. Each football .... consists of eleven players.
   a. goal b. team c. group d. fan
5. We're going to do a .... on "How to be healthy".
   a. shopping b. housework c. subject d. project
6. I'm going to have a holiday .... in English.
   a. case b. course c. tour d. journey
7. You can take a boat to go on the ....
   a. lake b. desert c. beach d. jungle
8. .... there any milk ?
   a. Is b. Are c. Were d. Where
9. She .... a coat as it was hot.
   a. wears b. wore c. didn't wear d. doesn't wear
10. Don't .... noise, please.
   a. make b. made c. to make d. making

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Huda and Omar love **them** parents. (................)
2. I **doesn't** listen to music. (................)
3. It is a **girl's** school. (................)
4. They didn't **travelled** by car. (................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"School rules"

....

....

....

....

....

....



A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. What is the passage about ?
   a. Football b. Hobbies c. Chess d. Music
2. You can .... on the radio.
   a. play football b. listen to music c. play chess d. play music
3. What sport do you like playing ?
   a. Football b. Music c. Chess d. Tennis
4. What does your brother like ?
   a. Chess b. Music c. Football d. The radio

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Saad : Where are you going next holiday ?

Dina : To my uncle's farm.

Saad : Where is the (1) .... ?

Dina : It's near Cairo.

Saad : (2) .... do you go there ?

Dina : (3) .... my father's car.

Saad : What are there on the farm ?

Dina : A lot. There are trees, plants and (4) ....

Saad : (5) .... does he keep animals ?

Dina : To help him on the farm and to get milk and cheese.

C. Reading

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Hi Fady,

Last week, I travelled from Cairo to Aswan. My father bought our tickets at Ramses Station, then <u>we</u> got on the train.

There were people from many countries on the train, for example, England and Australia.

The train left Cairo at 8 o'clock, and soon we passed Giza. I enjoyed the view from the window and I saw the Nile. There were lots of boats. It was beautiful.

We arrived at Luxor at a quarter past six. Many tourists left the train here. They wanted to see the Valley of the Kings! The train **continued** to Aswan. We arrived there at ten o'clock.

My uncle was there to meet us! It was a wonderful journey.

See you soon!

Mazin

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Who was waiting for Mazin's family ?

....

2. Where did they buy the tickets ?

....

3. What view did Mazin enjoy ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. .... cities are mentioned in the passage.

a. Two b. Three c. Four d. Five

5. Tourists come from ....

a. England b. England and Australia
c. different countries d. Cairo

6. The underlined word "**continued**" means ....

a. stopped b. didn't stop
c. stayed d. was slow

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Habiba .... very hard to stay strong.

a. trains b. rains c. makes d. takes

2. I like .... voluntary work. I'm an active member in the Egyptian Food Bank.
   a. making b. having c. doing d. typing
3. My favourite hobby is .... the drums.
   a. discussing b. playing c. cycling d. belonging
4. I .... five English lessons a week.
   a. get b. have c. drive d. speak
5. I like walking .... the pavements of Kasr el-Nil Bridge.
   a. a long b. along c. away d. a way
6. A/An .... is a simple message sent through the internet.
   a. telegram b. letter c. blog d. email
7. Girls find home .... an interesting subject.
   a. economics b. electronics c. mathematics d. physics
8. What do you watch .... TV ?
   a. in b. on c. at d. by
9. My friend Hany .... hard every day.
   a. study b. studies c. studying d. is studying
10. .... is the main character of this story ?
   a. What b. Who c. Whose d. Whom

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. What is **yours** telephone number ? (....................)
2. We both **plays** basketball at school. (....................)
3. Shimaa **always is** active. (....................)
4. The drivers didn't find **them** cars. (....................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your favourite food"

....
....
....
....
....
....

Listening Texts

نصوص استماع

Test 1

Habiba Marzouk is a gymnast. She is 18. In the evenings, she trains for five or six hours. She wants to go to the Olympics.

Test 2

When we went to Siwa, we swam in the lake, and climbed the mountain. We saw camels and slept in a tent in the desert. It was my favourite holiday.

Test 3

Mohamed Salah is my favourite sports star. He plays football. He is very good at scoring goals. He is a fast runner.

Test 4

The Cheshire Cat is a funny and friendly animal. He tells Alice about Wonderland and helps her to find different places and characters.

Test 5

Last week, I travelled to Aswan. I bought our tickets at Ramses Station. There were people from many countries on the train, which left Cairo at 8 o'clock.

Test 6

Yesterday, we went to Siwa in the desert. It's famous for dates and olives. We slept in a tent in the desert.

Test 7

There are a lot of rice pudding recipes online, and there's enough rice pudding for the whole family. There's a lot of sugar. I like sweet food.

Test 8

A meal which I always remember is fish and rice at a great restaurant in Alexandria. I went there with my family. The fish was very fresh.

Test 9

My grandfather is 67 years old and my grandmother is 60. They have two sons and 3 daughters. My aunts are teachers.

Test 10

We all like hobbies. I like playing football, but my brother plays chess. My sister plays music and listens to music on the radio.

Days 5, 6 & 7 Schools Examinations



23 Schools Examinations (٢٣) اختبار من امتحانات المدارس

ثلاثة وعشرون اختبار من امتحانات المدارس المختلفة على المنهج بالكامل.

1 Cairo Governorate — Al-Basateen and Dar El-Salam Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. The Cheshire Cat is a funny ....
   a. class b. subject c. animal d. block
2. The Cheshire Cat is very ....
   a. friendly b. sad c. adventurous d. famous
3. The Cheshire Cat .... Alice about Wonderland.
   a. sees b. tells c. helps d. meets
4. What does the Cheshire Cat help Alice to find ?
   a. Games b. Stories c. Places d. Books

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Rashad : Where are you, Mariam ?
Mariam : I am here in the living room.
Rashad : What are you (1) .... here ?
Mariam : Nothing. Why ?
Rashad : I want to play (2) .... together.
Mariam : But I don't like chess. (3) .... play table tennis.
Rashad : I am not good at tennis. What about (4) .... to music ?
Mariam : That sounds nice. I love music most.
Rashad : Me, too. We both love music.
Mariam : Yes. I love (5) .... the drums, too.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Mohamed Salah is my favourite sports star. He plays football for a very good team in Europe. He plays for Egypt, too. He is very good at scoring goals. He is a **fast** runner and a clever footballer.

Mohamed Salah has usually got a big smile. He is quite short for a footballer. He is 1.75 metres tall. Mohamed Salah has got dark, curly hair and a beard.

He is a kind person. He gives money to build schools and hospitals in Egypt. He also gives money to poor people. He is very friendly and he always talks to **his** fans.

He has not got much time for hobbies, but when he is at home, he enjoys playing video games and watching films.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What's the best title for the passage ?

....

2. Who does Salah talk to ?

....

3. Do you think Salah is a great sports star ? Why / Why not ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun "**his**" refers to ....
   a. fans b. Salah c. his father d. poor people
5. "**Fast**" is the opposite of ....
   a. short b. weak c. slow d. friendly
6. One of Salah's hobbies is ....
   a. giving money to the poor b. building schools
   c. getting much time d. playing video games

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Gymnastics is a type of ....
   a. subject b. sport c. object d. team
2. All students come to the school .... when they hear the bell.
   a. hole b. hall c. hill d. hell

3. I don't like watching TV. I think it is ....
   a. fantastic   b. interesting   c. surprising   d. boring
4. Something scary makes you feel ....
   a. happy   b. bad   c. funny   d. frightened
5. A/An .... person takes good decisions.
   a. stupid   b. scary   c. sensible   d. angry
6. My arms are weak, so I can't .... up that box.
   a. get   b. pick   c. give   d. drive
7. Habiba Marzouk is a top .... in Africa.
   a. gymnastic   b. gymnast   c. gymnastics   d. gym
8. .... Nabil's sister play tennis ?
   a. Do   b. Does   c. Don't   d. Doing
9. My father gave .... his watch.
   a. I   b. my   c. mine   d. me
10. We can .... money to help the poor.
   a. give   b. gave   c. giving   d. to give

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Osama likes playing football, basketball **but** tennis. (..............................)
2. The wind stopped and we **go** on a boat trip. (..............................)
3. There are too **much** raisins. (..............................)
4. You **should** eat too many crisps and cakes. (..............................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your favourite hobby"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....



2 Giza Governorate — 6th October Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Egypt and Morocco are in ....
   a. Asia b. Africa c. Europe d. America
2. Arabic is a ....
   a. language b. country c. place d. city
3. All Arab countries speak ....
   a. English b. Arabic c. French d. German
4. .... is in Asia.
   a. Egypt b. Morocco c. Oman d. Sudan

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ayman : Hello! Baleegh.
Baleegh: Hello, Ayman.
Ayman : Did you go to Siwa ?
Baleegh: Yes, I (1) ....
Ayman : When did you go there ?
Baleegh: When I (2) .... eight years old.
Ayman : What did you do there ?
Baleegh: I (3) .... in the lake.
Ayman : Where did you (4) .... there ?
Baleegh: I slept in a (5) .... in the desert.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

To : Azza
From : Fatma
Subject : My holiday

Hi, Azza !

I came back from my holiday in Paris. I had a wonderful time there. Paris is a great city for a holiday because there is so much to see and to do. The food is **delicious**. I ate a lot of new things, for example, snails!

One day, we climbed the Eiffel Tower, and from the top we had a view of the city. We visited museums and had a picnic in Luxembourg Gardens. We also went on a boat on the River Seine. What a pity! We did not have time to go to the Science Museum. I also wanted to see the art at the Louvre, but **it** was closed. Near our hotel, there was a busy market. I bought a T-shirt and some postcards. I also bought you a souvenir; it is a very small Eiffel Tower. You can put it next to your bed. It has got a light on the top.

See you soon !

Fatma

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What's the main idea of this passage ?

....

2. Where did Fatma go on a boat ?

....

3. What do you think of Fatma's holiday ? Why ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. Why didn't Fatma visit the Louvre ? - Because ....
   a. it was closed b. she had a picnic
   c. she did not have time d. it was open
5. The opposite of the underlined word "**delicious**" is ....
   a. funny b. weak
   c. terrible d. good
6. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ....
   a. the Louvre b. the river c. the Eiffel Tower d. a picnic

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. On a .... weekend, I visit my aunt and uncle.
   a. typical b. helpful c. careful d. famous
2. Students learn about .... in the maths lessons.
   a. rivers b. lakes c. numbers d. colours
3. I .... a lot of friends in my new school.
   a. took b. made c. put d. gave

4. Planes, trains and cars are .... of transport.
   a. roads b. streets c. days d. means
5. Samar wants to join the school music ....
   a. pond b. band c. hole d. dream
6. Egypt is the most important .... in Africa.
   a. village b. countryside c. country d. city
7. I can hear the .... It's time for the English lesson.
   a. bell b. ball c. hall d. radio
8. Dina likes .... very much.
   a. paint b. painted c. painting d. be paint
9. She always .... nice stories in the library.
   a. read b. is reading c. reads d. has read
10. Mohamed Salah has .... long, curly hair.
   a. gets b. get c. getting d. got

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Is there a mouse ? - Yes, there **are**. (..............................)
2. Mr Helmy never **watch** football matches on TV. (..............................)
3. Last October, we **have** a picnic in Al-Azhar Park. (..............................)
4. **Egypts'** flag has three colours. (..............................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A visit to the Pyramids"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....



3 Alexandria Governorate

Gomrok Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Heba is .... years old.
   a. 12 b. 13 c. 16 d. 60
2. Mr Adel is a .... teacher.
   a. bad b. clever c. funny d. lazy
3. Mr Adel goes to school by ....
   a. car b. plane c. ship d. train
4. Mr Adel teaches ....
   a. Arabic b. English c. history d. maths

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Mr Ashraf : Is your school near your house ?
Toka : No, sir. It is a long way from my house.
Mr Ashraf : How do you (1) .... to school ?
Toka : My father always (2) .... me to school.
Mr Ashraf : How long does it (3) .... ?
Toka : It takes 20 (4) ....
Mr Ashraf : But why do you come to school late ?
Toka : Sorry, sir. The streets are (5) .... in the morning.
Mr Ashraf : Try to be early. Don't come late again.
Toka : OK, sir.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Last Friday evening, John watched a long film on TV. He went to bed very late. The next morning, he couldn't get up early. He got out and ran to school. He forgot to prepare his school bag well. In the class, he didn't find his pen or the book of English which he was going to use. He tried to borrow them from his classmates, but **they** couldn't give what he wanted

because they were using them. His teachers weren't **pleased** with him. He was sorry and promised to go to bed early and get up early.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Do you think John is a careless pupil or not ? How do you know ?

....

2. Give a suitable title for this passage ?

....

3. Why were the teachers angry with John ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. John got up late on ....

a. Friday b. Monday c. Saturday d. Tuesday

5. The underlined word "**pleased**" means ....

a. high b. happy c. exciting d. sorry

6. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to John's ....

a. classmates b. pens c. cousins d. teachers

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Aya is sitting under a tree. As it is very ....

a. cold b. sunny c. stormy d. cloudy

2. Baby birds are very .... They can't fly for many days.

a. kind b. strong c. unkind d. weak

3. He'd like to spend all day .... video games.

a. play b. played c. playing d. plays

4. Lovely things make you feel ....

a. bad b. frightened c. happy d. sad

5. Pupils wear school ....

a. uniforms b. forms c. reforms d. performs

6. Sensible persons are .... with their friends.

a. friendly b. short c. tall d. unfriendly

7. They .... a video call at the moment.

a. are making b. is making c. made d. make

8. We know it is the end of the lessons when we hear the ....

a. bell b. ball c. bill d. doll

9. Your father never works .... Saturdays.

a. at b. for c. in d. on

10. Ziad doesn't .... swimming when it is cold.

a. watch b. play c. go d. do

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Camels are very strong. They **can't** carry 100 kilos of bags. (....................)
2. My best friend **have** got short, dark hair. (....................)
3. Tarek is my cousin. Today is **her** birthday. (....................)
4. Where does Mona's father **lives** ? (....................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your favourite sports star"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....





Qalyoubia Governorate — Benha Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. The story of Sara is about .... girl.
   a. a clever b. a lazy c. an orphan d. an old
2. Sara's grandfather lives in ....
   a. Cairo b. Egypt c. France d. England
3. Sara goes to live with her ....
   a. grandmother b. father c. mother d. grandfather
4. Sara's grandfather has a lot of ....
   a. goats b. cows c. sheep d. ships

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed : Where did you spend your summer holiday ?
Omar : I went to (1) ....
Ahmed : Great ! (2) .... did you go with ?
Omar : I went with my family.
Ahmed : How did you (3) .... to Alexandria ?
Omar : We went by train.
Ahmed : Where did you (4) .... there ?
Omar : In a hotel.
Ahmed : Did you enjoy your time there ?
Omar : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Mr Ali is a teacher in Cairo. He teaches English. On Monday, Tuesday and Wednesday, he makes himself a sandwich for lunch. He eats it in the school. On Thursday, Friday and Saturday, he usually stays home. His wife makes him his favourite lunch ; chicken and potatoes. Yesterday, it rained a lot. The weather is sometimes rainy in winter in Cairo. Mr Ali did not want to stay home, so he went to a restaurant **near** the school. He loves the food there. The cook makes **it** all himself.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What does Mr Ali usually do twice a week ?

....

2. Give a suitable title for the passage.

....

3. Do you think Mr Ali will go to this restaurant again ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined word "**near**" is the opposite of ....
   a. fast b. far c. old d. new
5. The weather is sometimes .... in winter in Cairo .
   a. sunny b. good c. windy d. rainy
6. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ....
   a. the weather b. the food c. the cook d. restaurant

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Your brother is your parents' ....
   a. son b. sister c. brother d. daughter
2. A/An .... is at the top of the house.
   a. orphan b. attic c. mountain d. hill
3. Huda's grandmother is very kind. She loves .... so much.
   a. theirs b. her c. their d. hers
4. I arrived .... Spain last week.
   a. in b. at c. on d. no word
5. Rania is a top .... in Africa.
   a. gymnast b. gymnastics c. athletics d. physics
6. He is very busy. He .... take any holiday.
   a. can't b. don't c. hasn't d. wasn't
7. We can .... a video call with your cousins in England.
   a. write b. make c. have d. do

8. I'd like to .... a selfie in front of the river.

a. take b. do c. tap d. make

9. It is a good idea to eat between two and four .... of fruit a day.

a. cups b. loaves c. spices d. pieces

10. A .... is a word or numbers you use to go onto a website.

a. keyword b. password c. crossword d. secret word

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. I have got one brother but I **have** got any sisters. (..............................)
2. **Doesn't** tell people your personal information. (..............................)
3. There **are** some milk in the fridge, but there is not any juice. (..............................)
4. I don't like this tea. There is too **many** sugar in it ! (..............................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your family"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....



5 Sharkia Governorate — East Zagazig Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. At school, I have science and .... lessons every day.
   a. Arabic b. English c. art d. PE
2. I do my homework .... watching TV.
   a. before b. after c. when d. with
3. My .... helps me study English.
   a. brother b. mother c. father d. uncle
4. I study English .... with my mother.
   a. at home b. at school c. in the street d. in the club

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Sara : This is a photo of my cousin.
Mona : What's his (1) .... ?
Sara : It's Ali.
Mona : How (2) .... is he ?
Sara : 14 years old.
Mona : Where does he (3) .... ?
Sara : In Zagazig.
Mona : What's his favourite food ?
Sara : He (4) .... eating fish.
Mona : He (5) .... like your dad.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

It's important to eat the right things, but we shouldn't **forget** about what we drink. We should drink a lot of water. Water is great because **it** hasn't got any fats or sugar. So we should drink more water. Some drinks have a lot of sugar. We shouldn't drink them because they are bad for our bodies and our teeth. Milk is good for teeth. We should try to drink a glass of milk every day. Fizzy drinks are also bad for our teeth even when they don't have sugar.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.

....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "**it**" refer to ?

....

3. Why do you think we have to drink the right things ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. Fizzy drinks are .... for our bodies.

a. bad b. good c. easy d. difficult

5. Milk is good for our ....

a. blood b. teeth c. ears d. noses

6. The underlined word "**forget**" means to be ....

a. able to remember b. unable to remember

c. able to help people d. unable to move to a place

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... is an interesting subject.

a. English b. Gym c. Volleyball d. Handball

2. Some students in Egypt .... to school. Bikes are fantastic.

a. run b. walk c. cycle d. meet

3. My aunt is very .... She gives me presents.

a. kind b. sad c. unkind d. poor

4. My dad charges his phone with a phone ....

a. screen b. micro c. charger d. printer

5. .... is not a cooking verb.

a. Stir b. Boil c. Run d. Add

6. The .... which I always remember is fish and rice.

a. mall b. male c. mail d. meal

7. To .... is to sleep for a time in a tent.

a. stop b. step c. camp d. drop

8. This is my pen. It's ....

a. me b. I c. my d. mine

9. What subject are you good .... ? - Arabic.
   a. at   b. from   c. on   d. for
10. There is .... cheese in the fridge.
   a. some   b. any   c. a lot   d. many

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. We played games and Ali **rides** his bike. (....................)
2. Are there **some** apples in the fridge ? (....................)
3. There is too **many** sugar in my tea. (....................)
4. Nabil and Ali are twins. **There** sister is called Hams. (....................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your favourite hobby"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....



Tala Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Where did Ali go yesterday ?
   a. To the cinema b. To the theatre c. To the zoo d. To the school
2. Who went with Ali ?
   a. His family b. His friends c. His teacher d. No one
3. What did Ali see ?
   a. Buses b. Animals c. Balls d. Bills
4. How was Ali when he went home ?
   a. Happy b. Sad c. Tired d. Unhappy

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Rami : Do you play any sport, Hani ?
Hani : Yes, I (1) .... tennis.
Rami : (2) .... do you play tennis ?
Hani : At a sports (3) .... near my house.
Rami : (4) .... do you go there ?
Hani : On foot.
Rami : (5) .... do you play it with ?
Hani : With my friends.
Rami : I wish you good luck.
Hani : Thank you so much.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Egypt is a big country in Africa. It is a **fine** country. Every year, a lot of tourists come to visit Egypt. **They** come by air or by sea. Most of them prefer visiting Egypt in winter because it is usually warm. They visit

a lot of beautiful places. They visit the Egyptian Museum in Cairo. They also go to Giza to see the Pyramids and the Sphinx. They go to Luxor to see the Temple of Karnak. In summer, they go to the beaches to enjoy swimming and fishing. They spend a lot of money which is important for Egypt.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Why do you think tourists prefer visiting Egypt in winter ?

....

2. Give a suitable title for this passage.

....

3. What does the underlined pronoun "**They**" refer to ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. Tourists can see the .... in Giza.

a. sea b. pyramids c. beaches d. temple

5. The .... spent by tourists is very important for Egypt.

a. time b. holiday c. food d. money

6. The underlined word "**fine**" means ....

a. very bad b. very cold c. very hot d. very good

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Good students work hard to .... their dreams.

a. achieve b. forget c. sleep d. watch

2. He plays the piano in a famous ....

a. bend b. pink c. band d. bark

3. I can't see very well, so I need ....

a. classes b. glasses c. boots d. shoes

4. After we put sugar in tea, we should .... it.

a. eat b. cut c. stir d. add

5. Drivers should follow the traffic ....

a. rolls b. roles c. rules d. roils

6. Mohamed Salah has a lot of ....
   a. facts   b. vans   c. fans   d. vets
7. This food is ...., so we ate a lot.
   a. boring   b. delicious   c. bad   d. nasty
8. I haven't got .... money to buy this mobile.
   a. much   b. few   c. little   d. many
9. The sun always .... in the east.
   a. rise   b. to rise   c. rises   d. is rising
10. When did you .... the bill ? - Last week.
   a. paid   b. pay   c. pays   d. paying

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. I would like **playing** outdoors. . (..............................)
2. What did you **bought** yesterday ? (..............................)
3. This is my book. It's **me**. (..............................)
4. Heba **don't** like football. (..............................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your favourite sports star"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....



7 Gharbia Governorate — West Mahalla Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Habiba is a ....
   a. farmer b. teacher c. gymnast d. nurse
2. Habiba wants to go to the ....
   a. Olympics b. stadium c. club d. school
3. Habiba .... for five or six hours.
   a. trains b. eats c. works d. cooks
4. Habiba is .... years old.
   a. 80 b. 8 c. 17 d. 18

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed : What is your favourite sports star ?

Yasser : Mohamed Salah. He plays (1) .... Egypt.

Ahmed : Which sport does Mohamed Salah play ?

Yasser : He plays (2) ....

Ahmed : Does he (3) .... a lot of goals ?

Yasser : Yes, he does.

Ahmed : How does he help people ?

Yasser : He gives them (4) .... to build schools and hospitals in Egypt.

Ahmed : Has he got many fans ?

Yasser : Yes, he (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

My name is Omar. Last summer, I went on a holiday to London with my family. We went **there** by plane. My uncle was waiting for us at the

airport. We visited many places. My favourite place was Windsor Castle. We went there by train. We walked around the castle. My favourite activity was a ride on London Eye. We stayed in London for two weeks. The holiday helped me to speak English all the time. My sister Nada bought a lot of **souvenirs**. It was a nice holiday. I hope to go there again.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the main idea of this passage ?

....

2. What does the underlined word "**there**" refer to ?

....

3. How do you think the holiday helped Omar ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The family stayed in London for ....
   a. one week b. two weeks c. a month d. two months

5. The family went to Windsor Castle by ....
   a. train b. plane c. car d. bus

6. "Souvenirs" are things which which help you .... the places you visited.
   a. forget b. remember c. study d. stay

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I'd like to .... a selfie in front of the river.
   a. make b. take c. write d. do

2. Something scary makes you feel ....
   a. happy b. funny c. bad d. frightened

3. How .... is the Cairo Tower ? - It is 187 metres.
   a. tall b. long c. fast d. kind

4. Maher .... voluntary work at a hospital.
   a. does b. makes c. listens d. plays

5. I .... in the lake at Siwa yesterday.

a. swim b. is swimming c. swam d. swims

6. This is .... father's car.

a. mine b. I c. my d. me

7. My sister .... the computer now.

a. use b. uses c. is using d. used

8. Gymnastics helps you to .... strong.

a. find b. stay c. sleep d. spend

9. My .... is my father or mother's sister.

a. uncle b. aunt c. daughter d. son

10. The .... is a room at the top of a house.

a. city b. goat c. orphan d. attic

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. We **shouldn't** eat healthy food. (..............................)
2. She **always** goes to school on Friday. It is a holiday. (..............................)
3. There aren't **some** figs in the fridge. (..............................)
4. **Manals** bag is yellow. (..............................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your family"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



8 Dakahlia Governorate — East Mansoura Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. How old is Ali's grandfather ?
   a. 80 b. 70 c. 60 d. 50
2. Samy is his ....
   a. dad b. uncle c. grandfather d. brother
3. .... is 30 years old.
   a. Ali b. Samy c. Grandfather d. Helmi
4. His grandfather's hair is white and ....
   a. tall b. long c. old d. short

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Aya : Hi, Mona.
Mona : Hi, Aya.
Aya : What are you doing (1) .... the moment ?
Mona : I am looking at a (2) ....
Aya : A website! (3) .... ?
Mona : Because I want to (4) .... a present.
Aya : A present! Why ?
Mona : For my sister's (5) .... party.
Aya : That's great. Happy birthday for her.
Mona : Thank you.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Everyone loves snacks! But some snacks are bad for us. What is the best way to enjoy healthy snacks ? It is OK to eat crisps and cakes sometimes, but you should not eat too many of **them**. Crisps have a lot of fat and salt. Cakes, chocolate and biscuits have a lot of fat and sugar. Too much of this type of food is bad for our bodies.

Fruit is a great snack! It is very good for us and most people like the sweet taste. You should eat between two and four pieces of fruit a day. Beans and vegetables do not have much sugar or fat. They are very good for us, so we should eat a lot of them. Snacks like hummus with carrot and pepper are **delicious**. We should be careful, even with healthy foods. Fruit juice has got a lot of sugar, so we should not drink too much of it. Olives, meat and fish sometimes have a lot of salt.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Which food doesn't have much of fat or sugar ?

....

2. What do you think about snacks ?

....

3. Give a suitable title for this passage.

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. When something is "delicious", it is ....

a. tasty b. salty c. expensive d. cheap

5. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to ....

a. cakes b. crisps and cakes
c. snacks d. bodies

6. Olives, meat and fish sometimes have ....

a. a lot of sugar b. a lot of salt
c. a lot of fat d. a lot of food

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We are going to do a .... on "How to be healthy".

a. shopping b. housework c. subject d. project

2. She .... a coat as it is hot.

a. wears b. doesn't wear c. didn't wear d. wore

3. Tagine is a .... from Morocco.

a. mean b. mail c. meal d. male

4. .... is a game for two players.

a. Chess b. Football c. Basketball d. Volleyball

5. My mother .... a clever tennis player.
 a. never is b. always is c. is often d. usually is

6. It's .... to cycle to school.
 a. ugly b. unhealthy c. healthy d. slow

7. You should check your teeth regularly at ....
 a. the baker's b. the dentist's c. the chemist's d. the butcher's

8. Which sport can .... you happy ?
 a. give b. do c. make d. drive

9. Old people usually have white ....
 a. games b. beards c. films d. stars

10. There's too .... milk.
 a. much b. many c. a lot of d. lots of

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. They names are Emad and Mona. (..........................)
2. I drink orange juice now. (..........................)
3. Ali didn't felt well yesterday. (..........................)
4. Can I have any water, please ? (..........................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"What you want to be when you grow up."

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....



9 Beheira Governorate — Mahmoudiyah Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Magda is a/an .... girl.
   a. lazy b. orphan c. clever d. helpful
2. Magda lives with her ....
   a. aunt b. mother c. father d. grandmother
3. Her grandmother is a/an .... woman.
   a. old b. young c. tall d. short
4. Magda sleeps in a bed in the .... of the house.
   a. hall b. kitchen c. living room d. attic

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Son : That is my friend, Mazin. Can you see him ?
Father : I don't know Mazin. What does he (1) .... like ?
Son : He's got long, curly (2) ....
Father : Oh ! I think I can (3) .... him. Has he got glasses ?
Son : No, he (4) ....
Father : Is his father with him ?
Son : Yes, he's got a beard.
Father : Has he got a (5) .... ?
Son : No, he hasn't got a moustache.
Father : Oh! Yes. I can see them now.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Hager is an **orphan** girl. She lives with her grandfather. Her grandfather is an old man. He lives in a small house in a village. He has lots of goats. Hager sleeps in a bed in the attic of the house. She drinks goats' milk and eats bread and cheese. She sees birds and flowers. She is very happy! One day, her uncle arrives and takes **her** to the city. The city life is exciting but she doesn't like to live there. She is very sad to be away from her grandfather.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the main idea of the passage ?

....

2. What does Hager see in the village ?

....

3. Do you think that life is exciting in the city ? Why ? / Why not ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined word "**orphan**" means ....
   a. has no father or mother   b. has no brother
   c. has no home   d. has no food
5. The underlined pronoun "**her**" refers to ....
   a. grandfather   b. mother   c. uncle   d. Hager
6. Hager's grandfather has lots of ....
   a. dogs   b. cats   c. goats   d. lions

D. Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He was late, but he could .... the plane.
   a. catch   b. hold   c. have   d. pick
2. We can borrow or read books at the ....
   a. library   b. laboratory   c. playground   d. theatre
3. His life is .... , he hasn't got time for hobbies.
   a. exciting   b. boring   c. wonderful   d. amazing
4. You can .... a new icon on your tablet.
   a. design   b. print   c. charge   d. mime
5. A .... is something you buy to remember a holiday.
   a. present   b. souvenir   c. prize   d. medal
6. What a .... ! I couldn't meet my friends.
   a. pity   b. party   c. poem   d. play
7. .... are hard, dry potato pieces that you eat as a snack.
   a. Crisps   b. Biscuits   c. Cinnamons   d. Figs

8. I .... like music, but I like tennis.

a. aren't b. doesn't c. don't d. isn't

9. There are .... people on this shop. Let's go to a different one.

a. enough b. too many c. too much d. too

10. We didn't .... home for lunch yesterday.

a. go b. went c. going d. goes

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **Does** you play football ? (..............................)
2. Yunis **goes often** to school by bus. (..............................)
3. What does your new house **looking** like ? (..............................)
4. There are too **much** apples for all of us. (..............................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Twin brothers"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

10 Kafr El-Sheikh Governorate

Biala Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. My school is .... from my house.
   a. near b. far c. easy d. long
2. I go to school by ....
   a. bus b. car c. bike d. train
3. I .... at my school on time.
   a. drive b. arrive c. walk d. talk
4. It's .... to go to school by bike.
   a. unhealthy b. bad c. slow d. healthy

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Sama : Hi, Abeer. How was your holiday ?
Abeer : Hi, Sama. It was great, thanks.
Sama : Where (1) .... you go ?
Abeer : I went to France.
Sama : Did you (2) .... the Eiffel Tower ?
Abeer : Yes, I did.
Sama : Did you (3) .... your time there ?
Abeer : Yes, I enjoyed my time there.
Sama : (4) .... did you come home ?
Abeer : I came back (5) .... Sunday.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Lamees is 12 years old. She lives in a big house with her family. Her grandparents live with them, too. Her father is a doctor. He helps **sick** people. Her mother, Nadia, is a teacher. She teaches home economics at school. Lamees and her only sister, Rodina are twins. They look the same, both of **them** have got big blue eyes and blond hair. They have no brothers, so they spend their free time together playing with their toys. Their grandfather Kamal doesn't work. He is 65 years old. He always

tells the children stories. Grandmother Munira is a good cook. She often makes them delicious cakes.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What does this passage talk about ?

....

2. How does Rodina look like ?

....

3. Why do you think the children like their grandfather ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined word "**sick**" is the opposite of ....
   a. delicious b. lazy c. fast d. healthy
5. .... makes delicious cakes.
   a. Nadia b. Kamal c. Munira d. Lamees
6. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to ....
   a. Nadia and Lamees b. Lamees and Rodina
   c. Lamees and Munira d. Nadia and Munira

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. There .... much water on the floor.
   a. is b. are c. has d. have
2. A .... is a group of people who play music together.
   a. hand b. band c. team d. family
3. In Alexandria, you can have a wonderful .... from your own window.
   a. review b. view c. preview d. interview
4. Salma .... a story yesterday.
   a. wrote b. writes c. writing d. write
5. Meat is the main .... in tagine in Morocco.
   a. subject b. ingredient c. sport d. place
6. When you put sugar in the glass, you should .... it well.
   a. start b. spill c. stir d. stop

7. The twins are two children born at the .... time.
   a. different b. same c. similar d. difficult
8. I've .... short, curly hair.
   a. gets b. get c. getting d. got
9. You can .... your mobile using a phone charger.
   a. change b. charge c. hear d. choose
10. School .... should be followed.
   a. roles b. rules c. rolls d. rulers

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Throw the ball to **mine**. I'm waiting. (....................)
2. Are there **some** pencils ? (....................)
3. Does she like **watch** TV ? (....................)
4. We should **drinks** a lot of water. (....................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A day in your life"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

11 Damietta Governorate — El-Zarka Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Habiba is a ....
   a. farmer b. teacher c. gymnast d. nurse
2. Habiba's family lives in ....
   a. Alexandria b. Cairo c. Mansoura d. Damietta
3. Habiba .... for five or six hours.
   a. trains b. eats c. works d. cooks
4. Habiba is .... years old.
   a. 80 b. 8 c. 17 d. 18

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Amjad : Hello, Hany. How are you today ?
Hany : I'm (1) .... , thanks.
Amjad : Who's your (2) .... teacher ?
Hany : Mr Wael, our teacher of English.
Amjad : (3) .... you good at English ?
Hany : Yes, of course.
Amjad : How (4) .... English lessons have you got every week ?
Hany : We have got 5 lessons.
Amjad : When is the break ?
Hany : It's (5) .... 11 o'clock. We play and have fun.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Once, a train stopped at a small station and a woman opened the window. There was a boy **outside** and the woman said to **him**. I don't want to get out of the train because I am old and I can't walk fast. Please run to the station café and get me an ice cream and get one for yourself, too. Here is six pounds". The boy came back before the train moved again. He was eating an ice cream. He ran to the woman's window and gave her three pounds. He said, "There was only one ice cream".

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.

....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "**him**" refer to ?

....

3. What do you think of the boy ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The woman doesn't want to get out of the train because she was ....

a. old and slow b. young and fast
c. old and fast d. young and slow

5. The boy bought ....

a. one ice cream b. no ice creams
c. two ice creams d. three ice creams

6. The opposite of the underlined word "**outside**" is ....

a. sides b. beside c. before d. inside

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. What's your favourite .... in this story ? - Alice.

a. colour b. character c. event d. actor

2. A brave person is happy to do something ....

a. fun b. safe c. dangerous d. bad

3. Something scary makes you feel ....

a. happy b. funny c. good d. frightened

4. Camels are very .... They can carry 200 kilos of bags.

a. tall b. strong c. poor d. weak

5. Nada always .... her homework in the evening.

a. makes b. goes c. watches d. does

6. Mohammed Salah is a kind person. He .... money to the poor.

a. gives b. takes c. puts d. reads

7. .... names are Hany and Haidy. They are cousins.

a. His   b. Her   c. Their   d. Our

8. I like swimming in the pool .... it is nice and cool.

a. because   b. and   c. but   c. or

9. Are you .... the tablet ? - Yes, I am.

a. use   b. used   c. uses   d. using

10. It's very high. There's lots of water in it. It is a ....

a. jungle   b. sea   c. waterfall   d. river

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. They didn't **travelled** to Alexandria by car. (....................)
2. It's her bag. It's **her**. (....................)
3. **Do** your friend play football on Mondays ? (....................)
4. She usually **have** breakfast with her family. (....................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your favourite food"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

12 Ismailia Governorate — Ismailia Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Where did you go ? - To ....
   a. Cairo   b. Siwa   c. Tanta   d. Aswan
2. What did you climb ?
   a. A river   b. A house   c. A mountain   d. A tower
3. What did you see ?
   a. Dogs   b. Cats   c. Cows   d. Camels
4. Where did you sleep in the desert ?
   a. In a tent   b. In a hotel   c. In a bedroom   d. At home

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Sami : Good morning. How are you ?
Ahmed : Good morning. I'm fine, thanks.
Sami : (1) .... is your favourite sports star ?
Ahmed : Mohamed Salah.
Sami : What sport does he play ?
Ahmed : He (2) .... football.
Sami : What does he look (3) .... ?
Ahmed : He has got curly (4) ....
Sami : Does he (5) .... goals ?
Ahmed : Yes, he scores a lot of goals.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

My name's Rahma. My favourite subject at school is science. I love learning about how things work. I like doing maths, too. I am quite good at maths. I quite like doing sports. My favourite sport is tennis. I like playing **it** with my friends, but I am **not good** at it. I usually go home after school. I do not like playing computer games. After I do my homework, I like reading a book. I like writing stories, too. I go to bed at ten o'clock in the evening. I live happily with my family.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What does this passage talk about ?

....

2. What does Rahma like doing at home ?

....

3. What do you think of Rahma ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. You can learn how things work in .... lesson.
 a. science b. maths c. English d. French
5. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ....
 a. TV b. tennis c. school d. subject
6. The underlined word "**not good**" means ....
 a. clever b. bad c. fast d. slow

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Salma likes .... pictures.
 a. draw b. draws c. drawn d. drawing
2. In Egypt, we have the longest .... in the world.
 a. sea b. waterfall c. river d. forest
3. Healthy .... are good for you.
 a. snakes b. snacks c. snails d. songs
4. This is Hala's book. It is ....
 a. hers b. her c. she d. his
5. You should .... your study and your hobbies.
 a. play b. balance c. stay d. spend
6. We have to follow the school ....
 a. roles b. rulers c. rules d. ruler
7. Some children in Uganda usually cross the river in a ....
 a. canoe b. taxi c. bus d. train

8. Ashraf .... got new glasses.

a. have b. is c. are d. has

9. She never takes money. She does .... work.

a. hard b. writing c. voluntary d. school

10. The .... says "Don't walk on the grass".

a. signal b. list c. song d. sign

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **Doesn't** come late for work. (....................)
2. My father **buy** a new car last week. (....................)
3. No, there aren't **some** boys in the class. (....................)
4. I'm **watch** TV now. (....................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your best friend Reda"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



13 Suez Governorate — South Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Andy is .... years old.
   a. ten b. twelve c. thirteen d. eleven
2. Andy is from ....
   a. France b. England c. The USA d. Egypt
3. Andy usually goes to school ....
   a. on foot b. by bike c. by car d. by taxi
4. Andy goes to school on a snowmobile in ....
   a. summer b. fall c. winter d. spring

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Omnia : What is your favourite subject ?
Heba : My favourite subject is (1)................................... .
Omnia : (2)................................... do you like it ?
Heba : Because English is an interesting subject.
Omnia : (3)................................... 's your English teacher this year ?
Heba : It's Mrs Mona.
Omnia : How often do you (4)................................... it ?
Heba : I study it (5)................................... a week.
Omnia : Who is your maths teacher ?
Heba : Mr Hamdy.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Most people have three meals every day, breakfast, lunch and dinner. **They** eat these meals in the morning, in the afternoon and in the evening. But most people don't care about what they should eat for each meal. Doctors say that healthy food is very important and people should

eat lots of fruits and vegetables to **keep** healthy. People should not eat too many cakes. Doctors advise people to drink a lot of water and milk every day and not to have too many sugar drinks. Doctors advise people not to stay at home all the time. They should go for walks to do exercise or practise any sport.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What do you think people should eat to keep healthy ?

....

2. Give a suitable title for this passage.

....

3. What do doctors advise people not to do ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to ....
   a. a few people b. doctors
   c. all doctors d. most people
5. Doctors advise people to drink a lot of water and milk every ....
   a. month b. week c. day d. year
6. The underlined word "**keep**" means ....
   a. do b. stay c. leave d. make

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Brothers or sisters of the same age are called ....
   a. doubles b. towers c. toilets d. twins
2. .... are animals that are like sheep.
   a. Cows b. Buffaloes c. Goats d. Snakes
3. In the area of the Pyramids, you can .... horses.
   a. drive b. give c. eat d. ride
4. I would like to .... a selfie in front of the Pyramids.
   a. take b. make c. write d. do

5. We paint and draw in .... lesson.

a. art b. English c. maths d. Arabic

6. It is important to .... safe online.

a. sleep b. stay c. stand d. sit

7. Ali uses a/an .... because he cannot walk.

a. stair b. stool c. wheelchair d. armchair

8. Listen! A nice singer .... on the radio.

a. sings b. sang c. is singing d. would sing

9. My father .... a lot of work today.

a. has got b. have got c. is got d. are got

10. Aya always .... tennis every Friday.

a. play b. playing c. played d. plays

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. This is **mine** new house. (..............................)
2. Is there **some** coffee ? (..............................)
3. Does Salwa like **watch** TV ? (..............................)
4. He didn't **played** football yesterday. (..............................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your family"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....



14 Fayoum Governorate — Itsa Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Where did you go ?
   a. To Cairo b. To Luxor c. To Alexandria d. To Siwa
2. We .... in the lake.
   a. swam b. saw c. ate d. slept
3. We saw .... and slept in a tent.
   a. dogs b. camels c. cats d. cows
4. It was my .... holiday.
   a. favourite b. bad c. lazy d. sad

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ali : Who is your best friend, Omar ?
Omar : He is Ayman, my cousin.
Ali : How (1) .... is he ?
Omar : He's 13. He is in the same classroom.
Ali : What are his (2) .... subjects ?
Omar : He likes English and science.
Ali : What is his favourite (3) .... ?
Omar : He (4) .... basketball.
Ali : Is he tall ?
Omar : Yes, he (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

All work and no play make your life "**dull**". So you need fun activities, too. Hobbies are activities that are fun. Your hobbies can be useful, too. There are many kinds of hobbies. Hobbies will help you use your free time well. Music, reading stories, writing, sports and painting may all be hobbies.

I love to paint, it's my hobby. I paint with water colour. I like to paint beautiful nature. When we go on holidays to different places like the desert areas, rivers, mountains or the countryside, I always take my art material with me. I like to sit and paint. I keep all my paintings carefully in my bedroom. Also, I like making painting with water colours because water colours are quick to dry. What about you ?

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

....

2. Why does the writer use water colours ?

....

3. Why do you think hobbies are important ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ....

a. music b. painting c. writing d. reading

5. The underlined word "**dull**" means ....

a. fantastic b. happy c. interesting d. boring

6. The writer likes to paint ....

a. houses b. nature c. people d. places

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Don't .... photos to people you don't know.

a. make b. see c. send d. eat

2. Are you .... next to your best friend ? - Yes, I am.

a. sat b. sitting c. sits d. sit

3. Do you .... swimming after school ? - No, I don't.

a. make b. take c. play d. go

4. Your mum or dad's brother is your ....

a. uncle b. aunt c. sister d. brother

5. A/An .... has no mother or father.

a. twin b. orphan c. parent d. uncle

6. He never .... , he can't swim.

a. not swim b. swims c. doesn't swim d. swim

7. I .... a horse in the forest, when we had a picnic there.

a. drove b. rode c. went d. flew

8. We learn about countries in .... lessons.

a. social studies b. religion c. maths d. computer studies

9. You drink .... coffee. It's not good for you.

a. too many b. a lot of c. enough d. a lot

10. I eat healthy food to stay ....

a. weak b. strong c. unhealthy d. poor

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. First, **taps** the messages icon. (....................)
2. She **didn't** at school yesterday. (....................)
3. This bag belongs to Noha. It's **her**. (....................)
4. I **doesn't** listen to music. (....................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your favourite sports star"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....



Minia Governorate — Mallawi Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Tagine is a traditional meal in ....
   a. Italy b. Athens c. Egypt d. Morocco
2. Mazin likes ....
   a. koshari b. tagine c. meat d. chicken
3. Tagine's name comes from the cooking .... for this food.
   a. pan b. pot c. plate d. dish
4. The taste of tagine is ....
   a. amazing b. amazed c. bored d. boring

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Nada : That's the bell. What is the next lesson ?
Malak : Let's look at the timetable.
Nada : We have got computer (1) ....
Malak : Yes, I love it. It's my (2) .... subject.
Nada : I am not good at computer studies.
Malak : So, what are your favourite (3) .... ?
Nada : I love science and languages.
Malak : What languages are you good (4) .... ?
Nada : I am quite good at English.
Malak : Oh, I (5) .... like languages. I am bad at English.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Although Khalid and Marawan are twins, they are different in some ways. For example, Khalid's favourite hobby is playing football. He plays it with his friends at school and in the club near their school. He also watches football matches on TV at home after finishing his homework. On the other side, Marawan is very interested in music. He plays it in

a **band** at school. At home, he likes listening to music on the radio or plays the guitar. Their parents help **them** study hard for school and also let them enjoy their hobbies.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

....

2. When does Khalid watch football matches ?

....

3. Do you think the twins are always the same ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. How are Khalid and Marawan different ?
   a. In their hobbies
   b. They have different classes
   c. In their schools
   d. With their friends
5. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to ....
   a. schools b. their parents c. the band d. the twins
6. The underlined word "**band**" means ....
   a. some people who play a sport together
   b. some people who play music together
   c. some people who have the same hobby
   d. some people who cook together

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A .... works in the restaurant.
   a. waiter b. doctor c. teacher d. nurse
2. The Eiffel .... is a famous place in Paris.
   a. River b. Museum c. Tower d. Garden
3. It is important to keep your .... secret on the internet.
   a. passport b. password c. keyboard d. mobile
4. All students like .... teacher.
   a. their b. her c. you d. them

5. People, who can't walk, can use a .... to travel around.
   a. rope   b. wheel   c. wheelchair   d. ship
6. Our English teacher always asks us to do ....
   a. beds   b. projects   c. showers   d. photos
7. How .... do you get up at 6:30 a.m ? - Always.
   a. many   b. long   c. much   d. often
8. Gymnastics helps you to .... strong.
   a. spend   b. find   c. stay   d. sleep
9. We .... any bikes.
   a. have got   b. haven't got   c. has got   d. hasn't got
10. The hair growing over the man's mouth is called ....
   a. moustache   b. mouse   c. feature   d. beard

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Are **their** any mobile phones ? (..............................)
2. Did you **bought** a new jacket ? (..............................)
3. There are too **much** apples. (..............................)
4. I **drink** tea at the moment. (..............................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your favourite sport"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....



16 Qena Governorate — Qus Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Famous people have a/an .... life.
   a. free b. busy c. boring d. interesting
2. Famous people do their work for a .... time.
   a. short b. tall c. long d. dark
3. It is important for famous people to .... their work and life.
   a. train b. balance c. take d. ask
4. Life of famous people is important but it is ....
   a. easy b. lazy c. difficult d. happy

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Nada : This is a photo of my cousin.
Reem : What's his (1) .... ?
Nada : It's Fares.
Reem : How (2) .... is he ?
Nada : He is 14.
Reem : Where does he live ?
Nada : He (3) .... in Qus.
Reem : What is his favourite food ?
Nada : He (4) .... eating fish with rice.
Reem : He (5) .... like his father.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

"Heidi" is the story of an **orphan** girl. She goes to live with her grandfather in Switzerland. Her grandfather is an old man. He lives in a small house in the mountains and he has lots of goats. Heidi sleeps in a bed in the attic of the house. She drinks goats' milk and eats bread and cheese.

Every day, she walks in the mountains with the goats, her grandfather and her friend, Peter. She sees birds and flowers. She is very happy.

But one day, Heidi's aunt arrives and takes her to the city. Heidi doesn't like the city and **she** is very sad to be away from her grandfather, Peter and the goats. Heidi has lots of adventures in the countryside.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

....

2. Why was Heidi sad in the city ?

....

3. What do you think about Heidi and Peter's life ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. When someone is "orphan", he has no ....

a. brothers b. sisters c. friends d. parents

5. .... mentioned in the passage.

a. Two males b. Two females

c. Two males and one female d. Two males and two females

6. The underlined pronoun "**she**" refers to ....

a. Heidi's sister b. Heidi's mother

c. Heidi's aunt d. Heidi

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. On a .... weekend, I visit my uncle and aunt.

a. typical b. careful c. helpful d. famous

2. .... on the icon on your laptop.

a. Write b. Click c. Type d. Read

3. Students learn about .... in the maths lesson.

a. rivers b. lakes c. numbers d. colours

4. I .... a lot of friends in my new school.

a. took b. made c. put d. gave

5. Nader always talks nicely to people. He's very ....

a. bad b. kind c. angry d. unkind

6. When you put sugar in the glass, you should .... it well.

a. start b. spill c. stir d. stop

7. .... are animals that are like sheep.

a. Dogs b. Cows c. Goats d. Rats

8. Dina likes .... very much.

a. paint b. painted c. painting d. paints

9. Mohammed Salah .... score a lot of goals. He is very clever.

a. can b. must c. mustn't d. has

10. .... they got any pencils ? - Yes, they have.

a. Has b. Are c. Do d. Have

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **Does** Mona and Sara like painting ? (........................)
2. They are **drinks** tea. (........................)
3. The house is **our**. It belongs to us. (........................)
4. There are some laptops and there **are** a whiteboard. (........................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A typical day for you"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

17 Sohag Governorate

Saqulta Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Gymnastics is a/an .... sport.
   a. easy b. difficult c. interesting d. boring
2. The gymnast .... many hours daily.
   a. waves b. tells c. keeps d. trains
3. A gymnast must .... his hobby, work and study.
   a. train b. balance c. make d. charge
4. The gymnast always wants to .... his dream.
   a. achieve b. study c. take d. agree

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Hana : Hi, Nour. How was your holiday ?

Nour : Hi, Hana. It was great, thanks.

Hana : Where (1) .... you go ?

Nour : I went to France.

Hana : Did you (2) .... the Eiffel Tower ?

Nour : Yes, I did.

Hana : Did you (3) .... your time there ?

Nour : Yes, I enjoyed my time there.

Hana : (4) .... did you come home ?

Nour : I came back (5) .... Sunday.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

The internet is a great way to talk to your friends and learn new things. But it's also important to stay safe online. There are a few ways can help you to make sure you're not in danger when you use the internet. Use strong passwords that are hard for others to guess, using letters,

numbers and symbols (like £ , $, & ! , etc). Keep passwords to yourself and change **them** regularly. If somebody you don't know adds you as a friend, don't say yes quickly. Don't share personal information like your address or phone number with somebody you don't know. If you have an email from a **stranger**, think before clicking on it.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What's the main idea of this passage ?

....

2. What do you do if someone you don't know asks you to give him your phone number ?

....

3. What do you think of the internet ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined word "**stranger**" means a person you ....
   a. met b. don't know c. know d. see
5. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to ....
   a. numbers b. emails c. computers d. passwords
6. It's important to .... safe on the internet.
   a. stay b. say c. tell d. ask

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Alice's .... in Wonderland is my favourite.
   a. Characters b. Adventures c. Books d. Lessons
2. A .... takes people from one side of a lake to another.
   a. bike b. snowmobile c. canoe d. car
3. The science teacher shows us many interesting .... for that lesson.
   a. sports b. words c. dialogues d. diagrams
4. The twins are two children born at the .... time.
   a. different b. same c. similar d. difficult

5. I .... go to the library at break. I like reading.
   a. never   b. always   c. no   d. don't
6. Famous football teams have a lot of .... They encourage players.
   a. vans   b. fins   c. fans   d. vets
7. A/An .... is a simple message sent through the internet.
   a. telegram   b. letter   c. blog   d. email
8. Tea is the most .... drink in the world.
   a. popular   b. healthy   c. unknown   d. hot
9. We can't come on Saturday. It's .... father's birthday.
   a. their   b. your   c. our   d. ours
10. She didn't .... to the beach yesterday.
   a. gone   b. went   c. goes   d. go

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Hany **should** eat snacks in the classroom. (............................)
2. There **are** too much sugar. (............................)
3. Does she like **watch** TV ? (............................)
4. **Came** here, please Ali. (............................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your best friend"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Doaa El-Ghobashy plays ....
   a. basketball b. football c. handball d. volleyball
2. She is very ....
   a. long b. tall c. short d. heavy
3. She plays for ....
   a. England b. Brazil c. Egypt d. Syria
4. She always has a big ....
   a. smile b. smell c. house d. sister

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ali : What are you eating ?
Hany : I'm eating (1) ....
Ali : But they are not (2) .... for your teeth.
Hany : But I like sweets very much.
Ali : I know, but you (3) .... eat too many sweets.
Hany : Why ?
Ali : Because they have too much (4) ....
Hany : What should I eat ?
Ali : You should eat (5) .... and vegetables.
Hany : OK. I will have an apple.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

I like to collect fossils حفريات. It's an interesting hobby, although it is not always easy to find them. The first thing you have to do is to find the right place. I know a place in the desert where there are many fossils. When I see a fossil, first I look carefully to see if it was a plant or a small animal. After that, I put the fossil in a small bag. Then, I take **it** home. The next step, is deciding where to put the fossil. I group the fossils of animals and plants and keep them in different boxes. **Finally**, I find out the name of the animal or plant and write it in my notebook.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Do you think the writer could keep his fossils at home ?

....

2. What does the writer do in his notebook ?

....

3. What's the best title of this passage ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to a ....

a. fossil b. box c. notebook d. bag

5. There are many fossils in the ....

a. desert b. field c. farm d. school

6. The underlined word "**finally**" means ....

a. at last b. first c. usually d. sometimes

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Athletes work hard to .... their studies, their sport, their friends and their family.

a. break b. practice c. balance d. pour

2. Everyone .... snacks!

a. love b. loves c. loving d. to love

3. You can learn a lot about rice pudding recipes ....

a. online b. line c. outline d. fine

4. There is .... milk in the fridge.

a. an b. some c. any d. a

5. It's .... to cycle to school.

a. bad b. harmful c. unhealthy d. healthy

6. The canoe .... students to school and home again every day.

a. gives b. takes c. talks d. rides

7. A/An .... is a room at the top of a house.

a. hall b. attic c. kitchen d. stair

8. Your brother is your parent's ....

a. son b. daughter c. uncle d. sister

9. .... is not a cooking verb.

a. Add b. Boil c. Stir d. Run

10. Let's go to the shops. There is .... time before our train leaves.

a. many b. a lot c. enough d. any

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. My sister goes to a **girl's** school. (..............................)
2. I love **learn** about how things work. (..............................)
3. **Boils** the water. (..............................)
4. What **is** your sister look like ? (..............................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"How to be safe on the internet"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



19 Luxor Governorate

Luxor Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Salma is .... years old.
   a. 12 b. 13 c. 14 d. 15
2. Salma goes to school ....
   a. on foot b. by car c. by bus d. by bike
3. Salma is in ....
   a. prep 1 b. prep 2 c. prep 3 d. prim 6
4. What does Salma like ?
   a. Her bike b. Her car c. Her doll d. Her friends

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Dina : This is a photo of my cousin.

Dalia : What (1) .... his name ?

Dina : It's Maged.

Dalia : How (2) .... is he ?

Dina : He's 14 (3) .... old.

Dalia : What (4) .... does he like ?

Dina : He likes basketball.

Dalia : What is his favourite subject ?

Dina : He likes (5) ....

Dalia : Oh ! I like English, too.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Last summer, Ali decided to spend his holiday with his uncle Mohamed. Mohamed lives in Cairo. It is a big city. A lot of people live there. It is famous for its interesting places. Ali saw the Egyptian Museum. It's full of amazing things. It's open daily from 9:00 a.m. to 7:00 p.m. He also visited the Cairo Tower. **It** is a very tall building. He enjoyed the view

of the city from the **top** of the tower. He travelled by boat on the Nile. He took many photos there. He went shopping at Khan El-Khalili and bought a lot of souvenirs for his friends. He also went to the clothes shops and bought nice clothes for his family. Ali was very happy.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

....

2. How did Ali travel on the Nile ?

....

3. Why do you think many people visit the Egyptian Museum ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined word "**top**" is the opposite of ....
   a. popular b. bad c. bottom d. slow
5. The underlined pronoun "**It**" refers to ....
   a. Cairo b. the Egyptian Museum
   c. the Cairo Tower d. Giza
6. Ali bought a lot of .... from Khan El Khalili for his friends.
   a. souvenirs b. computers c. clothes d. photos

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Keep your password ....
   a. secret b. famous c. late d. happy
2. What is .... father's name ?
   a. yours b. he c. you d. your
3. .... give us milk and meat.
   a. Lions b. Dogs c. Goats d. Cats
4. The students play football in the .... at school.
   a. museum b. zoo c. playground d. library
5. How .... do you get up at 5 o'clock ? - Always.
   a. old b. often c. long d. many

6. Rami is a good player. He .... many goals.
   a. talks b. jumps c. paints d. scores
7. Kilimanjaro is the highest .... in Africa.
   a. lake b. river c. mountain d. sea
8. Mary likes Friday because it is a ....
   a. river b. desert c. holiday d. hotel
9. We didn't .... home for lunch yesterday.
   a. go b. went c. going d. goes
10. Salma bought a flat with a good .... on the Nile.
   a. few b. view c. review d. interview

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Are you good **in** languages ? (..............................)
2. Tell me about **yours** family. (..............................)
3. We don't like **watch** TV after school. (..............................)
4. There **are** an MP3 player behind the laptop. (..............................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your hobbies"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

20 South Sinai Governorate — Tur Sinai Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Mohamed Salah is a ....
   a. teacher b. sports star c. doctor d. swimmer
2. What sport does Mohamed Salah play ?
   a. Tennis b. Basketball c. Handball d. Football
3. Where does Mohamed Salah play ?
   a. In Africa b. In America c. In Europe d. In Asia
4. Mohamed Salah is good at ....
   a. scoring goals b. singing c. swimming d. drawing

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Reem : Hello, Dalida. What's this ?
Dalida : This is a photo of my cousin.
Reem : (1) .... 's her name ?
Dalida : Her name is Sama.
Reem : How (2) .... is she ?
Dalida : She's 14.
Reem : Where (3) .... she live ?
Dalida : She lives in Giza.
Reem : What's her (4) .... hobby ?
Dalida : She (5) .... chess.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Ali and Omar are twins. They are both aged twelve. They are in prep one. They usually walk to school. Ali likes maths and wants to be an engineer but Omar likes English and wants to be a teacher of English. Ali likes to go swimming on Tuesdays, but Omar doesn't like swimming. Omar likes music. **He** plays the drums and listens to music. They play chess together on Thursdays and Ali usually wins. Both of them like **voluntary** work. They help in a children's hospital. They play games with the children and read them stories. I'm proud of being their father.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Do you think that Ali and Omar are good boys ? Why / Why not ?

....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "**He**" refer to ?

....

3. Give a suitable title for the passage.

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. Omar wants to be a/an ....
   a. doctor b. teacher c. engineer d. farmer
5. The underlined word " **voluntary**" means for ....
   a. much time b. many people c. no money d. no one
6. Ali likes ....
   a. football b. music c. swimming d. English

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We keep all our old things in the ....
   a. attic b. selfie c. orphan d. adventure
2. Sama likes .... sports.
   a. did b. do c. doing d. does
3. A baby bird is .... It can't fly for many days.
   a. week b. weak c. strong d. spring
4. Egypt is a ...., but Cairo is a city.
   a. room b. town c. village d. country
5. She has got short, ... hair.
   a. busy b. care c. curly d. fast
6. Use the mouse to .... on the icon.
   a. kick b. click c. tape d. top
7. This question is .... difficult.
   a. quiet b. quit c. quite d. noisy
8. Where did you .... on Saturday evening ?
   a. went b. goes c. going d. go
9. My favourite .... is koshari.
   a. meal b. mail c. mean d. main
10. This is .... book.
   a. Amal b. Amal's c. to Amal d. Amals

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Ahmed sometimes **watch** football matches on TV. (..............................)
2. **Stops** playing on your phone. (..............................)
3. He **have** got a big smile. (..............................)
4. My mother **cook** lunch now. (..............................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your last summer holiday"

....

....

....

....

21 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif — Central Administration of Dakahlia Institutes

A. Language Functions

1 Complete the dialogue with these words :

looking – using – watching – writing

Nasser : What are you doing, Mazin ?

Mazin : Hi, Nasser. I'm (1) .... our new tablet.

Nasser : Are you (2) .... an email ?

Mazin : No, I'm not. Look ! Can you see the photos on it ?

Nasser : Oh ! Yes. Are you (3) .... a film ?

Mazin : No, I'm not. I'm (4) .... at information for our homework.

B. Reading Comprehension

2 Read and match :

(A)	(B)
1. (............) What food do you like ?	a. I'm quite short with dark hair.
2. (............) Fares is doing his	b. chess online.
3. (............) What do you look like ?	c. I like fish with rice.
4. (............) I'm playing	d. computer studies homework.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Mr Taha is a teacher in Port Said. He teaches English. On Monday, Tuesday and Wednesday, he makes himself a sandwich for lunch. He eats it in the school. On Thursday and Friday, he usually walks home. His wife makes him his favourite lunch; chicken and potatoes. Yesterday, it rained a lot. The weather is sometimes rainy in Port Said. Mr Taha did not want to walk home, so he went to a restaurant near the school. He loves the food **there**. The cook makes it all himself.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Where does Mr Taha work ?

....

2. What does he usually eat for lunch at his home ?

....

3. Who makes the food in the restaurant ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The weather is sometimes .... in Port Said.
   a. rainy b. sunny c. hot d. cloudy
5. The underlined word "**there**" refers to the ....
   a. club b. home c. school d. restaurant

C. Usage and writing

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Something scary makes you feel ....
   a. clever b. happy c. funny d. frightened
2. We .... go to school on Fridays.
   a. never b. always c. often d. sometimes
3. .... the water when you make a cup of tea.
   a. Boil b. Boils c. Boiled d. Boiling
4. Who has .... a bag with balls on it ?
   a. get b. gets c. got d. getting
5. There .... cheese in the fridge.
   a. is any b. are any c. are some d. is some

Days **5, 6 & 7**

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. You are very good at **play** tennis. (............................)
2. Let's **made** lunch. (............................)
3. What **is** your mother look like ? (............................)
4. This is **Alis** phone. It's new. (............................)
5. First, **putting** some water in the kettle. (............................)

6 Reorder the words to make questions :

1. your / live / do / grandparents / Where ?

....

2. a / mountain / Did / climb / you / yesterday ?

....

3. brother / Does / football / your / play ?

....

7 Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences on :

"Your best friend"

....

....

....

....

22 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif — Assuit Zone

A. Language Functions

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Tarek : Sports are very good for us. (1) .... you like sports ?

Kareem : Yes, I like sports very much.

Tarek : What is your (2) .... sport ?

Kareem : My favourite sport is football. What about you ?

Tarek : I (3) .... tennis.

Kareem : When do you practise it ?

Tarek : I practise it (4) .... Fridays.

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues :

1. **Alaa** : What does your father look like ?
   Hany : ....
2. **Hassan** : .... ?
   Ahmed : I went to Hurghada on holiday.

B. Reading Comprehension

3 Read and match :

(A)	(B)
1. (..............) There aren't	a. we use a mouse in this lesson.
2. (..............) In computer studies,	b. the opposite of weak.
3. (..............) She is sending	c. in the desert.
4. (..............) Strong is	d. you a photo now.
5. (..............) There are camels	e. any figs in the cupboard.

4 Read the following , then answer the questions :

Egyptian food is popular all over the world. Salma's favourite soup is molokhia. It's a kind of vegetable soup and it's very healthy. Her friend, Noha likes koshari. Koshari is a very popular dish. There isn't any meat in it, but there are lentils. The other main ingredients are rice and pasta. There aren't any tomatoes in this dish, but it's delicious with some tomato sauce on the top.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What kind of soup is molokhia ?
   ....
2. What are the ingredients of koshari ?
   ....
3. What is Salma's favourite soup ?
   ....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. Koshari is .... with some tomato sauce on the top.
   a. cold b. salty c. hot d. delicious
5. There isn't any .... in koshari.
   a. pasta b. meat c. lentil d. tomatoes

C. Usage and Writing

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A brave person is ready to do something ....
   a. fun b. strange c. dangerous d. bad
2. I like biscuits with .... raisins in them.
   a. too little b. too much c. any d. a lot of
3. You can .... a video call to your cousin in England.
   a. send b. write c. make d. take
4. Munir and Mostafa are twins. .... sister is called Radwa.
   a. His b. Her c. Their d. Our
5. A .... is a hole in the mountain.
   a. lake b. cave c. river d. forest
6. My sister Huda has got long hair .... glasses.
   a. so b. because c. but d. and
7. We went to the beach and .... in the sea.
   a. swam b. swim c. swum d. swims
8. The canoe .... the children to school every day.
   a. drives b. takes c. rides d. cycles

6 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. I do voluntary **job** at a children's hospital. (..............................)
2. Grandma is **read** a book. (..............................)
3. I **stay** many subjects at school. (..............................)
4. Let's **had** some juice. (..............................)
5. We can give money to help **rich** people. (..............................)

7 Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences on :

"Your best friend"

....

....

....

....

....



23 Gharbia Governorate

East Tanta Directorate

امتحان خاص بطلاب الدمج

A. Language Functions

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. What is your favourite subject ? ....

a. It's English b. It's basketball c. It's chicken

2. Do you like vegetables ? ....

a. I'm sorry b. Yes, I do c. No, I can't

3. How do you go to school ? ....

a. I get up at 7:00 b. I play football c. I go to school by car

B. Vocabulary & Structure

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

1. A .... is a group of people who play music together.

a. band b. hobby c. chess

2. It is not your watch. It is ....

a. me b. mine c. my

3. Some students .... to school.

a. fly b. swim c. cycle

4. We .... got some bread.

a. are b. has c. have

5. My friend sent me a .... message yesterday.

a. test b. text c. taxi

6. The children are .... football.

a. playing b. play c. played

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the sentence under each picture and put (✓) or (✗) :

1. He is reading a book. ( )



2. It is a laptop. ( )



3. It is a mouse. ( )



4 Finish the sentences with words from the list :

did – female – are – short – should – tent

1. "Male" is the opposite of ....
2. My hair is ....
3. We sleep in a .... in the desert.
4. When .... you do your homework yesterday ?
5. There .... four books on the table.
6. You .... do sport every day.

5 Rearrange the following words to make meaningful sentences :

1. the – **English** – language – England – is – of.

....

2. clever – person – knows – **A** – a lot.

....

3. can – fast – you – run – **How** ?

....

23 Schools Examinations

(٢٣) اختباراً من امتحانات المدارس

ثلاثة وعشرون اختباراً من امتحانات المدارس المختلفة على المنهج بالكامل.

1 Cairo Governorate

Al-Basateen and Dar El-Salam Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. The Cheshire Cat is a funny ....
   a. class b. subject c. animal d. block
2. The Cheshire Cat is very ....
   a. friendly b. sad c. adventurous d. famous
3. The Cheshire Cat .... Alice about Wonderland.
   a. sees b. tells c. helps d. meets
4. What does the Cheshire Cat help Alice to find ?
   a. Games b. Stories c. Places d. Books

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Rashad : Where are you, Mariam ?

Mariam : I am here in the living room.

Rashad : What are you (1) ..doing.. here ?

Mariam : Nothing. Why ?

Rashad : I want to play (2) ..chess.. together.

Mariam : But I don't like chess. (3) ..Let's.. play table tennis.

Rashad : I am not good at tennis. What about (4) ..listening.. to music ?

Mariam : That sounds nice. I love music most.

Rashad : Me, too. We both love music.

Mariam : Yes. I love (5) ..playing.. the drums, too.

Mr / Gomaa

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Mohamed Salah is my favourite sports star. He plays football for a very good team in Europe. He plays for Egypt, too. He is very good at scoring goals. He is a **fast** runner and a clever footballer.

Mohamed Salah has usually got a big smile. He is quite short for a footballer. He is 1.75 metres tall. Mohamed Salah has got dark, curly hair and a beard.

He is a kind person. He gives money to build schools and hospitals in Egypt. He also gives money to poor people. He is very friendly and he always talks to his fans.

He has not got much time for hobbies, but when he is at home, he enjoys playing video games and watching films.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What's the best title for the passage ?
Mohamed Salah a great sports star
2. Who does Salah talk to ?
He talks to his fans
3. Do you think Salah is a great sports star ? Why / Why not ?
Yes, I think so. Because he is kind and helpful

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun "**his**" refers to ....
a. fans b. Salah c. his father d. poor people
5. "**Fast**" is the opposite of ....
a. short b. weak c. slow d. friendly
6. One of Salah's hobbies is ....
a. giving money to the poor b. building schools
c. getting much time d. playing video games

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Gymnastics is a type of ....
a. subject b. sport c. object d. team
2. All students come to the school .... when they hear the bell.
a. hole b. hall c. hill d. hell

3. I don't like watching TV. I think it is ....
   a. fantastic b. interesting c. surprising d. boring
4. Something scary makes you feel ....
   a. happy b. bad c. funny d. frightened
5. A/An .... person takes good decisions.
   a. stupid b. scary c. sensible d. angry
6. My arms are weak, so I can't .... up that box.
   a. get b. pick c. give d. drive
7. Habiba Marzouk is a top .... in Africa.
   a. gymnastic b. gymnast c. gymnastics d. gym
8. .... Nabil's sister play tennis ?
   a. Do b. Does c. Don't d. Doing
9. My father gave .... his watch.
   a. I b. my c. mine d. me
10. We can .... money to help the poor.
   a. give b. gave c. giving d. to give

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Osama likes playing football, basketball **but** tennis. (and)
2. The wind stopped and we **go** on a boat trip. (went)
3. There are too **much** raisins. (many)
4. You **should** eat too many crisps and cakes. (shouldn't)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your favourite hobby"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Mr / Gomaa

2 Giza Governorate

6th October Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Egypt and Morocco are in ....
   a. Asia b. Africa c. Europe d. America
2. Arabic is a ....
   a. language b. country c. place d. city
3. All Arab countries speak ....
   a. English b. Arabic c. French d. German
4. .... is in Asia.
   a. Egypt b. Morocco c. Oman d. Sudan

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ayman : Hello! Baleegh.
Baleegh: Hello, Ayman.
Ayman : Did you go to Siwa ?
Baleegh: Yes, I (1) ....did.... .
Ayman : When did you go there ?
Baleegh: When I (2) ....was.... eight years oid.
Ayman : What did you do there ?
Baleegh: I (3) ....swam.... in the lake.
Ayman : Where did you (4) ....camp.... there ?
Baleegh: I slept in a (5) ....tent.... in the desert.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

To : Azza
From : Fatma
Subject : My holiday

Hi, Azza !

I came back from my holiday in Paris. I had a wonderful time there. Paris is a great city for a holiday because there is so much to see and to do. The food is **delicious**. I ate a lot of new things, for example, snails!

One day, we climbed the Eiffel Tower, and from the top we had a view of the city. We visited museums and had a picnic in Luxembourg Gardens. We also went on a boat on the River Seine. What a pity! We did not have time to go to the Science Museum. I also wanted to see the art at the Louvre, but <u>**it**</u> was closed. Near our hotel, there was a busy market. I bought a T-shirt and some postcards. I also bought you a souvenir; it is a very small Eiffel Tower. You can put it next to your bed. It has got a light on the top.

See you soon !

Fatma

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What's the main idea of this passage ?
A holiday in Paris
2. Where did Fatma go on a boat ?
She went on a boat on the River Seine
3. What do you think of Fatma's holiday ? Why ?
It was great. Because she saw alot of interesting places.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. Why didn't Fatma visit the Louvre ? - Because ....
   a. it was closed b. she had a picnic c. she did not have time d. it was open
5. The opposite of the underlined word "**delicious**" is ....
   a. funny b. weak c. terrible d. good

6. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ....
   a. the Louvre b. the river c. the Eiffel Tower d. a picnic

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. On a .... weekend, I visit my aunt and uncle.
   a. typical b. helpful c. careful d. famous
2. Students learn about .... in the maths lessons.
   a. rivers b. lakes c. numbers d. colours
3. I .... a lot of friends in my new school.
   a. took b. made c. put d. gave

4. Planes, trains and cars are .... of transport.
   a. roads b. streets c. days d. means

5. Samar wants to join the school music ....
   a. pond b. band c. hole d. dream

6. Egypt is the most important .... in Africa.
   a. village b. countryside c. country d. city

7. I can hear the .... It's time for the English lesson.
   a. bell b. ball c. hall d. radio

8. Dina likes .... very much.
   a. paint b. painted c. painting d. be paint

9. She always .... nice stories in the library.
   a. read b. is reading c. reads d. has read

10. Mohamed Salah has .... long, curly hair.
   a. gets b. get c. getting d. got

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Is there a mouse ? - Yes, there **are**. (is)
2. Mr Helmy never **watch** football matches on TV. (watches)
3. Last October, we **have** a picnic in Al-Azhar Park. (had)
4. **Egypts'** flag has three colours. (Egypt's)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A visit to the Pyramids"

3 Alexandria Governorate

Gomrok Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Heba is .... years old.
   a. 12 b. 13 c. 16 d. 60
2. Mr Adel is a .... teacher.
   a. bad b. clever c. funny d. lazy
3. Mr Adel goes to school by ....
   a. car b. plane c. ship d. train
4. Mr Adel teaches ....
   a. Arabic b. English c. history d. maths

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Mr / Gomaa

Mr Ashraf : Is your school near your house ?
Toka : No, sir. It is a long way from my house.
Mr Ashraf : How do you (1) ...go... to school ?
Toka : My father always (2) ...drives... me to school.
Mr Ashraf : How long does it (3) ...take... ?
Toka : It takes 20 (4) ...minutes... .
Mr Ashraf : But why do you come to school late ?
Toka : Sorry, sir. The streets are (5) ...crowded... in the morning.
Mr Ashraf : Try to be early. Don't come late again.
Toka : OK, sir.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following , then answer the questions :

Last Friday evening, John watched a long film on TV. He went to bed very late. The next morning, he couldn't get up early. He got out and ran to school. He forgot to prepare his school bag well. In the class, he didn't find his pen or the book of English which he was going to use. He tried to borrow them from his classmates, but **they** couldn't give what he wanted

because they were using them. His teachers weren't **pleased** with him. He was sorry and promised to go to bed early and get up early.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Do you think John is a careless pupil or not ? How do you know ?
Yes, I think so, because he went to bed late
2. Give a suitable title for this passage ?
John "a careless pupil"
3. Why were the teachers angry with John ?
Because he didn't bring his pen and the book of English.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. John got up late on ....
a. Friday b. Monday c. Saturday d. Tuesday
5. The underlined word "**pleased**" means ....
a. high b. happy c. exciting d. sorry
6. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to John's ....
a. classmates b. pens c. cousins d. teachers

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Aya is sitting under a tree. As it is very ....
a. cold b. sunny c. stormy d. cloudy
2. Baby birds are very .... They can't fly for many days.
a. kind b. strong c. unkind d. weak
3. He'd like to spend all day .... video games.
a. play b. played c. playing d. plays
4. Lovely things make you feel ....
a. bad b. frightened c. happy d. sad
5. Pupils wear school ....
a. uniforms b. forms c. reforms d. performs
6. Sensible persons are .... with their friends.
a. friendly b. short c. tall d. unfriendly

7. They .... a video call at the moment.

a. are making b. is making c. made d. make

8. We know it is the end of the lessons when we hear the ....

a. bell b. ball c. bill d. doll

9. Your father never works .... Saturdays.

a. at b. for c. in d. on

10. Ziad doesn't .... swimming when it is cold.

a. watch b. play c. go d. do

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Camels are very strong. They **can't** carry 100 kilos of bags. (...can...)
2. My best friend **have** got short, dark hair. (...has...)
3. Tarek is my cousin. Today is **her** birthday. (...his...)
4. Where does Mona's father **lives** ? (...live...)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your favourite sports star"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Mr / Gomaa

4 Qalyoubia Governorate — Benha Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. The story of Sara is about .... girl.
   a. a clever b. a lazy c. an orphan d. an old
2. Sara's grandfather lives in ....
   a. Cairo b. Egypt c. France d. England
3. Sara goes to live with her ....
   a. grandmother b. father c. mother d. grandfather
4. Sara's grandfather has a lot of ....
   a. goats b. cows c. sheep d. ships

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed : Where did you spend your summer holiday ?
Omar : I went to (1) Alexandria
Ahmed : Great ! (2) ...who... did you go with ?
Omar : I went with my family.
Ahmed : How did you (3) ...go... to Alexandria ?
Omar : We went by train.
Ahmed : Where did you (4) ...stay... there ?
Omar : In a hotel.
Ahmed : Did you enjoy your time there ?
Omar : (5) Of course

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Mr Ali is a teacher in Cairo. He teaches English. On Monday, Tuesday and Wednesday, he makes himself a sandwich for lunch. He eats it in the school. On Thursday, Friday and Saturday, he usually stays home. His wife makes him his favourite lunch ; chicken and potatoes. Yesterday, it rained a lot. The weather is sometimes rainy in winter in Cairo. Mr Ali did not want to stay home, so he went to a restaurant **near** the school. He loves the food there. The cook makes **it** all himself.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What does Mr Ali usually do twice a week ?

He usually stays home twice aweek.

2. Give a suitable title for the passage.

Mr Ali "a teacher of English"

3. Do you think Mr Ali will go to this restaurant again ?

Yes, I think so.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined word "**near**" is the opposite of ....

a. fast b. far c. old d. new

5. The weather is sometimes .... in winter in Cairo .

a. sunny b. good c. windy d. rainy

6. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ....

a. the weather b. the food c. the cook d. restaurant

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Your brother is your parents' ....

a. son b. sister c. brother d. daughter

2. A/An .... is at the top of the house.

a. orphan b. attic c. mountain d. hill

3. Huda's grandmother is very kind. She loves .... so much.

a. theirs b. her c. their d. hers

4. I arrived .... Spain last week.

a. in b. at c. on d. no word

5. Rania is a top .... in Africa.

a. gymnast b. gymnastics c. athletics d. physics

6. He is very busy. He .... take any holiday.

a. can't b. don't c. hasn't d. wasn't

7. We can .... a video call with your cousins in England.

a. write b. make c. have d. do

8. I'd like to .... a selfie in front of the river.

a. take b. do c. tap d. make

9. It is a good idea to eat between two and four .... of fruit a day.

a. cups b. loaves c. spices d. pieces

10. A .... is a word or numbers you use to go onto a website.

a. keyword b. password c. crossword d. secret word

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. I have got one brother but I **have** got any sisters. (haven't)
2. **Doesn't** tell people your personal information. (Don't)
3. There **are** some milk in the fridge, but there is not any juice. (is)
4. I don't like this tea. There is too **many** sugar in it ! (much)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your family"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. At school, I have science and .... lessons every day.
   a. Arabic b. English c. art d. PE
2. I do my homework .... watching TV.
   a. before b. after c. when d. with
3. My .... helps me study English.
   a. brother b. mother c. father d. uncle
4. I study English .... with my mother.
   a. at home b. at school c. in the street d. in the club

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Sara : This is a photo of my cousin.
Mona : What's his (1) ....name.... ?
Sara : It's Ali.
Mona : How (2) ....old.... is he ?
Sara : 14 years old.
Mona : Where does he (3) ....live.... ?
Sara : In Zagazig.
Mona : What's his favourite food ?
Sara : He (4) ....likes.... eating fish.
Mona : He (5) ....looks.... like your dad.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

It's important to eat the right things, but we shouldn't **forget** about what we drink. We should drink a lot of water. Water is great because **it** hasn't got any fats or sugar. So we should drink more water. Some drinks have a lot of sugar. We shouldn't drink them because they are bad for our bodies and our teeth. Milk is good for teeth. We should try to drink a glass of milk every day. Fizzy drinks are also bad for our teeth even when they don't have sugar.

Mr / Gomaa

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.
   Healthy and unhealthy drinks
2. What does the underlined pronoun "**it**" refer to ?
   It refers to water
3. Why do you think we have to drink the right things ?
   To be healthy

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. Fizzy drinks are .... for our bodies.
   a. bad   b. good   c. easy   d. difficult
5. Milk is good for our ....
   a. blood   b. teeth   c. ears   d. noses
6. The underlined word "**forget**" means to be ....
   a. able to remember   b. unable to remember
   c. able to help people   d. unable to move to a place

5

6

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... is an interesting subject.
   a. English   b. Gym   c. Volleyball   d. Handball
2. Some students in Egypt .... to school. Bikes are fantastic.
   a. run   b. walk   c. cycle   d. meet
3. My aunt is very .... She gives me presents.
   a. kind   b. sad   c. unkind   d. poor
4. My dad charges his phone with a phone ....
   a. screen   b. micro   c. charger   d. printer
5. .... is not a cooking verb.
   a. Stir   b. Boil   c. Run   d. Add
6. The .... which I always remember is fish and rice.
   a. mall   b. male   c. mail   d. meal
7. To .... is to sleep for a time in a tent.
   a. stop   b. step   c. camp   d. drop
8. This is my pen. It's ....
   a. me   b. I   c. my   d. mine

9. What subject are you good .... ? - Arabic.

a. at (circled) b. from c. on d. for

10. There is .... cheese in the fridge.

a. some (circled) b. any c. a lot d. many

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. We played games and Ali **rides** his bike. (rode)
2. Are there **some** apples in the fridge ? (any)
3. There is too **many** sugar in my tea. (much)
4. Nabil and Ali are twins. **There** sister is called Hams. (Their)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your favourite hobby"

....

....

....

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Where did Ali go yesterday ?
   a. To the cinema b. To the theatre c. To the zoo d. To the school
2. Who went with Ali ?
   a. His family b. His friends c. His teacher d. No one
3. What did Ali see ?
   a. Buses b. Animals c. Balls d. Bills
4. How was Ali when he went home ?
   a. Happy b. Sad c. Tired d. Unhappy

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Rami : Do you play any sport, Hani ?
Hani : Yes, I (1) ...play... tennis.
Rami : (2) ...where... do you play tennis ?
Hani : At a sports (3) ...club... near my house.
Rami : (4) ...How... do you go there ?
Hani : On foot.
Rami : (5) ...Who... do you play it with ?
Hani : With my friends.
Rami : I wish you good luck.
Hani : Thank you so much.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Egypt is a big country in Africa. It is a **fine** country. Every year, a lot of tourists come to visit Egypt. **They** come by air or by sea. Most of them prefer visiting Egypt in winter because it is usually warm. They visit

a lot of beautiful places. They visit the Egyptian Museum in Cairo. They also go to Giza to see the Pyramids and the Sphinx. They go to Luxor to see the Temple of Karnak. In summer, they go to the beaches to enjoy swimming and fishing. They spend a lot of money which is important for Egypt.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Why do you think tourists prefer visiting Egypt in winter ?
   Because it is usually warm
2. Give a suitable title for this passage.
   Tourism in Egypt
3. What does the underlined pronoun "**They**" refer to ?
   It refers to a lot of tourists

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. Tourists can see the .... in Giza.
   a. sea b. pyramids c. beaches d. temple
5. The .... spent by tourists is very important for Egypt.
   a. time b. holiday c. food d. money
6. The underlined word "**fine**" means ....
   a. very bad b. very cold c. very hot d. very good

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Good students work hard to .... their dreams.
   a. achieve b. forget c. sleep d. watch
2. He plays the piano in a famous ....
   a. bend b. pink c. band d. bark
3. I can't see very well, so I need ....
   a. classes b. glasses c. boots d. shoes
4. After we put sugar in tea, we should .... it.
   a. eat b. cut c. stir d. add
5. Drivers should follow the traffic ....
   a. rolls b. roles c. rules d. roils

6. Mohamed Salah has a lot of ....

a. facts b. vans c. fans d. vets

7. This food is ...., so we ate a lot.

a. boring b. delicious c. bad d. nasty

8. I haven't got .... money to buy this mobile.

a. much b. few c. little d. many

9. The sun always .... in the east.

a. rise b. to rise c. rises d. is rising

10. When did you .... the bill ? - Last week.

a. paid b. pay c. pays d. paying

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. I would like **playing** outdoors. . (to play)
2. What did you **bought** yesterday ? (buy)
3. This is my book. It's **me**. (mine)
4. Heba **don't** like football. (doesn't)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your favourite sports star"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Habiba is a ....
   a. farmer b. teacher c. gymnast d. nurse
2. Habiba wants to go to the ....
   a. Olympics b. stadium c. club d. school
3. Habiba .... for five or six hours.
   a. trains b. eats c. works d. cooks
4. Habiba is .... years old.
   a. 80 b. 8 c. 17 d. 18

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed : What is your favourite sports star ?

Yasser : Mohamed Salah. He plays (1) ....for.... Egypt.

Ahmed : Which sport does Mohamed Salah play ?

Yasser : He plays (2) ....football.

Ahmed : Does he (3) ....score.... a lot of goals ?

Yasser : Yes, he does.

Ahmed : How does he help people ?

Yasser : He gives them (4) ....money.... to build schools and hospitals in Egypt.

Ahmed : Has he got many fans ?

Yasser : Yes, he (5) ....has.... .

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

My name is Omar. Last summer, I went on a holiday to London with my family. We went __there__ by plane. My uncle was waiting for us at the

airport. We visited many places. My favourite place was Windsor Castle. We went there by train. We walked around the castle. My favourite activity was a ride on London Eye. We stayed in London for two weeks. The holiday helped me to speak English all the time. My sister Nada bought a lot of **souvenirs**. It was a nice holiday. I hope to go there again.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the main idea of this passage ?
A holiday to London
2. What does the underlined word "**there**" refer to ?
It refers to London
3. How do you think the holiday helped Omar ?
It helped him to speak English all the time.

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The family stayed in London for ....
a. one week (b. two weeks) c. a month d. two months
5. The family went to Windsor Castle by ....
(a. train) b. plane c. car d. bus
6. "Souvenirs" are things which which help you .... the places you visited.
a. forget (b. remember) c. study d. stay

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I'd like to .... a selfie in front of the river.
a. make (b. take) c. write d. do
2. Something scary makes you feel ....
a. happy b. funny c. bad (d. frightened)
3. How .... is the Cairo Tower ? - It is 187 metres.
(a. tall) b. long c. fast d. kind
4. Maher .... voluntary work at a hospital.
(a. does) b. makes c. listens d. plays

5. I .... in the lake at Siwa yesterday.

a. swim b. is swimming c. swam d. swims

6. This is .... father's car.

a. mine b. I c. my d. me

7. My sister .... the computer now.

a. use b. uses c. is using d. used

8. Gymnastics helps you to .... strong.

a. find b. stay c. sleep d. spend

9. My .... is my father or mother's sister.

a. uncle b. aunt c. daughter d. son

10. The .... is a room at the top of a house.

a. city b. goat c. orphan d. attic

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. We **shouldn't** eat healthy food. (should)
2. She **always** goes to school on Friday. It is a holiday. (never)
3. There aren't **some** figs in the fridge. (any)
4. **Manals** bag is yellow. (Manal's)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your family"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. How old is Ali's grandfather ?
   a. 80 b. 70 c. 60 d. 50
2. Samy is his ....
   a. dad b. uncle c. grandfather d. brother
3. .... is 30 years old.
   a. Ali b. Samy c. Grandfather d. Helmi
4. His grandfather's hair is white and ....
   a. tall b. long c. old d. short

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Aya : Hi, Mona.
Mona : Hi, Aya.
Aya : What are you doing (1) ...at... the moment ?
Mona : I am looking at a (2) ...website... .
Aya : A website! (3) ...Why... ?
Mona : Because I want to (4) ...buy... a present.
Aya : A present! Why ?
Mona : For my sister's (5) ...birthday... party.
Aya : That's great. Happy birthday for her.
Mona : Thank you.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Everyone loves snacks! But some snacks are bad for us. What is the best way to enjoy healthy snacks ? It is OK to eat crisps and cakes sometimes, but you should not eat too many of **them**. Crisps have a lot of fat and salt. Cakes, chocolate and biscuits have a lot of fat and sugar. Too much of this type of food is bad for our bodies.

Fruit is a great snack! It is very good for us and most people like the sweet taste. You should eat between two and four pieces of fruit a day. Beans and vegetables do not have much sugar or fat. They are very good for us, so we should eat a lot of them. Snacks like hummus with carrot and pepper are **delicious**. We should be careful, even with healthy foods. Fruit juice has got a lot of sugar, so we should not drink too much of it. Olives, meat and fish sometimes have a lot of salt.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Which food doesn't have much of fat or sugar ?
   Beans and vegetables don't have sugar or fat.
2. What do you think about snacks ?
   We shouldn't eat too many of them.
3. Give a suitable title for this passage.
   Having snacks

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. When something is "delicious", it is ....
   a. tasty b. salty c. expensive d. cheap
5. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to ....
   a. cakes b. crisps and cakes
   c. snacks d. bodies
6. Olives, meat and fish sometimes have ....
   a. a lot of sugar b. a lot of salt
   c. a lot of fat d. a lot of food

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. We are going to do a .... on "How to be healthy".
   a. shopping b. housework c. subject d. project
2. She .... a coat as it is hot.
   a. wears b. doesn't wear c. didn't wear d. wore
3. Tagine is a .... from Morocco.
   a. mean b. mail c. meal d. male
4. .... is a game for two players.
   a. Chess b. Football c. Basketball d. Volleyball

5. My mother .... a clever tennis player.
   a. never is   b. always is   c. is often   d. usually is
6. It's .... to cycle to school.
   a. ugly   b. unhealthy   c. healthy   d. slow
7. You should check your teeth regularly at ....
   a. the baker's   b. the dentist's   c. the chemist's   d. the butcher's
8. Which sport can .... you happy ?
   a. give   b. do   c. make   d. drive
9. Old people usually have white ....
   a. games   b. beards   c. films   d. stars
10. There's too .... milk.
   a. much   b. many   c. a lot of   d. lots of

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **They** names are Emad and Mona. (Their)
2. I **drink** orange juice now. (am drinking)
3. Ali didn't **felt** well yesterday. (Feel)
4. Can I have **any** water, please ? (some)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"What you want to be when you grow up."

....



9 Beheira Governorate

Mahmoudiyah Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Magda is a/an .... girl.
   a. lazy b. orphan c. clever d. helpful
2. Magda lives with her ....
   a. aunt b. mother c. father d. grandmother
3. Her grandmother is a/an .... woman.
   a. old b. young c. tall d. short
4. Magda sleeps in a bed in the .... of the house.
   a. hall b. kitchen c. living room d. attic

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Son : That is my friend, Mazin. Can you see him ?
Father : I don't know Mazin. What does he (1) ....look.... like ?
Son : He's got long, curly (2) ....hair.... .
Father : Oh ! I think I can (3) ....see.... him. Has he got glasses ?
Son : No, he (4) ....hasn't.... .
Father : Is his father with him ?
Son : Yes, he's got a beard.
Father : Has he got a (5) ....moustache?
Son : No, he hasn't got a moustache.
Father : Oh! Yes. I can see them now.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Hager is an **orphan** girl. She lives with her grandfather. Her grandfather is an old man. He lives in a small house in a village. He has lots of goats. Hager sleeps in a bed in the attic of the house. She drinks goats' milk and eats bread and cheese. She sees birds and flowers. She is very happy! One day, her uncle arrives and takes **her** to the city. The city life is exciting but she doesn't like to live there. She is very sad to be away from her grandfather.

Mr / Gomaa

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the main idea of the passage ?
Life of an orphan girl called Hager
2. What does Hager see in the village ?
She sees birds and flowers
3. Do you think that life is exciting in the city ? Why ? / Why not ?
Yes, I think so. Because there are alot of interesting places.

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined word "**orphan**" means ....
   a. has no father or mother b. has no brother
   c. has no home d. has no food
5. The underlined pronoun "**her**" refers to ....
   a. grandfather b. mother c. uncle d. Hager
6. Hager's grandfather has lots of ....
   a. dogs b. cats c. goats d. lions

D. Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He was late, but he could .... the plane.
   a. catch b. hold c. have d. pick
2. We can borrow or read books at the ....
   a. library b. laboratory c. playground d. theatre
3. His life is ...., he hasn't got time for hobbies.
   a. exciting b. boring c. wonderful d. amazing
4. You can .... a new icon on your tablet.
   a. design b. print c. charge d. mime
5. A .... is something you buy to remember a holiday.
   a. present b. souvenir c. prize d. medal
6. What a .... ! I couldn't meet my friends.
   a. pity b. party c. poem d. play
7. .... are hard, dry potato pieces that you eat as a snack.
   a. Crisps b. Biscuits c. Cinnamons d. Figs

8. I .... like music, but I like tennis.
   a. aren't b. doesn't c. don't d. isn't
9. There are .... people on this shop. Let's go to a different one.
   a. enough b. too many c. too much d. too
10. We didn't .... home for lunch yesterday.
   a. go b. went c. going d. goes

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **Does** you play football ? (Do)
2. Yunis **goes often** to school by bus. (often goes)
3. What does your new house **looking** like ? (look)
4. There are too **much** apples for all of us. (many)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Twin brothers"

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. My school is .... from my house.
   a. near b. far c. easy d. long
2. I go to school by ....
   a. bus b. car c. bike d. train
3. I .... at my school on time.
   a. drive b. arrive c. walk d. talk
4. It's .... to go to school by bike.
   a. unhealthy b. bad c. slow d. healthy

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Sama : Hi, Abeer. How was your holiday ?
Abeer : Hi, Sama. It was great, thanks.
Sama : Where (1) ...did... you go ?
Abeer : I went to France.
Sama : Did you (2) ...see... the Eiffel Tower ?
Abeer : Yes, I did.
Sama : Did you (3) ...enjoy... your time there ?
Abeer : Yes, I enjoyed my time there.
Sama : (4) ...When... did you come home ?
Abeer : I came back (5) ...on / last... Sunday.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Lamees is 12 years old. She lives in a big house with her family. Her grandparents live with them, too. Her father is a doctor. He helps **sick** people. Her mother, Nadia, is a teacher. She teaches home economics at school. Lamees and her only sister, Rodina are twins. They look the same, both of **them** have got big blue eyes and blond hair. They have no brothers, so they spend their free time together playing with their toys. Their grandfather Kamal doesn't work. He is 65 years old. He always

tells the children stories. Grandmother Munira is a good cook. She often makes them delicious cakes.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What does this passage talk about ?
Lamees' family

Mr / Gomaa

2. How does Rodina look like ?
She has got big blue eyes and blond hair.

3. Why do you think the children like their grandfather ?
Because he tells them stories.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined word "**sick**" is the opposite of ....
a. delicious b. lazy c. fast d. healthy

5. .... makes delicious cakes.
a. Nadia b. Kamal c. Munira d. Lamees

6. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to ....
a. Nadia and Lamees b. Lamees and Rodina
c. Lamees and Munira d. Nadia and Munira

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. There .... much water on the floor.
a. is b. are c. has d. have

2. A .... is a group of people who play music together.
a. hand b. band c. team d. family

3. In Alexandria, you can have a wonderful .... from your own window.
a. review b. view c. preview d. interview

4. Salma .... a story yesterday.
a. wrote b. writes c. writing d. write

5. Meat is the main .... in tagine in Morocco.
a. subject b. ingredient c. sport d. place

6. When you put sugar in the glass, you should .... it well.
a. start b. spill c. stir d. stop

7. The twins are two children born at the .... time.
   a. different b. same c. similar d. difficult
8. I've .... short, curly hair.
   a. gets b. get c. getting d. got
9. You can .... your mobile using a phone charger.
   a. change b. charge c. hear d. choose
10. School .... should be followed.
   a. roles b. rules c. rolls d. rulers

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Throw the ball to **mine**. I'm waiting. (me)
2. Are there **some** pencils ? (any)
3. Does she like **watch** TV ? (watching)
4. We should **drinks** a lot of water. (drink)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A day in your life"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Habiba is a ....
   a. farmer b. teacher c. gymnast d. nurse
2. Habiba's family lives in ....
   a. Alexandria b. Cairo c. Mansoura d. Damietta
3. Habiba .... for five or six hours.
   a. trains b. eats c. works d. cooks
4. Habiba is .... years old.
   a. 80 b. 8 c. 17 d. 18

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Amjad : Hello, Hany. How are you today ?
Hany : I'm (1) .... fine ...., thanks.
Amjad : Who's your (2) .... English teacher ?
Hany : Mr Wael, our teacher of English.
Amjad : (3) .... Are .... you good at English ?
Hany : Yes, of course.
Amjad : How (4) .... many .... English lessons have you got every week ?
Hany : We have got 5 lessons.
Amjad : When is the break ?
Hany : It's (5) .... at .... 11 o'clock. We play and have fun.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Once, a train stopped at a small station and a woman opened the window. There was a boy **outside** and the woman said to **him**. I don't want to get out of the train because I am old and I can't walk fast. Please run to the station café and get me an ice cream and get one for yourself, too. Here is six pounds". The boy came back before the train moved again. He was eating an ice cream. He ran to the woman's window and gave her three pounds. He said, "There was only one ice cream".

Mr / Gomaa

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.
At the train station
2. What does the underlined pronoun "**him**" refer to ?
It refers to the boy.
3. What do you think of the boy ?
I think he is intelligent

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The woman doesn't want to get out of the train because she was ....
a. old and slow b. young and fast
c. old and fast d. young and slow
5. The boy bought ....
a. one ice cream b. no ice creams
c. two ice creams d. three ice creams
6. The opposite of the underlined word "**outside**" is ....
a. sides b. beside c. before d. inside

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. What's your favourite .... in this story ? - Alice.
a. colour b. character c. event d. actor
2. A brave person is happy to do something ....
a. fun b. safe c. dangerous d. bad
3. Something scary makes you feel ....
a. happy b. funny c. good d. frightened
4. Camels are very .... They can carry 200 kilos of bags.
a. tall b. strong c. poor d. weak
5. Nada always .... her homework in the evening.
a. makes b. goes c. watches d. does
6. Mohammed Salah is a kind person. He .... money to the poor.
a. gives b. takes c. puts d. reads

7. .... names are Hany and Haidy. They are cousins.

a. His b. Her c. Their d. Our

8. I like swimming in the pool .... it is nice and cool.

a. because b. and c. but c. or

9. Are you .... the tablet ? - Yes, I am.

a. use b. used c. uses d. using

10. It's very high. There's lots of water in it. It is a ....

a. jungle b. sea c. waterfall d. river

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. They didn't **travelled** to Alexandria by car. (travel)
2. It's her bag. It's **her**. (hers)
3. **Do** your friend play football on Mondays ? (Does)
4. She usually **have** breakfast with her family. (has)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your favourite food"

12 Ismailia Governorate

Ismailia Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Where did you go ? - To ....
   a. Cairo b. Siwa c. Tanta d. Aswan
2. What did you climb ?
   a. A river b. A house c. A mountain d. A tower
3. What did you see ?
   a. Dogs b. Cats c. Cows d. Camels
4. Where did you sleep in the desert ?
   a. In a tent b. In a hotel c. In a bedroom d. At home

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Sami : Good morning. How are you ?

Ahmed : Good morning. I'm fine, thanks.

Sami : (1) Who is your favourite sports star ?

Ahmed : Mohamed Salah.

Sami : What sport does he play ?

Ahmed : He (2) plays football.

Sami : What does he look (3) like ?

Ahmed : He has got curly (4) hair .

Sami : Does he (5) score goals ?

Ahmed : Yes, he scores a lot of goals.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

My name's Rahma. My favourite subject at school is science. I love learning about how things work. I like doing maths, too. I am quite good at maths. I quite like doing sports. My favourite sport is tennis. I like playing **it** with my friends, but I am **not good** at it. I usually go home after school. I do not like playing computer games. After I do my homework, I like reading a book. I like writing stories, too. I go to bed at ten o'clock in the evening. I live happily with my family.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What does this passage talk about ?
It talks about a girl called Rahma
2. What does Rahma like doing at home ?
She likes reading a book and writing stories
3. What do you think of Rahma ?
I think she is a good girl.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. You can learn how things work in .... lesson.
a. science b. maths c. English d. French
5. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ....
a. TV b. tennis c. school d. subject
6. The underlined word "**not good**" means ....
a. clever b. bad c. fast d. slow

D. Vocabulary & Structure

Mr / Gomaa

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Salma likes .... pictures.
a. draw b. draws c. drawn d. drawing
2. In Egypt, we have the longest .... in the world.
a. sea b. waterfall c. river d. forest
3. Healthy .... are good for you.
a. snakes b. snacks c. snails d. songs
4. This is Hala's book. It is ....
a. hers b. her c. she d. his
5. You should .... your study and your hobbies.
a. play b. balance c. stay d. spend
6. We have to follow the school ....
a. roles b. rulers c. rules d. ruler
7. Some children in Uganda usually cross the river in a ....
a. canoe b. taxi c. bus d. train

8. Ashraf .... got new glasses.
   a. have b. is c. are d. has

9. She never takes money. She does .... work.
   a. hard b. writing c. voluntary d. school

10. The .... says "Don't walk on the grass".
   a. signal b. list c. song d. sign

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **Doesn't** come late for work. (Don't)
2. My father **buy** a new car last week. (bought)
3. No, there aren't **some** boys in the class. (any)
4. I'm **watch** TV now. (watching)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your best friend Reda"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Andy is .... years old.
   a. ten b. twelve c. thirteen d. eleven
2. Andy is from ....
   a. France b. England c. The USA d. Egypt
3. Andy usually goes to school ....
   a. on foot b. by bike c. by car d. by taxi
4. Andy goes to school on a snowmobile in ....
   a. summer b. fall c. winter d. spring

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

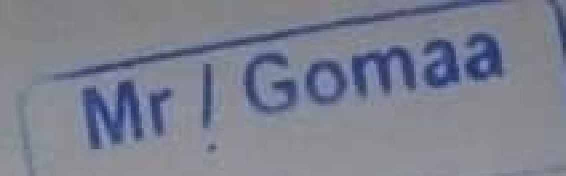
Mr / Gomaa

Omnia : What is your favourite subject ?
Heba : My favourite subject is (1) English.
Omnia : (2) Why do you like it ?
Heba : Because English is an interesting subject.
Omnia : (3) Who 's your English teacher this year ?
Heba : It's Mrs Mona.
Omnia : How often do you (4) study it ?
Heba : I study it (5) five times a week.
Omnia : Who is your maths teacher ?
Heba : Mr Hamdy.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Most people have three meals every day, breakfast, lunch and dinner. **They** eat these meals in the morning, in the afternoon and in the evening. But most people don't care about what they should eat for each meal. Doctors say that healthy food is very important and people should



eat lots of fruits and vegetables to **keep** healthy. People should not eat too many cakes. Doctors advise people to drink a lot of water and milk every day and not to have too many sugar drinks. Doctors advise people not to stay at home all the time. They should go for walks to do exercise or practise any sport.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What do you think people should eat to keep healthy ?
They should eat lots of fruit and vegetables
2. Give a suitable title for this passage.
"How to keep healthy"
3. What do doctors advise people not to do ?
Doctors advise people not to stay at home all the time.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to ....
a. a few people b. doctors
c. all doctors d. most people
5. Doctors advise people to drink a lot of water and milk every ....
a. month b. week c. day d. year
6. The underlined word "**keep**" means ....
a. do b. stay c. leave d. make

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Brothers or sisters of the same age are called ....
a. doubles b. towers c. toilets d. twins
2. .... are animals that are like sheep.
a. Cows b. Buffaloes c. Goats d. Snakes
3. In the area of the Pyramids, you can .... horses.
a. drive b. give c. eat d. ride
4. I would like to .... a selfie in front of the Pyramids.
a. take b. make c. write d. do

5. We paint and draw in .... lesson.
   a. art b. English c. maths d. Arabic
6. It is important to .... safe online.
   a. sleep b. stay c. stand d. sit
7. Ali uses a/an .... because he cannot walk.
   a. stair b. stool c. wheelchair d. armchair
8. Listen! A nice singer .... on the radio.
   a. sings b. sang c. is singing d. would sing
9. My father .... a lot of work today.
   a. has got b. have got c. is got d. are got
10. Aya always .... tennis every Friday.
   a. play b. playing c. played d. plays

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. This is **mine** new house. (my)
2. Is there **some** coffee ? (any)
3. Does Salwa like **watch** TV ? (watching)
4. He didn't **played** football yesterday. (play)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your family"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Mr / Gomaa

14 Fayoum Governorate — Itsa Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Where did you go ?
   a. To Cairo b. To Luxor c. To Alexandria d. To Siwa
2. We .... in the lake.
   a. swam b. saw c. ate d. slept
3. We saw .... and slept in a tent.
   a. dogs b. camels c. cats d. cows
4. It was my .... holiday.
   a. favourite b. bad c. lazy d. sad

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ali : Who is your best friend, Omar ?
Omar : He is Ayman, my cousin.
Ali : How (1) ....old.... is he ?
Omar : He's 13. He is in the same classroom.
Ali : What are his (2) ....favourite.... subjects ?
Omar : He likes English and science.
Ali : What is his favourite (3) ....sport.... ?
Omar : He (4) ....likes.... basketball.
Ali : Is he tall ?
Omar : Yes, he (5) ....is.... .

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

All work and no play make your life "**dull**". So you need fun activities, too. Hobbies are activities that are fun. Your hobbies can be useful, too. There are many kinds of hobbies. Hobbies will help you use your free time well. Music, reading stories, writing, sports and painting may all be hobbies.

I love to paint, it's my hobby. I paint with water colour. I like to paint beautiful nature. When we go on holidays to different places like the desert areas, rivers, mountains or the countryside, I always take my art material with me. I like to sit and paint. I keep all my paintings carefully in my bedroom. Also, I like making painting with water colours because water colours are quick to dry. What about you ?

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.
My favourite hobby

2. Why does the writer use water colours ?
Because water colours are quick to dry

3. Why do you think hobbies are important ?
Because all work and no play make life dull.

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ....

a. music   b. painting   c. writing   d. reading

5. The underlined word "**dull**" means ....

a. fantastic   b. happy   c. interesting   d. boring

6. The writer likes to paint ....

a. houses   b. nature   c. people   d. places

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Don't .... photos to people you don't know.

a. make   b. see   c. send   d. eat

2. Are you .... next to your best friend ? - Yes, I am.

a. sat   b. sitting   c. sits   d. sit

3. Do you .... swimming after school ? - No, I don't.

a. make   b. take   c. play   d. go

4. Your mum or dad's brother is your ....

a. uncle   b. aunt   c. sister   d. brother

5. A/An .... has no mother or father.
 a. twin b. orphan c. parent d. uncle
6. He never ...., he can't swim.
 a. not swim b. swims c. doesn't swim d. swim
7. I .... a horse in the forest, when we had a picnic there.
 a. drove b. rode c. went d. flew
8. We learn about countries in .... lessons.
 a. social studies b. religion c. maths d. computer studies
9. You drink .... coffee. It's not good for you.
 a. too many b. a lot of c. enough d. a lot
10. I eat healthy food to stay ....
 a. weak b. strong c. unhealthy d. poor

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. First, **taps** the messages icon. (tap)
2. She **didn't** at school yesterday. (wasn't)
3. This bag belongs to Noha. It's **her**. (hers)
4. I **doesn't** listen to music. (don't)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your favourite sports star"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Tagine is a traditional meal in ....
   a. Italy b. Athens c. Egypt d. Morocco
2. Mazin likes ....
   a. koshari b. tagine c. meat d. chicken
3. Tagine's name comes from the cooking .... for this food.
   a. pan b. pot c. plate d. dish
4. The taste of tagine is ....
   a. amazing b. amazed c. bored d. boring

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Mr / Gomaa

Nada : That's the bell. What is the next lesson ?
Malak : Let's look at the timetable.
Nada : We have got computer (1) studies.
Malak : Yes, I love it. It's my (2) favourite subject.
Nada : I am not good at computer studies.
Malak : So, what are your favourite (3) subject ?
Nada : I love science and languages.
Malak : What languages are you good (4) at ?
Nada : I am quite good at English.
Malak : Oh, I (5) don't like languages. I am bad at English.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Although Khalid and Marawan are twins, they are different in some ways. For example, Khalid's favourite hobby is playing football. He plays it with his friends at school and in the club near their school. He also watches football matches on TV at home after finishing his homework. On the other side, Marawan is very interested in music. He plays it in

a **band** at school. At home, he likes listening to music on the radio or plays the guitar. Their parents help **them** study hard for school and also let them enjoy their hobbies.

Mr / Gomaa

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.
The life of twins
2. When does Khalid watch football matches ?
He watches them on TV at home after finishing his homework
3. Do you think the twins are always the same ?
No, I don't think so.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. How are Khalid and Marawan different ?
   a. In their hobbies b. They have different classes
   c. In their schools d. With their friends
5. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to ....
   a. schools b. their parents c. the band d. the twins
6. The underlined word "**band**" means ....
   a. some people who play a sport together
   b. some people who play music together
   c. some people who have the same hobby
   d. some people who cook together

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A .... works in the restaurant.
   a. waiter b. doctor c. teacher d. nurse
2. The Eiffel .... is a famous place in Paris.
   a. River b. Museum c. Tower d. Garden
3. It is important to keep your .... secret on the internet.
   a. passport b. password c. keyboard d. mobile
4. All students like .... teacher.
   a. their b. her c. you d. them

5. People, who can't walk, can use a .... to travel around.
   a. rope b. wheel c. wheelchair d. ship
6. Our English teacher always asks us to do ....
   a. beds b. projects c. showers d. photos
7. How .... do you get up at 6:30 a.m ? - Always.
   a. many b. long c. much d. often
8. Gymnastics helps you to .... strong.
   a. spend b. find c. stay d. sleep
9. We .... any bikes.
   a. have got b. haven't got c. has got d. hasn't got
10. The hair growing over the man's mouth is called ....
   a. moustache b. mouse c. feature d. beard

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Are **their** any mobile phones ? (there)
2. Did you **bought** a new jacket ? (buy)
3. There are too **much** apples. (many)
4. I **drink** tea at the moment. am (drinking)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your favourite sport"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Famous people have a/an .... life.
   a. free   b. busy   c. boring   d. interesting
2. Famous people do their work for a .... time.
   a. short   b. tall   c. long   d. dark
3. It is important for famous people to .... their work and life.
   a. train   b. balance   c. take   d. ask
4. Life of famous people is important but it is ....
   a. easy   b. lazy   c. difficult   d. happy

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Nada : This is a photo of my cousin.
Reem : What's his (1) name .... ?
Nada : It's Fares.
Reem : How (2) old .... is he ?
Nada : He is 14.
Reem : Where does he live ?
Nada : He (3) lives .... in Qus.
Reem : What is his favourite food ?
Nada : He (4) likes .... eating fish with rice.
Reem : He (5) looks .... like his father.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

"Heidi" is the story of an **orphan** girl. She goes to live with her grandfather in Switzerland. Her grandfather is an old man. He lives in a small house in the mountains and he has lots of goats. Heidi sleeps in a bed in the attic of the house. She drinks goats' milk and eats bread and cheese.

Every day, she walks in the mountains with the goats, her grandfather and her friend, Peter. She sees birds and flowers. She is very happy.

But one day, Heidi's aunt arrives and takes her to the city. Heidi doesn't like the city and <u>**she**</u> is very sad to be away from her grandfather, Peter and the goats. Heidi has lots of adventures in the countryside.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.
   Heidi " an orphan girl "
2. Why was Heidi sad in the city ?
   To be away from her grandfather, Peter and the goats.
3. What do you think about Heidi and Peter's life ?
   I think they live a happy life with birds, flowers and goats.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. When someone is "orphan", he has no ....
   a. brothers b. sisters c. friends (d. parents)
5. .... mentioned in the passage.
   a. Two males b. Two females
   c. Two males and one female (d. Two males and two females)
6. The underlined pronoun "<u>**she**</u>" refers to ....
   a. Heidi's sister b. Heidi's mother
   c. Heidi's aunt (d. Heidi)

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. On a .... weekend, I visit my uncle and aunt.
   (a. typical) b. careful c. helpful d. famous
2. .... on the icon on your laptop.
   a. Write (b. Click) c. Type d. Read
3. Students learn about .... in the maths lesson.
   a. rivers b. lakes (c. numbers) d. colours
4. I .... a lot of friends in my new school.
   a. took (b. made) c. put d. gave

5. Nader always talks nicely to people. He's very ....

a. bad b. kind c. angry d. unkind

6. When you put sugar in the glass, you should .... it well.

a. start b. spill c. stir d. stop

7. .... are animals that are like sheep.

a. Dogs b. Cows c. Goats d. Rats

8. Dina likes .... very much.

a. paint b. painted c. painting d. paints

9. Mohammed Salah .... score a lot of goals. He is very clever.

a. can b. must c. mustn't d. has

10. .... they got any pencils ? - Yes, they have.

a. Has b. Are c. Do d. Have

5 **Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. **Does** Mona and Sara like painting ? (Do)
2. They are **drinks** tea. (drinking)
3. The house is **our**. It belongs to us. (ours)
4. There are some laptops and there **are** a whiteboard. (is)

E. Writing

6 **Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :**

"A typical day for you"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Sohag Governorate

Saqulta Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Gymnastics is a/an .... sport.
   a. easy b. difficult c. interesting d. boring
2. The gymnast .... many hours daily.
   a. waves b. tells c. keeps d. trains
3. A gymnast must .... his hobby, work and study.
   a. train b. balance c. make d. charge
4. The gymnast always wants to .... his dream.
   a. achieve b. study c. take d. agree

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mr / Gomaa

Hana : Hi, Nour. How was your holiday ?
Nour : Hi, Hana. It was great, thanks.
Hana : Where (1) ....did.... you go ?
Nour : I went to France.
Hana : Did you (2) ....visit.... the Eiffel Tower ?
Nour : Yes, I did.
Hana : Did you (3) ....enjoy.... your time there ?
Nour : Yes, I enjoyed my time there.
Hana : (4) ....When.... did you come home ?
Nour : I came back (5) ....on.... Sunday.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The internet is a great way to talk to your friends and learn new things. But it's also important to stay safe online. There are a few ways can help you to make sure you're not in danger when you use the internet. Use strong passwords that are hard for others to guess, using letters,

numbers and symbols (like £ , $, & ! , etc). Keep passwords to yourself and change **them** regularly. If somebody you don't know adds you as a friend, don't say yes quickly. Don't share personal information like your address or phone number with somebody you don't know. If you have an email from a **stranger**, think before clicking on it.

Mr / Gomaa

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What's the main idea of this passage ?
How to be safe when you use the internet.
2. What do you do if someone you don't know asks you to give him your phone number ?
I will not give him my number.
3. What do you think of the internet ?
I think it is very important nowadays

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined word "**stranger**" means a person you ....
   a. met   b. don't know   c. know   d. see
5. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to ....
   a. numbers   b. emails   c. computers   d. passwords
6. It's important to .... safe on the internet.
   a. stay   b. say   c. tell   d. ask

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Alice's .... in Wonderland is my favourite.
   a. Characters   b. Adventures   c. Books   d. Lessons
2. A .... takes people from one side of a lake to another.
   a. bike   b. snowmobile   c. canoe   d. car
3. The science teacher shows us many interesting .... for that lesson.
   a. sports   b. words   c. dialogues   d. diagrams
4. The twins are two children born at the .... time.
   a. different   b. same   c. similar   d. difficult

5. I .... go to the library at break. I like reading.
   a. never b. always c. no d. don't
6. Famous football teams have a lot of .... They encourage players.
   a. vans b. fins c. fans d. vets
7. A/An .... is a simple message sent through the internet.
   a. telegram b. letter c. blog d. email
8. Tea is the most .... drink in the world.
   a. popular b. healthy c. unknown d. hot
9. We can't come on Saturday. It's .... father's birthday.
   a. their b. your c. our d. ours
10. She didn't .... to the beach yesterday.
   a. gone b. went c. goes d. go

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Hany **should** eat snacks in the classroom. (shouldn't)
2. There **are** too much sugar. (is)
3. Does she like **watch** TV ? (watching)
4. **Came** here, please Ali. (Come)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your best friend"

Mr / Gomaa

18 Aswan Governorate — Aswan Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Doaa El-Ghobashy plays ....
   a. basketball b. football c. handball d. volleyball
2. She is very ....
   a. long b. tall c. short d. heavy
3. She plays for ....
   a. England b. Brazil c. Egypt d. Syria
4. She always has a big ....
   a. smile b. smell c. house d. sister

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ali : What are you eating ?
Hany : I'm eating (1) sweets.
Ali : But they are not (2) good for your teeth.
Hany : But I like sweets very much.
Ali : I know, but you (3) shouldn't eat too many sweets.
Hany : Why ?
Ali : Because they have too much (4) sugar.
Hany : What should I eat ?
Ali : You should eat (5) fruit and vegetables.
Hany : OK. I will have an apple.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

I like to collect fossils حفريات. It's an interesting hobby, although it is not always easy to find them. The first thing you have to do is to find the right place. I know a place in the desert where there are many fossils. When I see a fossil, first I look carefully to see if it was a plant or a small animal. After that, I put the fossil in a small bag. Then, I take **it** home. The next step, is deciding where to put the fossil. I group the fossils of animals and plants and keep them in different boxes. **Finally**, I find out the name of the animal or plant and write it in my notebook.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Do you think the writer could keep his fossils at home ?
Yes, I do.

2. What does the writer do in his notebook ?
He writes the fossil's name

3. What's the best title of this passage ?
"My favourite hobby"

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to a ....
a. fossil b. box c. notebook d. bag

5. There are many fossils in the ....
a. desert b. field c. farm d. school

6. The underlined word "**finally**" means ....
a. at last b. first c. usually d. sometimes

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Athletes work hard to .... their studies, their sport, their friends and their family.
a. break b. practice c. balance d. pour

2. Everyone .... snacks!
a. love b. loves c. loving d. to love

3. You can learn a lot about rice pudding recipes ....
a. online b. line c. outline d. fine

4. There is .... milk in the fridge.
a. an b. some c. any d. a

5. It's .... to cycle to school.
a. bad b. harmful c. unhealthy d. healthy

6. The canoe .... students to school and home again every day.
a. gives b. takes c. talks d. rides

7. A/An .... is a room at the top of a house.
a. hall b. attic c. kitchen d. stair

8. Your brother is your parent's ....

a. son b. daughter c. uncle d. sister

9. .... is not a cooking verb.

a. Add b. Boil c. Stir d. Run

10. Let's go to the shops. There is .... time before our train leaves.

a. many b. a lot c. enough d. any

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. My sister goes to a **girl's** school. (girls')
2. I love **learn** about how things work. (learning)
3. **Boils** the water. (Boil)
4. What **is** your sister look like ? (does)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"How to be safe on the internet"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

19 Luxor Governorate

Luxor Educational Directorate

A. Listening

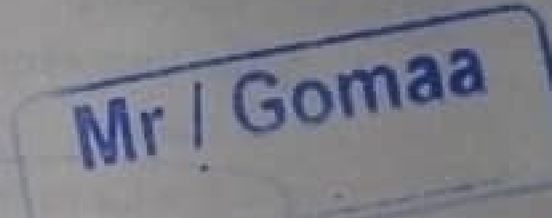
1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Salma is .... years old.
   a. 12 b. 13 c. 14 d. 15
2. Salma goes to school ....
   a. on foot b. by car c. by bus d. by bike
3. Salma is in ....
   a. prep 1 b. prep 2 c. prep 3 d. prim 6
4. What does Salma like ?
   a. Her bike b. Her car c. Her doll d. Her friends

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

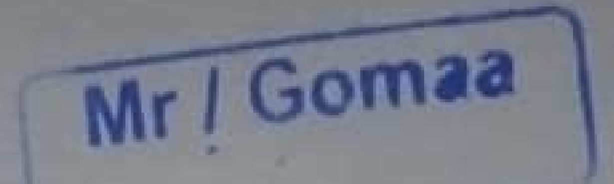


Dina : This is a photo of my cousin.
Dalia : What (1) ....is.... his name ?
Dina : It's Maged.
Dalia : How (2) ....old.... is he ?
Dina : He's 14 (3) ....years.... old.
Dalia : What (4) ....sport.... does he like ?
Dina : He likes basketball.
Dalia : What is his favourite subject ?
Dina : He likes (5) ....English.
Dalia : Oh ! I like English, too.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Last summer, Ali decided to spend his holiday with his uncle Mohamed. Mohamed lives in Cairo. It is a big city. A lot of people live there. It is famous for its interesting places. Ali saw the Egyptian Museum. It's full of amazing things. It's open daily from 9:00 a.m. to 7:00 p.m. He also visited the Cairo Tower. **It** is a very tall building. He enjoyed the view



of the city from the **top** of the tower. He travelled by boat on the Nile. He took many photos there. He went shopping at Khan El-Khalili and bought a lot of souvenirs for his friends. He also went to the clothes shops and bought nice clothes for his family. Ali was very happy.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.
   The last summer holiday
2. How did Ali travel on the Nile ?
   He travelled by boat on the Nile.
3. Why do you think many people visit the Egyptian Museum ?
   Because it is full of amazing things.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined word "**top**" is the opposite of ....
   a. popular b. bad c. bottom d. slow
5. The underlined pronoun "**It**" refers to ....
   a. Cairo b. the Egyptian Museum c. the Cairo Tower d. Giza
6. Ali bought a lot of .... from Khan El Khalili for his friends.
   a. souvenirs b. computers c. clothes d. photos

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Keep your password ....
   a. secret b. famous c. late d. happy
2. What is .... father's name ?
   a. yours b. he c. you d. your
3. .... give us milk and meat.
   a. Lions b. Dogs c. Goats d. Cats
4. The students play football in the .... at school.
   a. museum b. zoo c. playground d. library
5. How .... do you get up at 5 o'clock ? - Always.
   a. old b. often c. long d. many

6. Rami is a good player. He .... many goals.
   a. talks b. jumps c. paints d. scores
7. Kilimanjaro is the highest .... in Africa.
   a. lake b. river c. mountain d. sea
8. Mary likes Friday because it is a ....
   a. river b. desert c. holiday d. hotel
9. We didn't .... home for lunch yesterday.
   a. go b. went c. going d. goes
10. Salma bought a flat with a good .... on the Nile.
   a. few b. view c. review d. interview

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Are you good in languages ? (at)
2. Tell me about yours family. (your)
3. We don't like watch TV after school. (watching)
4. There are an MP3 player behind the laptop. (is)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your hobbies"

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Mohamed Salah is a ....
   a. teacher b. sports star c. doctor d. swimmer
2. What sport does Mohamed Salah play ?
   a. Tennis b. Basketball c. Handball d. Football
3. Where does Mohamed Salah play ?
   a. In Africa b. In America c. In Europe d. In Asia
4. Mohamed Salah is good at ....
   a. scoring goals b. singing c. swimming d. drawing

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Reem : Hello, Dalida. What's this ?
Dalida : This is a photo of my cousin.
Reem : (1) ....What.... 's her name ?
Dalida : Her name is Sama.
Reem : How (2) ....old.... is she ?
Dalida : She's 14.
Reem : Where (3) ....does.... she live ?
Dalida : She lives in Giza.
Reem : What's her (4) ....favourite.... hobby ?
Dalida : She (5) ....likes.... chess.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Ali and Omar are twins. They are both aged twelve. They are in prep one. They usually walk to school. Ali likes maths and wants to be an engineer but Omar likes English and wants to be a teacher of English. Ali likes to go swimming on Tuesdays, but Omar doesn't like swimming. Omar likes music. **He** plays the drums and listens to music. They play chess together on Thursdays and Ali usually wins. Both of them like **voluntary** work. They help in a children's hospital. They play games with the children and read them stories. I'm proud of being their father.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Do you think that Ali and Omar are good boys ? Why / Why not ?
Yes, I do. Because they do voluntary work
2. What does the underlined pronoun "He" refer to ?
It refers to Omar
3. Give a suitable title for the passage.
The twins "Ali and Omar"

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. Omar wants to be a/an ....
a. doctor b. teacher c. engineer d. farmer
5. The underlined word " **voluntary**" means for ....
a. much time b. many people c. no money d. no one
6. Ali likes ....
a. football b. music c. swimming d. English

D. Vocabulary & Structure

Mr / Gomaa

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We keep all our old things in the ....
a. attic b. selfie c. orphan d. adventure
2. Sama likes .... sports.
a. did b. do c. doing d. does
3. A baby bird is .... It can't fly for many days.
a. week b. weak c. strong d. spring
4. Egypt is a ...., but Cairo is a city.
a. room b. town c. village d. country
5. She has got short, ... hair.
a. busy b. care c. curly d. fast
6. Use the mouse to .... on the icon.
a. kick b. click c. tape d. top
7. This question is .... difficult.
a. quiet b. quit c. quite d. noisy
8. Where did you .... on Saturday evening ?
a. went b. goes c. going d. go
9. My favourite .... is koshari.
a. meal b. mail c. mean d. main
10. This is .... book.
a. Amal b. Amal's c. to Amal d. Amals

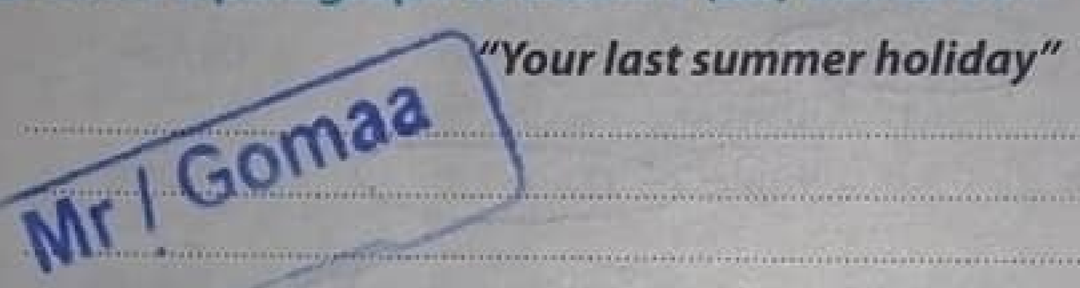
5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Ahmed sometimes **watch** football matches on TV. (watches)
2. **Stops** playing on your phone. (Stop)
3. He **have** got a big smile. (has)
4. My mother **cook** lunch now. (is cooking)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your last summer holiday"



21 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif — Central Administration of Dakahlia Institutes

A. Language Functions

1 Complete the dialogue with these words :

looking – using – watching – writing

Nasser : What are you doing, Mazin ?

Mazin : Hi, Nasser. I'm (1) using our new tablet.

Nasser : Are you (2) writing an email ?

Mazin : No, I'm not. Look ! Can you see the photos on it ?

Nasser : Oh ! Yes. Are you (3) watching a film ?

Mazin : No, I'm not. I'm (4) looking at information for our homework.

B. Reading Comprehension

2 Read and match :

(A)	(B)
1. (c) What food do you like ?	a. I'm quite short with dark hair.
2. (d) Fares is doing his	b. chess online.
3. (a) What do you look like ?	c. I like fish with rice.
4. (b) I'm playing	d. computer studies homework.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Mr Taha is a teacher in Port Said. He teaches English. On Monday, Tuesday and Wednesday, he makes himself a sandwich for lunch. He eats it in the school. On Thursday and Friday, he usually walks home. His wife makes him his favourite lunch; chicken and potatoes. Yesterday, it rained a lot. The weather is sometimes rainy in Port Said. Mr Taha did not want to walk home, so he went to a restaurant near the school. He loves the food **there**. The cook makes it all himself.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Where does Mr Taha work ?
   He works in a school.
2. What does he usually eat for lunch at his home ?
   He eats chicken and potatoes.
3. Who makes the food in the restaurant ?
   The cook makes it all himself.

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The weather is sometimes .... in Port Said.
   a. rainy b. sunny c. hot d. cloudy
5. The underlined word "**there**" refers to the ....
   a. club b. home c. school d. restaurant

C. Usage and writing

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Something scary makes you feel ....
   a. clever b. happy c. funny d. frightened
2. We .... go to school on Fridays.
   a. never b. always c. often d. sometimes
3. .... the water when you make a cup of tea.
   a. Boil b. Boils c. Boiled d. Boiling
4. Who has .... a bag with balls on it ?
   a. get b. gets c. got d. getting
5. There .... cheese in the fridge.
   a. is any b. are any c. are some d. is some

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. You are very good at **play** tennis. (playing)
2. Let's **made** lunch. (make)
3. What **is** your mother look like ? (does)
4. This is **Alis** phone. It's new. (Ali's)
5. First, **putting** some water in the kettle. (put)

6 Reorder the words to make questions :

1. your / live / do / grandparents / Where ?
Where do your grandparents live?
2. a / mountain / Did / climb / you / yesterday ?
Did you climb a mountain yesterday?
3. brother / Does / football / your / play ?
Does your brother play football?

7 Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences on :

"Your best friend"

....

....

....

....

22 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif

Assuit Zone

A. Language Functions

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Tarek : Sports are very good for us. (1) Do you like sports ?

Kareem : Yes, I like sports very much.

Tarek : What is your (2) favourite sport ?

Kareem : My favourite sport is football. What about you ?

Tarek : I (3) like tennis.

Kareem : When do you practise it ?

Tarek : I practise it (4) on Fridays.

2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues :

1. **Alaa** : What does your father look like ?
   Hany : He has got short, straight hair.
2. **Hassan** : Where did you go on holiday ?
   Ahmed : I went to Hurghada on holiday.

B. Reading Comprehension

3 Read and match :

(A)	(B)
1. (e) There aren't	a. we use a mouse in this lesson.
2. (a) In computer studies,	b. the opposite of weak.
3. (d) She is sending	c. in the desert.
4. (b) Strong is	d. you a photo now.
5. (c) There are camels	e. any figs in the cupboard.

4 Read the following , then answer the questions :

Egyptian food is popular all over the world. Salma's favourite soup is molokhia. It's a kind of vegetable soup and it's very healthy. Her friend, Noha likes koshari. Koshari is a very popular dish. There isn't any meat in it, but there are lentils. The other main ingredients are rice and pasta. There aren't any tomatoes in this dish, but it's delicious with some tomato sauce on the top.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What kind of soup is molokhia ?
   It's a kind of vegetable soup
2. What are the ingredients of koshari ?
   They are lentils, rice and pasta
3. What is Salma's favourite soup ?
   Salma's favourite soup is molokhia

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. Koshari is .... with some tomato sauce on the top.
   a. cold b. salty c. hot d. delicious (circled)
5. There isn't any .... in koshari.
   a. pasta b. meat (circled) c. lentil d. tomatoes

C. Usage and Writing

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A brave person is ready to do something ....
   a. fun b. strange c. dangerous d. bad
2. I like biscuits with .... raisins in them.
   a. too little b. too much c. any d. a lot of
3. You can .... a video call to your cousin in England.
   a. send b. write c. make d. take
4. Munir and Mostafa are twins. .... sister is called Radwa.
   a. His b. Her c. Their d. Our
5. A .... is a hole in the mountain.
   a. lake b. cave c. river d. forest
6. My sister Huda has got long hair .... glasses.
   a. so b. because c. but d. and
7. We went to the beach and .... in the sea.
   a. swam b. swim c. swum d. swims
8. The canoe .... the children to school every day.
   a. drives b. takes c. rides d. cycles

6 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. I do voluntary job at a children's hospital. (work)
2. Grandma is read a book. (reading)
3. I stay many subjects at school. (study)
4. Let's had some juice. (have)
5. We can give money to help rich people. (poor)

7 Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences on :

"Your best friend"

....

....

....

....

....

Mr / Gomaa

A. Language Functions

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c :

1. What is your favourite subject ? ....

a. It's English b. It's basketball c. It's chicken

2. Do you like vegetables ? ....

a. I'm sorry b. Yes, I do c. No, I can't

3. How do you go to school ? ....

a. I get up at 7:00 b. I play football c. I go to school by car

B. Vocabulary & Structure

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c :

1. A .... is a group of people who play music together.

a. band b. hobby c. chess

2. It is not your watch. It is ....

a. me b. mine c. my

3. Some students .... to school.

a. fly b. swim c. cycle

4. We .... got some bread.

a. are b. has c. have

5. My friend sent me a .... message yesterday.

a. test b. text c. taxi

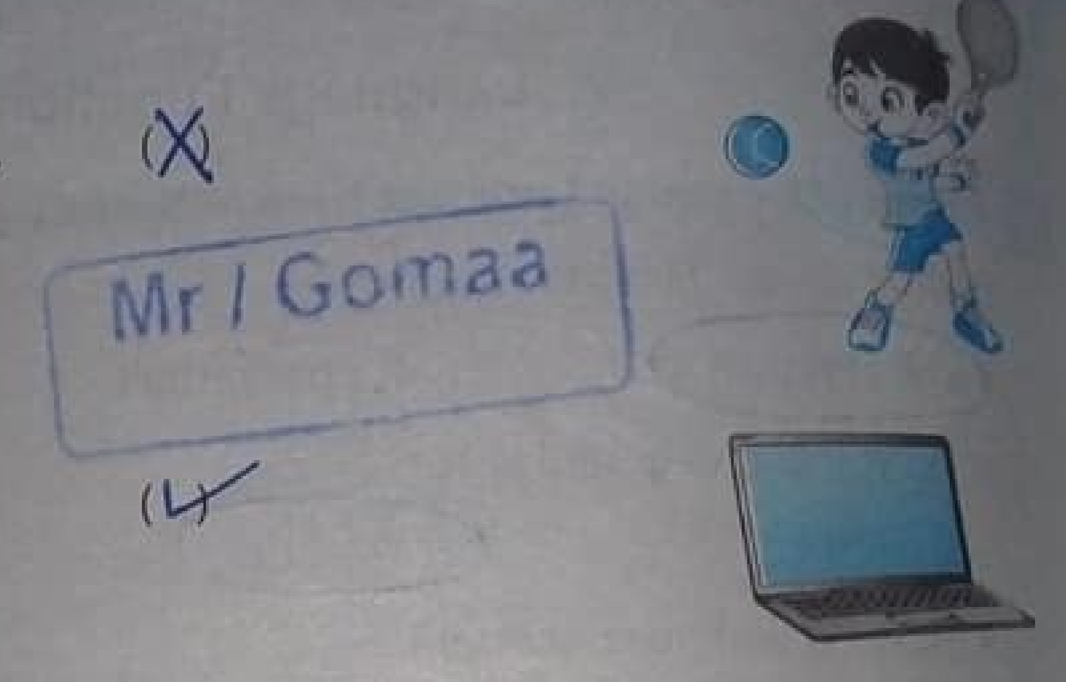
6. The children are .... football.

a. playing b. play c. played

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the sentence under each picture and put (✓) or (X) :

1. He is reading a book. (X)



2. It is a laptop. (✓)

3. It is a mouse. 



4 Finish the sentences with words from the list :

did – female – are – short – should – tent

1. "Male" is the opposite of female
2. My hair is short.
3. We sleep in a tent in the desert.
4. When did you do your homework yesterday ?
5. There are four books on the table.
6. You should do sport every day.

5 Rearrange the following words to make meaningful sentences :

1. the – **English** – language – England – is – of.
   English is the language of England.
2. clever – person – knows – **A** – a lot.
   A clever person knows alot.
3. can – fast – you – run – **How** ?
   How fast can you run?